00097508

THE

ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BOMBAY

Town Hall, Bombay.

Digitized with financial assistance from

Hermès India

a project facilitated by the Rotary Club of Bombay

on 10 August, 2018

RIDING

BY

CAPTAIN ROBERT WEIR

RIDING MASTER R.H.G.

WITH CONTRIBUTIONS BY

HIS GRACE THE DUKE OF BEAUFORT, K.G.
THE EARL OF SUFFOLK AND BERKSHIRE
THE EARL OF ONSLOW, G.C.M.G.
E. L. ANDERSON AND ALFRED E. T. WATSON

POLO

BY J. MORAY BROWN

97508
ae
164.05
1526

ILLUSTRATED BY G. D. GILES, FRANK DADD AND J. STUART ALLAN

NN-C-53

LONDON
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
1891

All rights reserved

God 798.23
Wei/Rid
97508

Ref 796.353

DEDICATION

TO

H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES

BADMINTON : *May* 1890.

HAVING received permission to dedicate these volumes, the BADMINTON LIBRARY of SPORTS and PASTIMES, to HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS THE PRINCE OF WALES, I do so feeling that I am dedicating them to one of the best and keenest sportsmen of our time. I can say, from personal observation, that there is no man who can extricate himself from a bustling and pushing crowd of horsemen, when a fox breaks covert, more dexterously and quickly than His Royal Highness; and that when hounds run hard over a big country, no man can take a line of his own and live with them better. Also, when the wind has been blowing hard, often have I seen His Royal Highness knocking over driven grouse and partridges and high-rocketing pheasants in first-rate

workmanlike style. He is held to be a good yachtsman, and as Commodore of the Royal Yacht Squadron is looked up to by those who love that pleasant and exhilarating pastime. His encouragement of racing is well known, and his attendance at the University, Public School, and other important Matches testifies to his being, like most English gentlemen, fond of all manly sports. I consider it a great privilege to be allowed to dedicate these volumes to so eminent a sportsman as His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales, and I do so with sincere feelings of respect and esteem and loyal devotion.

BEAUFORT.

BADMINTON

PREFACE

A FEW LINES only are necessary to explain the object with which these volumes are put forth. There is no modern encyclopædia to which the inexperienced man, who seeks guidance in the practice of the various British Sports and Pastimes, can turn for information. Some books there are on Hunting, some on Racing, some on Lawn Tennis, some on Fishing, and so on ; but one Library, or succession of volumes, which treats of the Sports and Pastimes indulged in by Englishmen—and women—is wanting. The Badminton Library is offered to supply the want. Of the imperfections which must be found in the execution of such a design we are

conscious. Experts often differ. But this we may say, that those who are seeking for knowledge on any of the subjects dealt with will find the results of many years' experience written by men who are in every case adepts at the Sport or Pastime of which they write. It is to point the way to success to those who are ignorant of the sciences they aspire to master, and who have no friend to help or coach them, that these volumes are written.

To those who have worked hard to place simply and clearly before the reader that which he will find within, the best thanks of the Editor are due. That it has been no slight labour to supervise all that has been written he must acknowledge; but it has been a labour of love, and very much lightened by the courtesy of the Publisher, by the unflinching, indefatigable assistance of the Sub-Editor, and by the intelligent and able arrangement of each subject by the various writers, who are so thoroughly masters of the subjects of which they treat. The reward we all hope to reap is that our work may prove useful to this and future generations.

THE EDITOR.

CONTENTS

RIDING

CHAPTER		PAGE
	INTRODUCTION . . . . . *By his Grace the Duke of Beaufort, K.G. &c.*	3
I.	RIDING TO HOUNDS . . . . . *By the Earl of Suffolk and Berkshire*	12
II.	THE SADDLE-HORSE . . . . . *By Alfred E. T. Watson*	43
III.	TRAINING THE YOUNG HORSE . . . . *By Robert Weir*	63
IV.	HINTS ON HORSEMANSHIP . . . . . *By Robert Weir*	86
V.	HANDS AND SEAT . . . . . *By Robert Weir*	133
VI.	RACE RIDING . . . . . *By Alfred E. T. Watson*	139
VII.	THE COLONIAL HORSE . . . . . *By the Earl of Onslow, G.C.M.G. (Governor of New Zealand)*	158
VIII.	EARLY HISTORY OF HORSEMANSHIP . . . *By E. L. Anderson*	211

POLO

By J. Moray Brown

CHAPTER		PAGE
	INTRODUCTORY	235
I.	THE ANTIQUITY OF POLO	238
II.	POLO IN ENGLAND	254
III.	POLO IN INDIA	266
IV.	RULES AND BY-LAWS OF POLO	287
V.	GROUND, BALLS, STICKS, GOAL-POSTS, &c.	299
VI.	BREEDS OF PONIES SUITABLE FOR POLO	306
VII.	THE TRAINING OF PONIES	321
VIII.	SOME FAMOUS PLAYERS AND PONIES	332
IX.	HOW A POLO MATCH SHOULD BE PLAYED	355

APPENDIX

LESSONS IN RIDING 371
By Robert Weir

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF RIDING 393

INDEX 405

ILLUSTRATIONS

REPRODUCED BY MESSRS. WALKER AND BOUTALL, J. D. COOPER, AND G. PEARSON, AFTER DRAWINGS BY G. D. GILES, F. DADD, AND J. STUART ALLAN.

FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS

	ARTIST	
THE EARL OF GLAMORGAN (AFTERWARDS EIGHTH DUKE OF BEAUFORT) AT TEN YEARS OF AGE	*After an oil painting*	*Front.*
A GOOD START	*G. D. Giles*	*To face p.* 16
STIRRUP NOWHERE TO BE SEEN	*G. D. Giles*	,, 18
JOINING THE ROAD RIDERS	*G. D. Giles*	,, 22
HIS LAST FENCE	*G. D. Giles*	,, 38
'CORRECTION TO BE USED AGAINST RESTIFENESS'!	*G. D. Giles*	,, 50
DECLINE TO GO QUIETLY A DOZEN YARDS	*G. D. Giles*	,, 58
HIGH COURAGED AND IN THE PLENITUDE OF HEALTH AND SPIRITS	*G. D. Giles*	,, 142
A 'ROUND UP'	*J. Stuart Allan*	,, 180
A HUNTING JUMP IN NEW ZEALAND	*J. Stuart Allan*	,, 196
MAJOR-GENERAL J. F. SHERER — 'THE FATHER OF POLO'		,, 233
EARLY POLO		,, 240
POLO IN THE SIXTEENTH CENTURY: THE EMPEROR AKBAR PLAYING WITH HIS COURTIERS		,, 246

	ARTIST	
POLO IN THIBET (FROM 'TRAVELS IN KASHMIR, LADAKH, AND THIBET,' BY VIGNE)	. .	*To face p.* 266
A QUICK TURN	*F. Dadd* .	,, 286
A SCRIMMAGE—'THE BALL HANGS'	*F. Dadd* .	,, 326
A GOAL—'WHOO-WHOOP!'	*F. Dadd* .	,, 356
'ARCADES AMBO'—'RIDE HIM OFF'	*F. Dadd* .	,, 362

ILLUSTRATIONS IN TEXT

	ARTIST	PAGE
'IT CAN'T BE DONE!'	*G. D. Giles* .	25
SIGNS OF DISTRESS	*G. D. Giles* .	27
'THE STREAM RUNS WIDE ON THE TAKE-OFF SIDE'	*G. D. Giles* .	33
TATTERSALL'S	*G. D. Giles* .	40
FRESH FROM GRASS	*G. D. Giles* .	64
LONGEING	*G. D. Giles* .	73
TAKE HOLD OF HIS SNAFFLE AND MOUTH HIMSELF	*G. D. Giles* .	78
NOT BEEN JUDICIOUSLY TREATED	*G. D. Giles* .	84
OVER AN OBSTACLE BY HIMSELF	*G. D. Giles* .	107
AVOID GETTING IT CAUGHT	*G. D. Giles* .	109
OUT OF DOORS	*G. D. Giles* .	119
A CONSIDERABLE AMOUNT OF TROUBLE	*G. D. Giles* .	122
DEPEND MORE OR LESS ON THE HORSE'S MOUTH	*G. D. Giles* .	134
PULLING AT THEIR HORSES' HEADS AND SAWING AT THEIR MOUTHS	*G. D. Giles* .	143
THE GRIEVANCE OF A LOST BET	*G. D. Giles* .	149
EARLY DAYS	*G. D. Giles* .	157

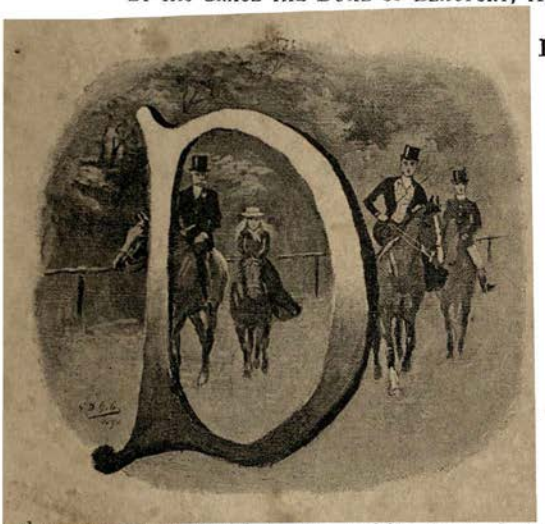
	ARTIST	PAGE
HUNTING IN AUSTRALASIA	*J. Stuart Allan*	160
THE TOTALISATOR		170
STOCK SADDLE AND WHIP	*J. Stuart Allan*	179
HORSE-SHIPPING	*J. Stuart Allan*	183
TO USE HIS HIND LEGS	*J. Stuart Allan*	192
THE FLEA	*J. Stuart Allan*	200
CRASH IN THE NEXT STRIDE	*J. Stuart Allan*	201
THE VERY BABIES COULD JUMP ON HIS BACK	*J. Stuart Allan*	203
PERSIAN CHAUGÁN STICKS OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY		244
POLO STICKS		302
THIBETAN POLO STICK OR 'BYNTU'		304
BARB PONY—AWFULLY JOLLY	*F. Dadd*	309
SYRIAN PONY—ALGIERS	*F. Dadd*	311
INDIAN COUNTRY-BRED PONY—'A BAD SORT'	*F. Dadd*	313
Otium cum dignitate. BROOD MARE AND FOAL: ABBESS, AND JOLLY NUN BY AWFULLY JOLLY	*F. Dadd*	319
ARAB PONY—UMPIRE	*F. Dadd*	340
A THOROUGHBRED PONY—DANCING GIRL, BY SEFTON	*F. Dadd*	341
A MODEL TYPE OF PONY—FRITZ, BY KINSMAN	*F. Dadd*	344
A 'NEAR-SIDE' STROKE	*F. Dadd*	347
A 'BACK-HANDER'	*F. Dadd*	349
INDIAN COUNTRY-BRED PONY, POLESTAR—'A GOOD SORT'	*F. Dadd*	353
WITH A LEAD OF THEM ALL	*F. Dadd*	359
PUTTING PLENTY OF POWDER INTO A STROKE. *Vires acquirit eundo*	*F. Dadd*	361
MISSED	*F. Dadd*	365
REMOUNTS	*F. Dadd*	368

RIDING

RIDING

INTRODUCTION

By His Grace the Duke of Beaufort, K.G. &c.



DIVERSE are the opinions of experts in the art of riding, and of the teachers of the art, as to whether it is not easier to teach youth of either sex in their teens, who have never sat upon a horse previously, than those who have lived in the saddle from their earliest childhood. The advocates of early practice hold that early familiarity with ponies and horses, and the habit of riding them, give advantages to the very youthful beginner that no teaching or practice in after life can ever supply. It is chiefly from instructors of the art that objection comes to these childish

riders, because, as they aver, they have first to break their pupils of the bad habits they have learnt as children, before they can put them properly on their horses, and make them use their hands and legs as they should do. Which of these opinions is right? After many years of experience of both classes of riders, I really cannot decide, but I cannot help thinking that the objection to very early riding can be entirely overcome by the pupil being properly put on his or her horse, and properly taught *ab initio* the use of hands and legs; and, if this is done, the chances of excelling in the art of riding should then be very much in favour of the pupil who has begun as a child. In a long experience of riders I have come across three or four of both sexes who, though not such finished horsemen or horsewomen as those who had ridden from childhood, were hard to beat over a country, notwithstanding that they had begun late in life. In some cases beginning to tumble about very early makes some people over careful, on the principle of the burnt child fearing the fire; and those who have not had so much experience of falling have a certain advantage; but this can only be considered as regards riding over a country, and not in relation to sitting properly on and riding a horse with hands and legs as he should be ridden.

On the good old principle of *place aux dames*, I will begin with a few remarks on the way to put a little girl on her saddle. Further on in this volume will be found full instruction in the art of riding, by one of the most highly trained and finished masters now exercising that calling, and, this being the case, I shall treat the subject as briefly as possible. The young lady, aged from five to six years, must be, when put upon her saddle, told that she can never become a good and graceful horsewoman unless she sits with her shoulders perfectly square to her pony's or horse's ears; that she must neither hang over to the off (right hand) side of her pony, nor, doubling herself up towards the left, incline to the near side. Fortunately, vanity is a general attribute of womanhood, and, when not excessive, it often becomes a good quality. The excellence to

which women attain in riding, and in many games of skill, even in walking and dancing, takes its first growth from vanity—that is to say, the desire to do whatever she does better than other people; and to be admired when riding or walking, or whatever she may be doing, is a great incentive to her to arrive at excellence in any pursuits she takes up. The instructor has only to show a little girl how ungraceful and ugly is a woman sitting badly on her horse, and he may depend upon her doing all she can to sit so that those who see her will express admiration and approval.

Having got our young friend into the saddle, we now come to fitting her stirrup. Some ladies ride with a very short stirrup and bend the left leg short back, so that the whole of the sole of the boot is visible, if the habit flies up in the least, to those behind her. This is very bad, and the greatest care must be taken to avoid it, for fear it should become a rooted mannerism, all the more difficult to overcome afterwards. It is almost an absolute certainty that a lady who rides in this fashion will give the horses she rides sore backs. The stirrup should be so adjusted that the left leg should hang easily and nearly straight down from the knee, being very slightly bent back, just enough to allow the top of the knee to touch the under side of the pommel, called by saddlers 'the leaping head.' The stirrup should be under the *ball of the foot*, and should not touch the ankle or leg. When so placed the lady sits with freedom and strength combined, for she has the power to grip the two pommels, and she is not cramped and stiff in position. She is carried with greater ease by her horse, and she avoids the risk of making a lump upon her ankle from the pressure of the stirrup against it. Once she gets into the habit of this seat, perfectly square to the front and quite perpendicular, and with stirrup adjusted as described, she will not require the pad put on the end of the stirrup leather and the top of the stirrup iron, which of itself may produce the lump on the ankle, which is a token of something being wrong.

Before proceeding to the question of how to put the inferior

sex, the boy, on his saddle, I will digress for a moment to discuss the pony which either the boy or the girl should ride. There is no doubt whatever that, as regards the boy, he will either bully the pony, or the pony will bully him. The young lady is of too kindly a nature to bully, and therefore she requires a more docile animal to ride than the boy. It is far better for the boy's future proficiency in riding that he should bully his pony than that the reverse should be the case ; but when the boy has these inclinations he requires looking after and repressing. There is no animal so artful as an old pony that has carried several young beginners. His craftiness is remarkable. He will pretend to be tired long before he really is so. He will take his rider home against his will, or will refuse a small fence, or go in the contrary direction to the one he is directed to go ; and therefore the boy must have sufficient confidence in himself to coerce to a certain extent, but should on no account ever be allowed to act cruelly to him. Bullying is a vice that grows upon boys. If he can do it successfully with his ponies, the lad will follow it up by bullying his sisters, and other boys ; and as he gets older will go on bullying every one he can, till eventually he may come to bully his wife. Therefore, though it is necessary that he should be master of his pony, he should be carefully watched and prevented from ill-using him. A nice docile pony is one of the most intelligent and kindest creatures in the world, and should be cherished and petted accordingly. One that carries a little girl well is worth all the care and kindness that can be extended to him.

We now come to putting the boy on his pony. Some people like to put him up first of all without stirrups, and to make him ride for a year or more before furnishing him with those aids. I am decidedly against this system ; there can be no doubt that the effect of such practice is to make him cling on and ride like a monkey on a dog, and to completely spoil his hands. With a recruit joining a cavalry regiment it may be all very well. He is from eighteen to twenty-three years of age, and has strength enough in his thighs to grip the stuffed saddle

in which he is put ; but it has always struck me that the reason why so few cavalry privates have any hands at all on a horse is on account of being taught on this system. To keep in the saddle they must hold on by the horse's head, whereas I am convinced that, if they were first taught to use the hand lightly, and to sit well in the saddle, and then after three months were taught to ride on the blanket with only a snaffle watering bridle, they would be better horsemen and have better hands on a horse. Now a boy has not the same grip of a horse as a young man, and I am most strongly of opinion that he should be instructed to ride in a saddle and with stirrups.

The first thing to impress on the boy is that he should sit square to his front, and very upright without stiffness. Different ponies, like different horses, require to be ridden with stirrups of different lengths. A long-actioned horse or pony, very strong in his hind quarters, will need to be ridden with stirrups a hole shorter than a quick-stepping, short-actioned animal. But a good rule which is generally applicable is to make the boy quit his stirrups, and then to put them at such a length that the bottom of the stirrup just touches the ankle-bone ; then teach him to ride with the ball of his foot in the stirrup and not to 'ride home,' which means not to thrust his foot as far into the stirrup as he can. Above all things teach him not to turn his feet out, and to sit as easily as possible. The saddle should have no padding in front of the knees, and the less padding there is under the flap the better. The rider, with nothing between his legs and the horse's sides but the leather flap, can sit much tighter and closer, and can grip his horse much firmer, than he can if he has a quantity of stuff under the flap between him and his horse. I strongly recommend both for boys and men the perfectly plain-flapped saddle, which gives so much more freedom to the rider's legs, and the stuffless saddle invented by two first-class riders, Messrs. Meredith Brown and William Harford.

Having got both the girl and the boy into their saddles, we now come to the handling of the bridle. Some people are

born with hands and some without, and to some all the teaching in the world will not give hands. Those who are gifted with natural good hands require no teaching. An apt pupil with bad hands may acquire better. He may be taught that to keep a constant firm pull at a horse's mouth both deadens it and tires the rider. Many a fall over a fence, or even over a mole-hill in the open in galloping, is due to the bad hands of the rider, and not to the clumsiness of the horse. Explain to the boy that when his pony pulls at him, and he is obliged to pull against him, that by every now and then dropping his hands and letting go of his pony's mouth he will ease his arms, and at the same time relieve the deadness of the pony's mouth. This advice is applicable to both girls and boys. Delicate as girls' and women's hands are as a rule, I have known some with very bad heavy hands, as on the contrary I have known many strong men with very fine light hands. As remarked before, the most difficult thing to teach a beginner is to ride with light hands, but when the pupil is willing to learn bad hands can be greatly improved.

What has been written as instruction for boys and girls need not be repeated for the benefit of adult beginners. As the boy is said to be the father of the man, that which will instruct him as a child is equally applicable to him if he begins to learn when he is a man. Let him treat his pony or his horse kindly, and never ill-use him. Let him establish an understanding between his hand and his horse's mouth, and he will find that he can turn and twist him where he likes and when he likes, without having to take two hands to him. A boy should be taught to use his legs as well as his hands, and by gentle, or on occasion by forcible, pressure he will find that his horse can be guided as much or more by the legs than by the hands. When he arrives at combining the two he will have become a proficient horseman. He will escape many collisions in a big field of horsemen, he will avoid a tree in a fence, and he will be able to open a gate in half the time, and save his knees from many bumps by this means. A lady or girl is heavily

handicapped, sitting entirely on one side of a horse, but by using her left leg on the near side, and by a dexterous use of the whip, very gently applied, on the off, she can to a great extent make up for the disadvantage of having no right leg to apply to that side.

There is a point of considerable importance in the teaching young girls to ride on which we must touch. There is no doubt that if they ride daily and for long hours, and always ride on the near side of their ponies, it will not improbably result that the right hip will get higher than the left one. No doubt that it is less comfortable for a lady to sit on the off than on the near side of a horse. Custom and habit, however, reconcile people to many strange things, and young ladies may be recommended to acquire the art of riding as well on one side as on the other. I could name one family of ladies, all celebrated horsewomen over a country, on Newmarket Heath, or in Rotten Row, equally well known and admired as the best specimens of English horsewomen, who certainly up to eighteen years of age, if not later, used to ride alternately on the one side or the other. I allude to the aunts of the present Earl of Craven, Lady Elizabeth, Dowager Countess of Wilton, Lady Evelyn Riddell, Lady Blanche, Countess of Coventry, Lady Beatrix, Countess of Cadogan, and Lady Emily Vande Weyer ; all of them sit straight and well on their horses, and all were brought up to ride equally well on either side. I have no doubt that learning to ride on both sides tends to prevent the habit of getting the right shoulder forward, and as a consequence facilitates the sitting perfectly square, which is such an essential feature of perfect horsemanship in a lady. It also prevents the medical attendant (if by chance he is not a fox-hunter, which most country doctors are) of the family from frightening mothers by saying that young girls who ride much may grow up crooked.

Whilst on the subject of hands it would be as well to make some remarks upon horses' mouths. Ninety-nine out of every hundred men have bad hands of various degrees, and I know several ladies similarly afflicted. Those bad hands are

the cause of most of the bad mouths in horses. In grooms and second horsemen bad hands are in some cases caused, in many made worse, by the habit of taking horses to exercise in a watering bridle; they have to pull at the snaffle as hard as they can, and they get such a habit of it that they fall off if they cannot hang on to a horse's head. They then do just the same when a horse has a double bridle on, and they bring up the second horse, who may naturally have a light mouth, with a mouth quite dead, and who, having had his head carried for him by the man on his back all the morning, expects the other man to carry it for him all the afternoon. I have had many horses that were charming to ride and quite light in the mouth as first horses, who if they happened to drop into being second horses were detestable to ride, and hung and bored on your hand all the rest of the day. It has already been said how difficult, how almost impossible, it is to give a man good hands or to improve them when really bad. Whatever may be done with horses that have bad mouths, it will probably be found that a constant change of bridle (both in riding and driving) is the only real and effectual remedy. To change about constantly during the day from the bridoon to the bit and back again to the bridoon keeps the horse's mouth fresh. Often a man cannot hold his horse on the bridoon, but there are moments when he can do so, and if he drops the bit for ever so short a time he will find it of benefit to himself and his horse's mouth. If you ride a horse that pulls hard always in the same bit, he gets a groove in his mouth and gets accustomed to it.

For a puller you must have a strong bit, but change it often. Sometimes a bit with a port—sometimes one that shifts up and down on the cheek—sometimes one with playthings on the tongue—sometimes with only just bend enough to allow of the tongue passing comfortably under it, but always a good long cheek. Unless absolutely necessary the curb should not be tight; that deadens the mouth very much. With a nice-mouthed horse a snaffle, or, better still, two snaffles; if he gets his head down, a gag and snaffle. Many a hard puller in a bit will go

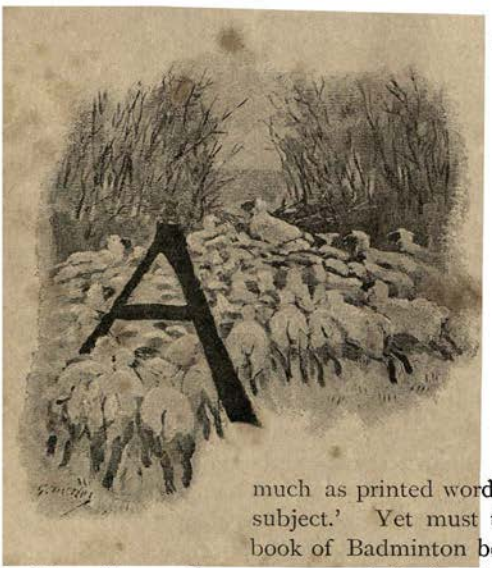
well in this bridle. A gag and curb is not a bad bit, and for a light-mouthed horse that is rather too much for you in a snaffle, a plain bridoon and Tom Thumb bit, with a very short cheek to it, makes a good bridle. I am happy to think that the sharp twisted bridoon of our youth has died out. Bad hands and bad temper spoil many horses, and bad mouths, in revenge for having been spoilt by bad hands, retaliate by spoiling the temper. *Æquam memento rebus in arduis servare mentem.* If you substitute *a hard mouth* and keep your temper with that, as well as with other *rebus in arduis*, and the ordinary disagreeables of life, it will be well for both horse and rider.

Everyone who rides has his own fancy about the best and most comfortable saddle and the best bit. It is therefore only a waste of time to make recommendations. I have in previous pages stated my opinion as to the most serviceable sort of saddle, and have indicated one or two useful sorts of bits. Most horses go well in a plain curb bit, with just sufficient bend in the mouthpiece for the tongue to go under comfortably, and a plain bridoon; but if they will not go pleasantly in that, I can only recommend the reader to try other bridles till he finds one which suits his horse; also to remember that a really hard puller soon gets accustomed to a new bit, and that, as soon as he can pull comfortably in the new one, a change should be made. A gentleman, celebrated for the excellence of his hands and horsemanship, who was first-rate as a rider over a country and excelled in the riding school in breaking and teaching horses, gave it as his opinion that not one horse in a thousand had a mouth good enough to be ridden in a snaffle, and that not one man in a thousand had hands good enough to ride in a curb bridle. Probably he was about right in his opinion. It is therefore evident that the selection of saddles and bridles must be left to the taste and fancy of each individual. Though riders may try something that they find recommended in these pages, they will in all probability prefer something else of their own selection.

CHAPTER I

RIDING TO HOUNDS

BY THE EARL OF SUFFOLK AND BERKSHIRE



CHAPTER on riding to hounds might easily be condensed into a few words of excellent advice: 'Read all that Whyte Melville has written on the subject, read Davenport Bromley's "Fox-hunting" in his Book of Sport, and you shall know as much as printed words can teach on the subject.' Yet must the volume of the book of Badminton be filled, though on this well-worn theme a man might despair of being original, were he as indefatigable as an Athenian of old in his quest of the *τί νέον*.

As surely as every Englishman is convinced in his own mind that 'Between two horses which doth bear him best' he

hath rather more than 'some shallow spirit of judgment,' so surely does every man who hunts feel serenely confident that, given the start, the horse, or whatever he may deem to be the embodiment of opportunity, he is as capable of showing the trick to the d——d Quornites, or to any other hunt in the United Kingdom, as was erstwhile the self-assertive Dick of poetic memory. Alas! how many of us would fall in our own estimation could we but realise the fact that in truth we belong to the majority (some seventy per cent.) who, if by accident left alone in their glory with hounds running hard, could not live with them four fields, not even if four open gates on the line spread wide their friendly portals to indicate the way we should go; while, for taking the first bloom off a fence, the minority must shrink by at least another half score.

However, with the best intentions, we cannot all be first. There are, luckily, many ways of riding to hounds, and so long as each exponent of the various phases is satisfied that his method is the correct one, who shall cavil at him or say him nay? He hunts for his own pleasure, and it is presumable that after his own fashion he is pleased. But in dealing with these different styles we can hardly be blamed for following what seems to be an order of natural selection, by giving preference in these pages to the front-rank men—the Uhlans of the cavalry who pursue the sport declared by Mr. Jorrocks to be the image of war, with a liberal discount for absence of guilt and diminution of danger.

It has often been remarked—even in Leicestershire and Northamptonshire, those centres of attraction to which yearly gravitate the very pick and flower of our flying horsemen—that when hounds have been running straight with a breast-high scent for some ten minutes, not more than a dozen or fifteen riders, out of the immense field which congregated at the meet, are ever seen really on terms with the pack, each man cutting out his own work, and forming the apex of a small pyramid of followers, or, to use a simile which must not be deemed unflattering, like the leading wild goose of a flight. So well is

this known that the men who habitually form the vanguard, having once settled down into their places, are wont, after the first few fields have been traversed, to glance to right and left in search of the familiar faces of their friendly rivals, to exchange cheery words of recognition or encouragement, to remark on an absentee, and above all specially—and, it is to be feared, not without jealousy—to note the presence of a stranger, or of a how-the-devil-comes-he-here intruder in their ranks. If this is the case in the shires, on whose green lists fresh knights errant are constantly appearing, still more does it hold good in the provinces, where the local champions are less accustomed to see gage of battle thrown down by new combatants. Amongst this leading division there are again degrees of merit, or rather degrees in which the graduates are worthy of honour for being where they are.[1] Out of the dozen to whom we have assigned the pride of place, fully half are tolerably sure to be the fortunate possessors of both 'fiddle and bow'—men who, through their own judgment or that of their friends or grooms, have found really first-class horses, and have had the money to purchase them when found. The perfect hunter—perfect in shape, strength, speed, activity, courage, and *handiness*—is the fiddle. The nerve, quickness, hands, knowledge of pace, and that indescribable gift which is known as 'an eye to hounds,' are the constituents of the bow, which calls forth the powers of the instrument, and between it and the performer awakes complete harmony. Whyte Melville, in 'Market Harborough' (it is impossible to write about hunting without quoting Whyte Melville), describes Mr. Varnish, the horse-dealer, handling his young one over the fences in masterly fashion, 'sitting far back the while, with the air of a man playing some favourite instrument in an arm-chair;' and no words could more accurately or admirably describe the perfect ease and grace with which the accomplished horseman solves what is nevertheless the most difficult of all problems, viz., getting over a strongly enclosed country at a high rate of speed. 'I wish I was a h'eagle,' said Mr. Jorrocks, ''overing over 'em, seeing which 'ounds 'ad the scent,

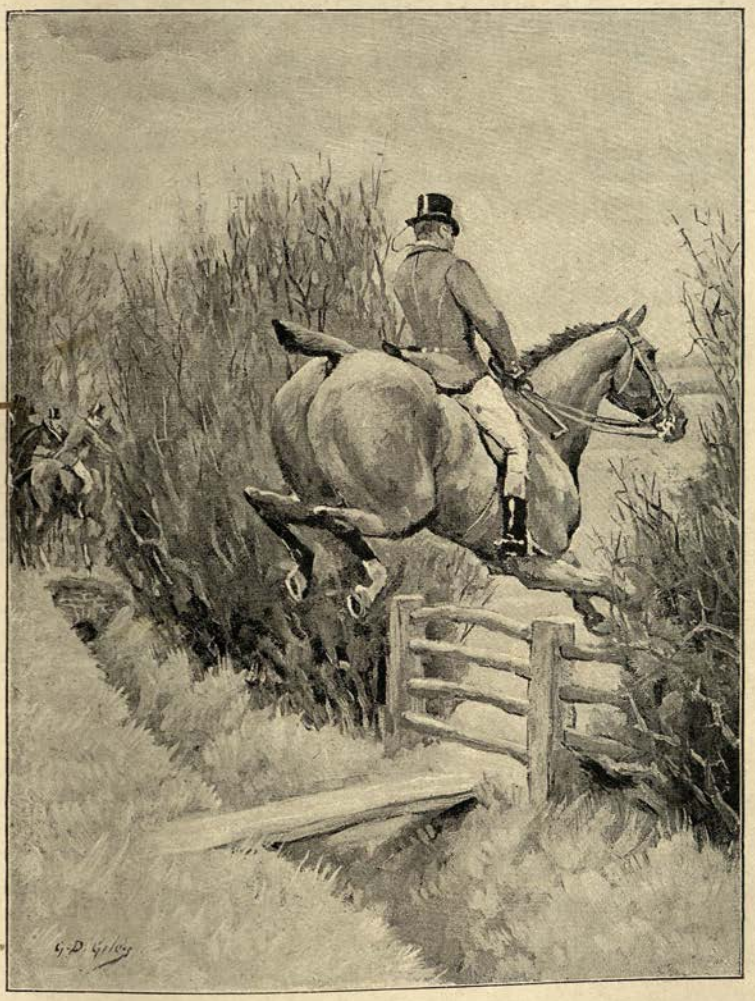
and which were running frantic for blood.' Jorrocks's whole soul was with the hounds, and he cared nothing about the riders so long as they ''eld 'ard' when bidden, but the 'h'eagle,' taking his bird's-eye view of the whole situation, would doubtless have deemed the *customers* worthy of his attention. Let us suppose ourselves, if not a 'h'eagle,' that which is at any rate more possible, a follower at a distance—respectful, yet not too far for observation—of one of the men mounted and physically gifted as we have endeavoured to describe; we shall not be badly placed after all; nor, as the Frenchman said of himself in the saddle, need we grumble if we can only *remain*.

Our pilot has got a good start; this, by what he openly calls good luck, and in his heart knows to be due to strict attention to business, he usually obtains (by the way, if poor Archer had ever seriously turned his attention to hunting, he would no oftener have been left behind at the covert than he was at the post), and he has accentuated his position by nipping over a low stile, a footboard on the taking-off side of which has been the sole reason for the digression of the main body to a gate some fifty yards down the fence, where they crowd, struggle, swear, and ''ware heels' at each other to their hearts' (dis)-content. As we watch him gliding over the first pasture, taking the ridge-and-furrow slightly aslant, and sailing over the first fence without the semblance of an effort, we could almost persuade ourselves that there is 'nothing in it,' though the way in which our own steed pitches, the strength of the binders and the width of the ditch in the obstacle we were inclined to despise—our horse luckily taking a juster appreciation of the difficulty—go far to dispel the illusion. Strange to say, as field after field is thrown behind us, our leader shows no more sign of faltering, no more symptom of 'coming back to his horses,' as they say on the turf, than he did when he topped the third fence a few seconds later than the leading hound. Nor does the pack gain on him; on the contrary, they have made a slight deflection in his favour, and he is barely going at half speed. His horse never makes the semblance of a blunder, taking off always at

the right place, *spreading himself* as he does so, yet withal landing with hind legs well under him, ready in a moment for a second effort, should false ground or trap lurk concealed by the blackthorn. Can this be the animal that, ere he came into his present owner's hands, had the character of a bold but somewhat rash horse, and a trifle inclined to chance it both as to distance and height of jumping? Endued with some marvellous instinct, our customer seems rarely if ever to come down to a big place; as he lands in each field the exact spot where he is to leave it reveals itself as by magic; the narrowest part of the ditch, the weakest binders, the lowest rails, lie right in his line though falls are beginning to be numerous, and steeds who take some getting down may be seen galloping riderless or with besmirched head-stalls.

'Oh dear! oh dear! *where* do they find these dreadful places? *I* never come across them,' said Lord Wilton (the father of the present peer), with his usual deprecatory moan, on hearing, during a dinner at Egerton Lodge, some of his guests narrating their deeds of valour. No one had a better right to express such surprise, for, as far as the spectator could judge, Lord Wilton never went out of a canter, and never jumped a big place, though, however fast and far hounds ran, *he was always with them.*

Neither must it be supposed that our pioneer disdains the occasional accommodation of a gate. Not he! he sees in a moment if hounds falter sufficiently—they have never really checked—to allow of his opening one, and then it is done in a moment; deftly is the crook of his whip slipped under the latch, and with a clean backward sweep of the arm, or a well-timed push of his hunter's chest, the timber flies open, a quick 'Have you got it?' jerked over his shoulder to a possible follower—he does not stop to see, for a run such as this hardly admits of the nicer courtesies—and away he goes again, congratulating himself that the 'puff of wind' thus obtained may be worth a quarter of a mile at the finish. Once, and once only, do we see him apparently go out of his way to court



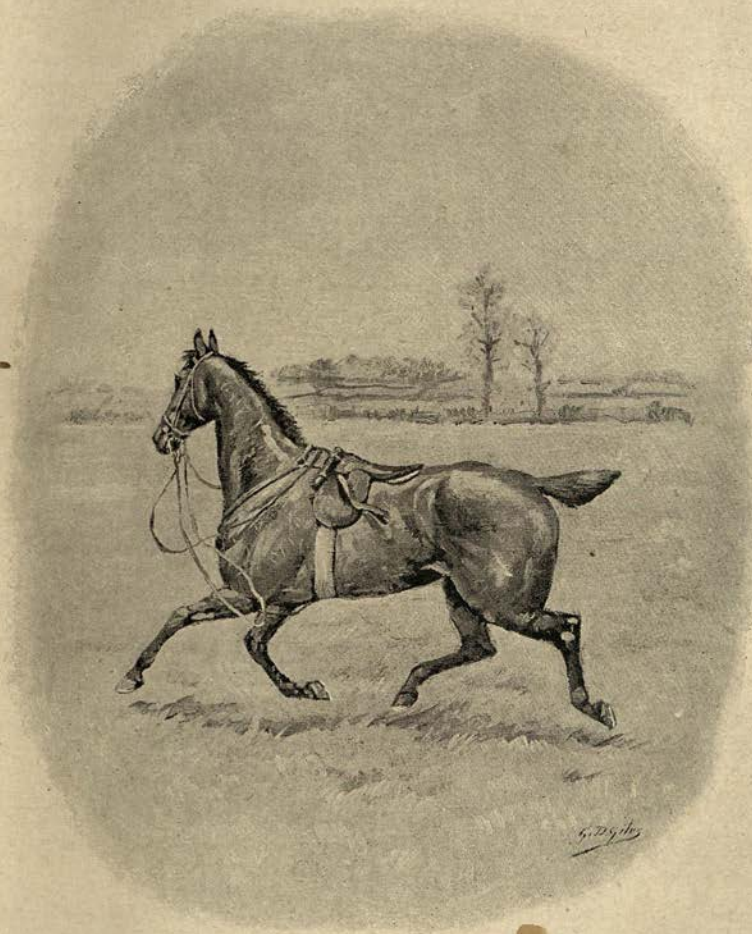
A GOOD START

danger. A gap, the first well established 'Shuffler's hole' we have come across, smiles wide-mouthed in front, when he suddenly diverges sharply to the left, and goes faster than usual at what is certainly the next best place, but a forbidding lonely looking spot in a bullfinch notwithstanding, his head slightly bent and right arm raised athwart his face ; the faint swish of the thorns as they close behind him, followed by an ominous rattle and crack, warns us of that most unnecessary appendage, an ox-rail on the far side, and through the tangle we just catch a glimpse of him as he saves a fall by sitting back and giving lots of head-room—*not* by holding on to the bridle under the impression that by that process he is 'picking his horse up Now for the first time our faith fails us, we waver in our allegiance, and, trying to persuade ourselves that his keen vision has for once been at fault, we speed our way towards the alluring gap, when alas ! we see, though too late, that there was method in the seeming madness of that leap. Some three or four hundred sheep of the mighty Leicester breed, the most perverse and wrong-headed that ever wore wool or were possessed of a devil, scared into action by the cry of the hounds and the rush of approaching hoofs, have just broken up the military phalanx into which they had formed on seeing the fleeting apparition of the fox, and are charging madly up the fence ; their point is evident ; they know of the gap and are making for it as for a haven of sure refuge. We are yet ten lengths off when the leading ewe turns short and dashes headlong into the ditch, our easy get-out is choked by a struggling heaving suffocating mass of fleece, forming a barrier more complete than any devilish complication of oak timber and wire rope ever devised by the ingenuity of an anti-fox-hunting farmer. The owner of these sheep, by the way, will not be greatly enamoured of the chase when he comes to reckon up the casualties which will result from this panic. Well ! the mischief is done now, we have hesitated and must perforce accept the penalty of hesitation ; with stomach for the fray materially weakened we resolve to have a go at the place through

which our pioneer has vanished, hoping that he may have done more for us in the way of cleavage than is outwardly apparent, so with such resolution as we can muster we sit down and drive to our doom; our drooping spirit has in the inevitable but mysterious way been communicated to our horse, he scotches a bit as the impervious looking blackthorn frowns upon him, then makes a sort of half-hearted jump which has just sufficient force to land him with forelegs in the ditch and chest against the rail, which is cracked but not (till now) broken, and over which we turn as imperial a crowner as ever dinted the elastic sward of a fifty acre grazing ground.

> What business had this child there to ride?
> But little or none at all;
> Yet I held my own for a time in the pride
> That goeth before a fall.

'Beggar my eyes, what a buster!' was the first articulate groan of a celebrated whipper-in as he lay prone and gasping for breath after a slight misunderstanding between a four-year-old and a blind ditch. Such too is the nearest approach to an idea which presents itself to us during the five minutes succeeding partial recovery and an erect position, while as in a dream we mechanically occupy ourselves in the process known as 'picking up the pieces,' which consists in extricating a dazed and battered head from a shapeless hat, and in endeavouring to make it less of a hood and more of an ordinary topper, in ascertaining if both collar-bones and all our ribs are broken, or if not how many of each, in retrieving a hunting whip, and digging a spur out of the ground. These little matters attended to we limp to our steed, who has hobbled himself with fore feet through the reins, and is standing a few paces off with a very rueful countenance, and a turf sod neatly packed under his brow-band as if he had been out catering for a caged dickey bird. With many a 'Hold-up, horse,' we disengage his hoofs from the bridle, throw it back over his neck, and prepare once more to clamber into saddle, when lo! we observe with dismay



STIRRUP NOWHERE TO BE SEEN

that the near side bar is empty and the stirrup and leather nowhere to be seen; the abysmal ditch is once more searched and in vain, we are about to give it up, concluding as Mr. Jorrocks did of his lost fox that it 'must have vanished into h'air or the earth swallowed it h'up,' when a gleam in the hedge catches our eye and reveals what has happened. Firmly wedged in the cleft of a strong grower, which has been split open some six inches from the top downwards, hangs the missing iron, and a numb aching in the left knee is now fully and satisfactorily accounted for. We are at once on rather better terms with ourself, for here seems proof positive that a fair amount of steam had been turned on, and that we had not charged the fence in the pusillanimous manner which usually ensures such catastrophe as ours.

After much struggling and wrenching, this important item of equipment is regained and adjusted on the saddle—not such an easy matter to manage while holding a horse who has recovered his wind, and who, recognising in the bullfinch a dreaded acquaintance, objects vehemently to again approaching it—and we at last remount and look about us.

Thank goodness! we have not been the only failure, nor of us alone has the oxer taken toll. Fifty yards off another victim is standing, gazing in despair at his horse who is holding up a leg as if he wanted to have his pulse felt; and still farther down, two grooms, a rustic, and a scarlet-clad figure hovering round a spot where four bright shoes are fitfully waving in the air, show where a hunter has got fairly cast in the ditch, and to this group we betake ourselves (after a passing word of encouragement to the owner of the dangling limb, to the effect that he will be all right in a few minutes, though without the faintest notion of any ground for such assertion), with as much of the Good Samaritan expression as we can manage to muster.

The chase has, of course, rolled far away over those swelling uplands; as we can no longer play at follow-my-leader in reality, neither do we greatly care to do so in imagination. There can be little doubt that our pilot pursued his bold and

steadfast career to the end, whether of killed, run-to-ground, or lost; that he jumped the inevitable brook in his own masterly fashion, though *without* previously announcing his contempt for it in Lord Gardner's historical formula of 'a fig for the Whissendine,' and that having procured his second horse he would be fully equal to any emergency provided by an afternoon fox.

So fares it, and so may it ever fare with the true fuglemen of the hunt, the favoured few who, mounted on the best horses the world has ever seen, have the requisite nerve and knowledge so exquisitely combined that they can brave and successfully overcome dangers which, to a man in whom either quality unduly preponderates, would be insurmountable. 'He doesn't know his danger' is a remark frequently heard, *à propos* of some ardent and rash beginner in the art of riding to hounds, who is seen attacking well-nigh impregnable fortresses of timber or thorn, when neither pace nor other circumstance call for such display of heroism; sometimes getting over by a fluke, sometimes 'meeting his friend,' but always with equanimity, and always rising unhurt. No, he does not know his danger, but he very soon learns it, the luck cannot last,

> In a rattling gallop with hound and horse
> You may chance to reverse the medal
> On the sward, with the saddle your loins across,
> And your hunter's loins in the saddle.

And he ultimately blends his valour with the necessary amalgam of discretion, in which case he developes into the real artist, or he overdoes the discretion part and becomes a hard funker, or sinks into the ordinary line rider.

Mr. Walter Little Gilmour,[1] one of the best known and boldest heavy weights who ever crossed Leicestershire, speaks with the authority derived from more than fifty consecutive

[1] Mr. Gilmour excelled in all sports, being as skilful with rod and gun as he was strong and resolute in the saddle; yet if we had to describe him in one short sentence, it would be 'he was the Bayard of the hunting-field.' He was the last survivor of all the knights who rode in the Eglinton tournament, where, on account of his size and strength, the *rôle* of the Black Knight was allotted to him. Cœur de Lion could have had no fitter representative.

seasons at Melton. He shall stand forth to bear witness how greatly a master of the art of riding may dare at a pinch, and yet how impossible the feat may be to all but to him whose mind *first* grasped the opportunity. Mr. Gilmour says :

The most *impossible* fence I ever saw jumped was by Wilbraham Tollemache, a brother of Lord Tollemache ; it consisted of an ox-rail, a very tall bullfinch which no man could see through, and which looked and was as solid as a house, a very wide ditch, a strong flight of railings three feet and a-half high beyond, into a road. It was the first fence from Glooston Wood. Wilbraham got the best start of anyone, but I and many others were not more than sixty yards behind him and saw him do it. The field soon became full of horsemen, I need not say we were all pounded and had to go to a gate a long way off, and saw Wilbraham and the tail hounds disappearing in the distance, going towards Langton Caldwell ; unfortunately for him, there was not much of a run. There appeared to be no part of the fence from which a horse could have struck back with its hind legs. I have not exaggerated this fence, rather the contrary. Sterling Crawfurd at that time lived at Langton ; we went from there more than once to look at the place afterwards, and could not have believed that any horse could have got over it unless we had seen it done with our own eyes.

Wilbraham rode a pulling *little* horse we called 'Emperor.' Atkinson (the Emperor) bought him afterwards. This I should say happened about forty years ago. Wilbraham Tollemache is still alive, and has a son, who like himself is a capital rider.[1]

Mr. Gilmour adds : 'If you think this fence big enough for the next volume of Badminton Library you can put it in.' We do indeed ; if any reader is dissatisfied he must complain to the Editor.

Precedence except over a country is held in small account by horsemen ; they stand not on the order of their going save when hounds are running, else it might have seemed more fair to accord first place in print to those riders to whom money *is* an object, but whose love of the sport is so keen,

[1] Not long after this letter was written, Mr. Gilmour, then eighty years old, died of pain and the sleeplessness caused by pain, which he bore without a murmur, almost without a groan.

and their skill and courage so great, that though mounted usually, if not habitually, on animals comparatively inferior to the flyers of the hunt, they always make a good fight of it, and are almost always seen at the finish, whether of twenty minutes up wind at steeplechase pace, or of a couple of hours gruelling through deep ground and over strong fences. They get there somehow, certainly to their own satisfaction, though with what struggles, what hair-breadth 'scapes of deadly peril, is known only to themselves, and in a lesser degree to their amazed quadrupeds, who must indeed wonder at finding themselves 'in that galley,' since bestridden by ninety-nine men out of a hundred instead of by the special hundredth by whose scientific hands they have had the luck to be steered, they would have been like

> the gem'man in pink
> Who swore at his tail we should look,
> *Not in the next parish* I think,
> For he never got over the brook.

These bruisers to whom

> nought comes amiss,
> One horse or another, that country or this,

are recruited from all sorts and conditions of men, frequently from the farmer class, while the medical profession supplies one if not two examples in most hunts. They make young horses and often ride them for sale, thereby conferring great benefit on the sporting world, since the confidential hunter, unlike the poet, is never born but always made, whatever the hard riders over the dinner-table may say to the contrary. 'Mount me on what you like, my dear fellow,' says Sir Brag over his second bottle of champagne; 'so long as he can go the pace, we shall get over the fences somehow, and speed will always make up the lost ground.' Not the less when he reaches the covert side the following morning does he privately interview his friend's groom, and most closely cross-examine him as to the jumping powers of the borrowed nag. He looks the gift horse in the mouth and in the manners too. Does he pull? Does he rush? Is he bold at water, and careful at timber? Does he ever turn

JOINING THE ROAD RIDERS

round? &c. &c. You would suppose he was going to buy at a fancy price, instead of contemplating a gratuitous ride of a few hours: and when all is said and done he probably joins the road-riders as soon as hounds find, on the plea that he has not the nerve to risk hurting another man's horse-flesh.

Not so one of our real all-round men, for they reap the reward of their bravery in being often mounted by their richer friends—not perhaps quite on the pick of the stable, but on a horse maybe that is just a trifle rash at the first three fences, or on one that wants a little more squeezing at water than his lawful owner feels quite competent to give; but they are rarely except by a fool or a ruffian put on a bad one; they find him out too soon, and show him up too completely. Short is the ceremony of getting into saddle with these men, they run a searching glance over the animal, perhaps just ask the groom in charge if there is any special trick or peculiarity to be guarded against, then mounting quietly and quickly they draw the reins lightly, feeling the mouth with a touch that at once inspires confidence, and trotting gaily along with the pack—than which nothing puts a horse into a better humour—a perfect mutual understanding exists before the gorse or woodland is reached.

It was said of the late Lord Clanricarde (the father of the man who has been the object of so much polite attention on the part of Irish patriots) that he could take a horse out of a post-chaise and hold his own in any run; and though there is no actual record of his having ever performed this exploit, he was so undeniable a follower of the chase that there is little doubt that he would have attempted it, had the alternative between machiner or no mount presented itself. He would at all events have had the pull of condition in his favour.

In a game such as riding to hounds where there is so much brilliant rivalry, distributed over so large an area that the picked champions of the various localities rarely meet, it may seem invidious to select a living illustration, yet as Leicestershire is still more or less the focus of the hunting world, and Captain Arthur Smith of Melton—for as of Melton he will always be

known to fame—has by public consent been for so many years recognised as having no superior and hardly an equal over a country, there can be no heart-burning caused by mentioning him as the exact type of what is here meant by the man who *will* be with them, and of whom it may be safely predicated that whenever he gets astride of a horse good, bad, or indifferent, in the hunting-field, it will be his misfortune, not his fault, if he does not see all that is worth seeing of the performance. One of the rare instances of men whose nerve has remained absolutely unimpaired into middle age, he yet was never even in hottest youth what is called a foolhardy rider. Perfectly devoid of jealousy, his one object in hunting is to see the run, while he has always been ready, ofttimes even at the sacrifice of that laudable ambition, to assist his friends, a term which includes the wide circle of his acquaintance, if his help could avail them during the vicissitudes of the chase. He was seen once sprawling on his back after a fall at the Beeby Bottom, whose treacherous banks had given way as he landed, gripping the reins of his struggling steed, but otherwise unmindful of his position and cheerily shouting to his followers, 'Come fast, come fast, the bank is rotten.' Lord Scamperdale would have remarked, 'Hold your tongue you fool, and you'll have it full presently.'

Though, as aforesaid, Captain Smith was never foolhardy, knowing full well that the less exertion a horse is called upon to make at his fences, the more of them he can be trusted to clear, yet who so bold as he when desperate circumstances required desperate decisions? On one occasion he and another man got together in a corner, hounds running like smoke, and no apparent egress. A glance convinced the friend of the impracticability of the place—and, 'It can't be done, Doggy,' he cried, as he saw the latter turn his horse for a run at the uncompromising obstacle. 'It can with a fall,' quietly replied the Captain, who forthwith proceeded to put his design into execution, took his fall, remounted nimbly, and was after the pack with scarce two seconds delay, while his friend went away very sorrowful to look for a gate.

Captain Smith is the possessor of a bow which can squeeze a tune out of the most unpromising fiddles.

The professional rough riders, the men who earn their living by schooling hunters in the hunting field, may seem hardly to come under the denomination of riders to hounds, yet those who know their business are amongst the very best we have. For it is obvious that if a horse is to be trained till he is worthy

'It can't be done!'

of the much-used, oft-abused appellations of 'Confidence,' or 'Perfection,' he must learn not only how to jump fences when he is fresh, but also how to go on and get over them when tired, and this lesson can never be learnt unless he is occasionally ridden right through a run in the best available company. It is as easy to teach a hunter to 'chuck it' when he has had what he considers enough, and his ideas of enough contract very speedily, as it is to teach a race-horse to retire gracefully

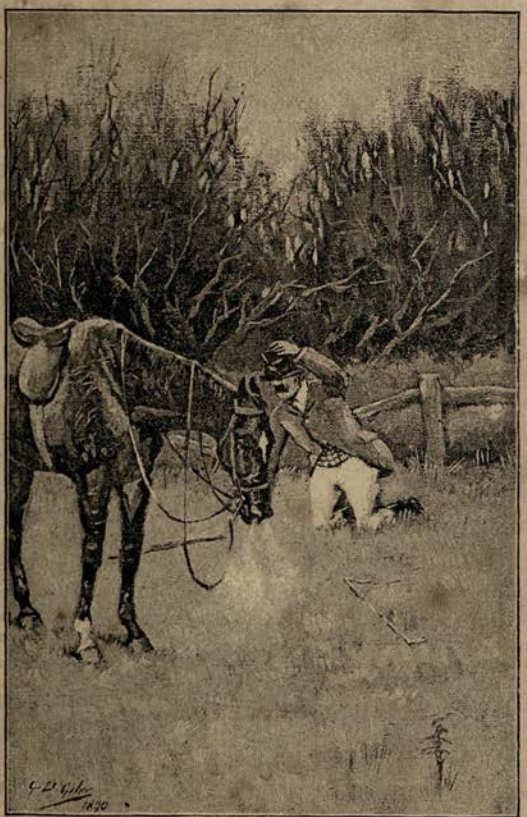
from the contest a furlong from home. Downe, who for many years did for Mr. Behrens professionally what Captain Smith assisted in as a labour of love,[1] is a brilliant exemplar of the horse tutor; he knows exactly the amount and nature of work requisite for his pupils, is as prodigal of his person as an undergraduate, and if he fails to attain the immortality of Dick Christian, it will be but for want of a 'Druid' as his *vates sacer*.

The item of education on which the rough rider specially insists, and in which his services are most valuable, is that his horse shall always know how to go *first*, not necessarily first in the sense of being nearest to hounds, for a servant cutting out the work is almost sure to arouse the ire of the M.F.H. who pours forth the vials of his wrath very freely on the head of such an offender, if the pack is pressed upon; but in the sense of going resolutely just at the particular spot in each fence chosen by his rider, who should go out of his way rather than follow anyone. The horse of the rough rider is supposed to be handed over a hunter *totus et teres* to his employer. All men who have any claim to the title of 'good to hounds' habitually *ride their own line*, not disdaining the friendly lead on occasion of necessity, but as a rule and as far as practicable picking their own places, to avoid the chance of a collision which produces certain disaster, and to escape the annoyance of having to pull up, or pull off, in the event of a friend falling just in front of them. A first flight man would always rather find himself on the back of an animal somewhat casual as to his taking off, so long as he *went where he was put*, than be mounted on a horse brilliant and accurate, while he can see another before him, but scotching, hanging, shifting, and looking nine ways for company, when he finds himself leading what he evidently considers a forlorn hope. Hands will cure or mitigate rashness; spurs are but an untrustworthy corrective of a failing spirit.

Whilst on the subject of going first, it may be opportune to

[1] Since the above was written the Newport Lodge establishment has been broken up by the death of Mr. Behrens, and Captain Smith has migrated to the Crawley and Horsham country.

mention that the advantages of the proceeding differ very materially according to the nature of the country to be traversed. In the shires, where the blackthorn grows luxuriantly on the



Signs of distress.

level of the ditch's lip, and is artistically cut, staked, and bound, often to a height of four feet, or when, in default of hedge, two or three strong rails make good the deficiency, it is evident that the chance of having a binder eased or broken, a rail cracked or

carried away, furnishes strong temptation to follow instead of to lead, not to mention the obvious convenience of being quite certain before committing oneself to the leap that neither quarry nor cattle-pit yawns on the hither side ; and the value of these privileges is never more highly esteemed than by one whose mount is from the pace, or want of condition, beginning to show signs of distress. For some minds too the unknown is devoid of charm. 'Now Sir H.,' shouted Lord Gardner in a quick burst from Ranksborough gorse, as they approached a nasty overgrown hedge with but one feasible spot anywhere near their line, 'which is to be first, you or I?' 'If you put it in that way,' replied Sir H., 'I should greatly prefer your going first, as I should like to know what's on t'other side.' Over went his Lordship, and over went his complacent follower, both perfectly satisfied. It is always well to have the courage of one's opinions.

On the other hand in many countries, such for instance as the Blackmoor Vale, and parts of Gloucestershire and Wiltshire, where banks predominate, the man who goes first (bar quarries and pits) generally has very much the best of it. Either because the soil is not so congenial to the quickset, or because providentially the art of training it is not so highly cultivated (Leicestershire basket-work on the top of Gloucestershire banks would set Dr. A. Grace road-riding), the binders, where there are any, are lower and weaker, and many places are not bound at all, so that the ditch (often a blind one), the bank, and brush thorns, form the obstacle. The first comer therefore has the firmest foothold, and the leverage of whatever strength there may be in the bank, but as in his transit he displaces a certain quantity of the earthwork, and possibly kicks or rakes brambles over the already sufficiently obscure ditch, his immediate successors have matters made worse instead of better for them.

Similarly, at a brook or wide open drain, except for the encouragement given to a faltering horse, and it must be granted that most horses do falter at these chasms, the worst plan that can be adopted is to follow, since at every hoof-stroke the banks are

more or less shaken or broken, so that the last man who comes hustling and 'Come-uping' in the rear is actually, though all unwittingly, attempting a greater feat than any of his precursors.

Vain words! Whatever may be said, the majority of every field of horsemen will go stringing after each other over a country, and if they find pleasure or profit therein who shall upbraid them?

There is yet another section of pursuers which deserves special notice—to wit, the cunning men of the hunt, the riders to points and to fox, rather than to hounds, though they would be mortally offended at being told they did not ride to hounds, arguing that, as they are during a great part of every run guided by ear, the cry of the hounds is to them what the sight of the fleeting forms is to the more ambitious competitors. The late Earl Fitzhardinge was wont contemptuously to summarise them as 'wind-sinking beggars from the West;' his autocratic Lordship being of opinion that the Berkeley Hunt was the 'Ultima Thule' of legitimate sport in the direction of the setting sun, and he vaguely believed that all 'wind-sinkers' came out of Devonshire or Cornwall, and being outside the pale, were unworthy of his august countenance; not that he himself was by any means a straight goer, or one who could afford to despise the advantage of being down wind, as in his later years, when deafness was growing upon him, he was followed by an attendant known as 'my Lord's hearer.' Some such dialogue as this was of daily occurrence when the pair were thrown out: 'D'ye hear 'em?' 'No, my Lord.' 'D——d fool you must be.' A pause. 'I hear 'em now, my Lord' (*allegro*). 'So do I, you d——d fool' (*staccato*).

As a matter of fact, the point riders are for the most part men bred and born or *ascripti glebæ* in the county over which they pursue, numbering many of the oldest inhabitants in their ranks, knowing every yard of the ground, and as the season progresses, getting almost on speaking terms with a fox which has given them two or three gallops. Sometimes they recognise

him as he breaks,[1] but in any case the first few fields afford the clue; they know they are after the old customer, and if they see hounds mean running, away they hustle on the familiar conducting lines, sure to be there or thereabouts at the death, if death ensues, when a feeling of regret as at the loss of an old friend seems to mingle with the sportsman's natural delight at seeing a fox handsomely killed. Perhaps of all men who go hunting they most thoroughly enjoy a run, since they see nearly as much of it as the thrusting brigade, and being seldom in danger and their attention wholly undisturbed by feelings of rivalry, they observe and appreciate the working of hounds with a more critical eye than do any but the real professors of the death or glory division, to whom, indeed, they are ofttimes a very thorn in the flesh; for what can be more disheartening to a man who has gone his level best for twenty minutes over a cramped or strongly enclosed country, than to see, on approaching a road at the expiration of that time, a bevy of cool veterans turning *out* of it through a bridle gate a hundred yards in front of him, and by so much therefore nearer to hounds; or to hear subsequently at dinner that his performance has been scanned not always with admiration, and his little aberrations duly noted from the serene security of a parallel lane? Let it not be supposed, however, that these wary ones are invariably safe men to follow for one who has made up his mind that nothing but a rut or a rabbit-hole shall have a chance of putting him down. Even the Homers of the chase sometimes nod, they now and again get cornered like other less enlightened mortals, and are known on emergency to do very mighty deeds of valour, somewhat after the fashion of the Squire's second horseman—in Leech's celebrated picture—who, having led Tom and Harry through a delicious succession of gates, finds the last one into the road chained, and—hops over it like a bird.

[1] Mr. Henley Greaves was noted for his acquaintance with foxes. On one occasion while he hunted the V.W.H. country, on viewing a fox away from the Purlieus gorse, he remarked in his slow solemn way: That's a Folly wood gentleman,' and galloped off. Straight as he went by road and lane to the Folly wood some four miles distant, the hounds went straighter and were there before him.

To whichever category of riders to hounds a man may choose to belong, whether he means to take pride of place amongst the top-sawyers, or, though in the second flight, to be as near them as he can; to struggle manfully in a third division, or toil wearily in the heterogeneous ruck; to join his fortunes to those of the short-cut and point riders, or to avow himself honestly an adherent of Macadam—quickness and decision at the start will best enable him to fulfil his aspirations, however lofty or however humble. In this, as in most human affairs, it is even better to decide wrongly than not to decide at all, since the very habit of making up one's mind in a moment is a discipline which soon conduces to forming right determinations. A man who hesitates when 'Gone away, away, away!' or sound of horn or whistle gives the devil-take-the-hindmost signal, may occasionally have a good start forced upon him, but rarely if ever gets one for himself. Having once decided, go *at once* whether it be for gate, gap, or hog-backed stile. It is marvellous how soon a quick man finds himself comparatively clear of any crowd, and able, if need be, to reconsider the position or to rectify a false move without let or hindrance from jostling fellow-sportsmen; he will be half way to Overton fishponds or Rocart spinney ere a quarter of the field have emerged from the well-known bridle gate at the top of Ranksborough, at which portal more cursing and confusion annually takes place than at any other bolt-hole of similar size and inconvenience in the United Kingdom.

Various articles of faith, all more or less dogmatic, and therefore all more or less misleading, have been handed down from generation to generation, till they have almost attained the dignity of a cross-country creed, of which two of the best known doctrines are, 'Never ride fast at timber,' 'Always ride fast at water.' Not bad general rules either, if frequent exceptions are admitted; but the idiosyncrasies of each individual horse, whether they be the result of education or instinct, must be a potent factor in determining the best way of sending him at any sort of fence, the best being always whatever is *easiest* to

him, which a good horseman will very soon discover. Then, again, circumstances alter cases. Take timber, for instance, at a naked flight of rails in a field, or at a queer stile in a corner, going slow is usually the preferable method, though some horses gallop over timber as safely as others do it at a trot, and many riders like going fast at it on the principle that you may break what you may not clear ; but when there is a wide ditch on the far side, or where the gleaming ox-rail is but the antecedent of other blessings, unless a horse is allowed some swing, his chances of a safe deliverance are exceedingly remote. Whatever applies to timber applies equally to walls, though these are seldom supplemented by a ditch, owing to a merciful law of nature which causes them to crumble into it, thus affording the convenience of a wholesome gap, if not of an improvised bridge, for the behoof of all comers, and the farmer, though he may be willing enough to let the mounted trespassers out easily and so be rid of them, does not see the fun of building dry walls and then undermining them, an act of folly from which even the idiot 'Balbus' of our early Latin exercises would have refrained.

Sometimes, however, in stone-wall counties an impediment is encountered such as that described by Lindsay Gordon in his 'Legend of the Cottiswold,' perhaps the most spirited rhymes that were ever written in record of a quick thing.

The right-hand man to the left-hand said,
As down to the vale we went,
'Harden your heart like a millstone, Ned,
And set your face as a flint ;
Solid and tall is the rasping wall
That stretches before us yonder ;
You must have it at speed or not at all,
'Twere better to halt than to ponder,
For the stream runs wide on the take-off side
And washes the clay bank under ;
Here goes for a pull, 'tis a madman's ride,
And a broken neck if you blunder.'

The whole of the right-hand man's advice is excellent, and

his conclusion is earnestly commended to the thoughtful reader, especially if he has attained middle age.

A brook is the obstacle for which the large majority of horses have the most instinctive aversion, the one above all

'The stream runs wide on the take-off side.'

others which, if they do at all, they will do after their own fashion. 'Drive him at water' say the sages; but supposing he objects to being driven, the driving only renders his refusal the more resolute, and the driver being usually in quite as great a funk as his horse, by sitting down and finishing as

soon as he sights the willows, not only pumps the animal, but confirms his previous impression that there is something dreadful in front of him.

The best way with a faint-hearted one (unless there is a bridge handy, which is far the easiest solution of the difficulty) is to give him very little notice indeed, but to trot or canter at the abyss in an indifferent manner, as who shall say, 'These rivulets are hardly worth troubling ourselves about, but we may as well pop over this one.' Occasionally a horse will jump standing what he will neither trot nor gallop to, but this is always an agonising effort for both parties to the transaction. Of course, if the width of the water is such that it is really a case of 'having it at speed or not at all,' the pull for bridge or ford is the only resource, unless the horse is one of those few and far between equine angels who can be trusted to go down at the glittering streak with ears cocked and the muscles of his back hardening under the saddle, till he throws what Davenport Bromley calls the 'entrancing parabola,' and, landing well beyond danger of yielding banks, strides over the adjoining meadow cracking his nostrils and rejoicing in his strength.

The knack of MAKING a hunter, whether going fast or slow, get every fence high or wide exactly in his stride is simply a matter of hands; but even men celebrated for their delicate manipulation of horses' mouths accomplish the balance trick better on an animal they have ridden two or three times than on one to whose stride they are unaccustomed.

Of 'Doubles' there are several sorts, and their negotiation must be attempted according to their species. The first, the most inhuman, and luckily the rarest, is the double pure and simple, a stake-and-bound hedge with a ditch on each side, such as exists or did exist with unpleasant frequency in the Brixworth Vale. Getting over such a fence as this is pretty much a question of scope[1] in the horse, and pluck in horse and

[1] Every horseman knows what is meant by the expression 'scope,' though it is not easy of exact definition. 'Length everywhere, except in the back,' is the best, though not altogether an ample, rendering.

rider; cleverness may be worse than useless on the part of the former, for though he may in striking back have the luck to hit a grower and so obtain additional impulse, he is just as likely to kick his hind feet between a couple of strong binders, and get hung up for his pains like a hare in a larder. The second form of double, the narrow bank with a couple of ditches, is common enough in some countries, and as a boundary fence is met with in most. It is a nasty trappy impediment, but as there *is* a bank there is also a *fulcrum* for a second effort; certainly it is not advisable to take it at a fly, though it is wonderful at what a pace horses who have been taught to 'cop,' as they call it in Cheshire, may be ridden with safety at one of these obstacles. The third or big roomy double, such as prevails in the Blackmoor Vale, consists of a very big broad bank, with a ditch and a fence of some sort on either side, and there being space for a horse to 'change,' i.e. take a half-stride in the middle, it is well to approach it with considerable deliberation, and this is all the more necessary inasmuch as ofttimes you cannot jump out exactly opposite to where you jump in, so that a perfectly handy hunter who will stop in a second, walk along the terrace between the hedges, and pop out the instant his head is turned to a weak place, is a boon and a blessing to the resident Blackmoor Valian. Here, if anywhere, 'Go slow' might be laid down as an axiom. Nevertheless startling exceptions have been given to the rule. Sir Henry Hoare, who bought his horses *for* Leicestershire, and rode them indiscriminately in any county where it suited him to pitch his tent for awhile, had one or two hunters, notably a celebrated chestnut called King Pepin, on which he charged the doubles of the Cheriton and Wincanton Vale as if he was riding at a Midland oxer, and though it must have been touch-and-go in more senses than one, he rarely if ever came to grief.

Take it all round, half or quarter speed is the best pace to ride at all ordinary fences under any circumstances, and certainly when hounds are running, the horse can spread himself without sprawling, and he takes off more accurately. In a

single-bank country too, when the ditch is away, the ground usually trends slightly upwards for some little distance before the thorns, and a horse *must* be made to go nearly into the roots in his fences, as, if he takes off at the beginning of this rise, though he may make two or three marvellous jumps, he cannot possibly go on doing it, and unless he can *go on* jumping, he is of no use to a man who means seeing the end as well as the beginning of a run.

Blind ditches mean bad falls and generally bad farming. Racing at them is not considered orthodox, but as to this matter many riders are freethinkers, holding, and perhaps rightly, that what a horse cannot see he is as likely to put his foot into it at one pace as another. If Mr. Jorrocks did not add to his hunting commination, 'Confound all farmers wot don't clean out their ditches,' he would be the first to acknowledge and to apologise for the omission.

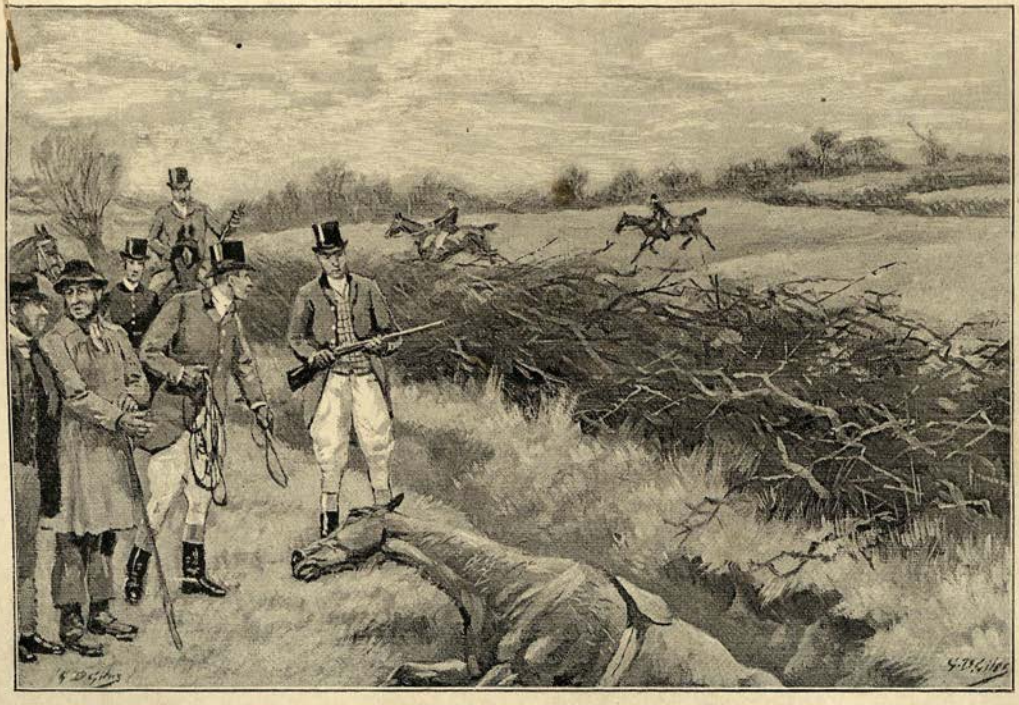
Another well worn bit of technical advice is, 'Keep inside hounds when they are running hard,' meaning—if they are cheeking the wind, ride slightly down wind of them, so that the turns may be in your favour, and you may save distance by going on the chord of the arc. Excellent in theory, excellent in practice, if foxes would only run on scientific principles, which in an uninhabited country they might perhaps be expected to do; but unfortunately it is not possible to lock up shepherds, sheep-dogs, cow-boys, and plough teams on hunting days, nor can traffic be stopped on the highways, so that everywhere there are 'lions in the path' to deflect even the most straight-necked fox from his proper course; in addition to all this his primary object being to save his life, he performs such deviations as he thinks most likely to answer his purpose. 'Keep your eyes open and your wits about you,' is after all the only unimpeachable counsel which can be offered to those who aspire to ride in the first flight.

'I rode the old horse to a standstill.' 'I could hardly raise a trot at the finish.' 'I regularly got to the bottom of the young one,' are sentences which often conclude the *vivâ voce*

description of a run—uttered too with an air of triumph instead of with the shame and remorse with which, if at all, they should be spoken. For the huntsman and whips, sometimes even for the master, every allowance must be made if they occasionally *overmark* their horses. Hounds have to be taken home, and the staff must if possible keep with them *coûte que coûte*. But the unofficial followers of the chase—who hunt for their own amusement, and are at liberty to pull up when and where they please—what excuse is there for them if they ride the willing horse to death? Absolutely none, unless extreme youth and ignorance can be urged in their favour. Simple vanity prompts the plea, 'I was determined I would see the end of it, happen what might.' The determination fades away quickly enough in the face of a wide fence, where the danger to their own lives is equal to, or greater than, that of their horses. We are, of course, speaking of cases where the animal has shown premonitory symptoms of exhaustion, for some horses collapse suddenly and without warning, when no blame can attach to the rider. Under such circumstances it is well not to take it too readily for granted that it is all over with them, even though they fall apparently lifeless. The following story is an instance in point.

Once upon a time, not many years ago, two intimate friends, who shall be called A. and B., were riding together in a good run. Both were undeniable horsemen, they had come fast and far, and had had the best of it throughout, and being well mounted had made liberal use of their horses, on whom, though in high condition, the severity of the pace was beginning to tell. 'Side by side these chiefs of pride' went down at that greatest of uncertainties—a bottom—one of those places which, a yard wide at one spot, may be thirty feet at another close by, the hairy straggling fence in front precluding all possibility of choice save to those who look before they leap, in which category could neither of the friends be included. B., slightly favoured by luck, got over with a peck and a scramble, but, as he recovered himself, a thud as of falling earth, and a splash on his left caused him to glance round, when he saw A. rolling

unhurt in the field, while his horse lay with forelegs just resting on the bank, and hind quarters dangling an inert mass down to the bottom of the ditch. Trusty pal as he was, B. pulled up at once and returned to the rescue; the pair were soon joined by one or two other riders, perhaps not altogether sorry for an excuse to stop; the rest of the chase swept on. The usual rustic, whom a special Providence ordains shall always in case of an accident arise as it were out of the earth, speedily cropped up, and a committee of investigation into the extent of the calamity was at once formed. There appeared but little room for doubt. Deaf to all exhortations to 'come up,' and insensible to sharp application of the whip, the steed remained as he had fallen, immovable, helpless, though seemingly without pain. The verdict—'Broken his back and must be destroyed at once,' was arrived at in less than no time. The rustic was forthwith despatched in search of a gun, with which he in due time returned—an ancient muzzle-loader, looking as if it had been loaded and laid by for a twelvemonth. Then arose the momentous question of who was to do the bloody deed. 'Not I,' said A. 'Never shot a horse in my life,' said B. The others were equally reluctant, the labourer averring that he 'had never so much as fired off a gun in all his born days;' and so the discussion went on till it was decided by a majority of votes that, as the victim was A.'s property, on him devolved the necessity of performing the odious though humane duty. To A. accordingly was handed the instrument of death, which he cocked with trembling hand, and taking prolonged aim just behind the ear, pulled hard on the rusty trigger. Bang! went the *cap* with a splendid detonation, but no puff of smoke or answering report followed. The weapon had missed fire! The effect, however, was far more startling than anything they had imagined, for up jumped the horse, sprang nimbly out of the bottom, careered wildly around the field, and his bridle having been prudently removed lest the headstall should be cut by the shot, it took four men a quarter of an hour to catch him. He was only a bit blown, and finding himself in difficulties had taken



HIS LAST FENCE

the opportunity of recovering his wind, while his death-warrant and the details of his execution were being decided upon.

Moral.—Always snap a cap before you begin serious shooting; it affords time for reflection to all parties concerned.

The public mind has of late been greatly exercised by the question of how to obtain an adequate and permanent supply of the raw material in the way of horses for purposes of warfare.

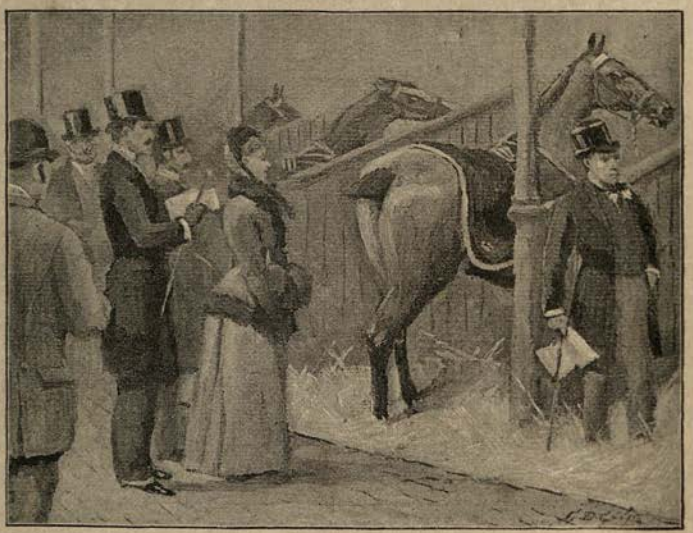
The question of how to procure the perfected [1] and manufactured article in the shape of hunters is one of perennial interest to riders to hounds. 'Buy from the farmer in the hunting field, where you see what the animal can do and where you can almost always get a fair trial,' is the idea which perhaps naturally suggests itself, and is the advice usually given.

No better plan could be adopted *if* only you can discover in the hands of a farmer a horse combining all or most of the qualities of which you are in search. Unfortunately there is a very big 'If' in the way. 'What we want to breed is a big brown horse, what we usually get is a little chestnut filly,' said a farmer who had paid some attention to breeding, and the little chestnut fillies being in a ratio of something like 20 to 1 against the big brown horses, and taking the latter as the type of our heart's desire, it is obvious that in the hunting country of our choice or abode it is the merest chance if we meet with one or two specimens, at the outside, in the course of a season, and even these may not in all respects satisfy our requirements. Few men have the means or inclination to move about from one hunting quarter to another, and a man must light upon a land where the inhabitants are singularly simple if as a stranger he can drop in and pick up equine plums from under their noses.

There are still several courses open to the would-be buyer. He may, if a decided Home Ruler, and as such not over-

[1] The system of buying young ones and making them is here purposely left untouched. Either by self or deputy it is a method within the reach of but few people; coming, moreover, rather under the head of 'breaking,' than of 'riding to hounds,' it will be dealt with elsewhere.

scrupulous where his interests are concerned, get a boycotted hunter cheap through the medium of his allies on the other side of St. George's Channel, whence the flowers of the (hunting) field seem mostly to emanate. He may, if sufficiently rich, tempt some poorer friend to part with the pick of his basket, a noted hunter whose prowess in the field has excited his envy; or he may, as most men do, betake himself to the dealer's yard, where, if he is a good judge, is contented to pay through the nose,



Tattersall's.

and can extort a trial with hounds before the bargain is finally concluded, he is as likely to suit himself as elsewhere. The best plan of all for a man who does not mind putting his hand in his pocket—and cheap horses are usually the dearest—is to go to Tattersall's when a celebrated stud comes up for auction; owing to accident, ill-health, or other causes such sales take place occasionally throughout the season, and are frequent at the end of it. He can have the animals 'vetted' as much as

he pleases, though he is not likely to get one passed absolutely sound—if he does it will probably turn out a hopeless cripple ; but he can without much difficulty find out which have been the owner's favourites, and in what repute they are locally held ; a judicious tip may extract the secret of any serious crab (the yard-men always know if such exists), and when satisfied that he has seen the stamp of horse he requires, and that the character from the last place is unimpeachable, let him boldly take his stand under Mr. Tattersall's eye, and nod till he reaches the end of his tether or till the hammer falls to his bid.

Are good hunters scarcer now than formerly? It is the fashion to say that they are ; yet Mr. R. Chapman of Cheltenham, no mean authority, declares that the supply of first class horses is very much the same as ever, though the difficulty of procuring them is augmented by the ever increasing number of men who hunt, and who mean being well and comfortably carried if money will do it for them. This influx of good buyers notwithstanding, *top* price remains pretty much what it was fifty years ago. Five hundred was then, as it is now, considered to represent the value of the highest order of merit, though seven hundred is given in exceptional cases.

Do men ride as hard now as they did in days of old? Our own opinion is that they do, and that being on the whole better mounted, there is in every hunt a larger average of riders who will not be denied than there was five-and-twenty or thirty years ago ; but here again Mr. Chapman, whose hunting career has extended over a still longer period, may well be quoted. He says the young ones don't last at it as long as they used. A very few years generally sees them out as first-rate horsemen ; after that time they decline having anything to do with an animal that requires any riding however *good* he may be ; they want a comfortable rather than a brilliant mount.

A final word on horse furniture for the benefit of beginners only. Ride in any saddle that suits you, and that fits your horse ; to the first of these conditions you will naturally pay attention, the latter you will do well not to assume will be cared for by your

groom. A man's saddle seldom hurts a horse except about the withers. A groom never seems to be aware that the rider's weight brings the pommel down on those parts, and is satisfied if it stands up clear before the horse is mounted. As to this you can judge for yourself the moment you are on his back by trying if you can place three fingers comfortably under the pommel without being pinched. If on starting your horse feels as if he was lame all round and ricked in the back, be sure there is something wrong with his tackle; even if he does not show it on the flat he will do so on descending the first and slightest declivity. If when riding with plain flaps you find you are continually shot 'out of the plate' at fences, by all means have pads, bolsters if you like, in front of your knees; if you prefer the plain flaps, have them cut well forward, and without stitches round the edge.

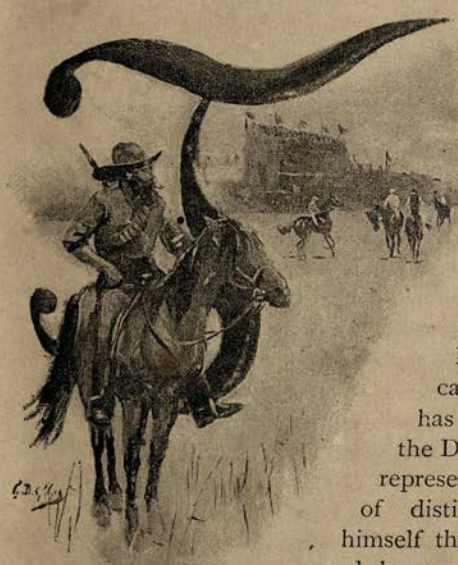
Many admirable treatises have been written on bits and bridles; we have no wish to add to the number. As one of the oldest of the essayists has said, 'There is a key to every horse's mouth if you can only find it.' Suffice it here to remark that if a horse does not want much holding almost any double rein bridle, with steel or leather curb, or without either, will answer the purpose. If he really catches hold, discard all suggestions and ideas of 'secundos,' 'Chifneys,' 'gridirons,' 'high ports,' and such-like fancy instruments of torture (though a gag is occasionally useful), and try to arrange him simply by length of cheek to the bit; you may have it a foot long an it please you, for it is what is *inside* and not what is *outside* his mouth which hurts and irritates him. If he does not respond to this treatment, but continues to get the upper hand of you, sell him and let somebody else try experiments with him.

'Sit down in your saddle and keep his head straight,' is the best of all possible advice, but it must be in a saddle and with a bridle, made and adjusted so as to afford the greatest comfort combined with perfect liberty of action to horse and rider.

CHAPTER II

THE SADDLE-HORSE

By Alfred E. T. Watson



To speak of the 'saddle-horse' is to employ an exceedingly comprehensive term, including, as it does, horses of all sorts, from the rough creature that ranges the Australian bush or the American prairie and scarcely has a monetary value, to the Derby favourite, worthy representative of a long line of distinguished ancestors, himself the perfection of make and shape and—though ill-shaped horses have won the Derby, and of late years neither Ormonde nor Donovan would have been picked out for their looks—the greatest of all possible contrasts to his humble far-away cousin the broncho. No attempt will be made

here to describe the points and peculiarities of all the innumerable varieties of saddle-horse that exist in different parts of the world, nor will much space be devoted to the racehorse or to the charger. It is true that the great object of racing is, or should be, to improve the breed of horses for cavalry service, as was lately set forth in a preface, written by the Editor of the present Library, to an interesting French publication called 'Les Chevaux de Course.' 'En ce qui concerne la cavalerie,' his Grace the Duke of Beaufort wrote, 'on cherche à avoir des chevaux de première force, très résistants, et pouvant supporter la plus grande fatigue. C'est du pur sang seul que viennent de pareils animaux; seuls, les croisements répétes, avec le pur sang, pourront donner aux chevaux de remonte le fonds qui leur est indispensable.' These words will give to many persons a new idea of the value of the racehorse; but the troop-horse is not primarily a creature devoted to British sports and pastimes, and so does not come under the scope of the present chapter, which is to deal chiefly with the animal first suggested when the saddle-horse is mentioned—that is to say, the hack.

The question is often asked, why it has become customary to speak of the English as a nation of horsemen, and an answer is rarely attempted. In some other lands the business of life is conducted far more generally on horseback than in England, and everyone rides as a matter of course; but an answer may be found in the fact that Englishmen ride chiefly from choice, and the English are a nation whose chief sports are associated with horses, whether the national sport *par excellence* be racing or hunting. The very shape of the English saddle seems to prove a love of the exercise of horsemanship. In some countries the saddle is an elaborate structure into which the rider is wedged, with a species of chair-back behind, a corresponding elevation in front, and stirrups in the nature of shoes. The Englishman, on the contrary, likes to be as near his horse as he can; even the padded saddle is often discarded for one with plain flaps, and it is made as light as is consistent with reasonable comfort. It is the same with bits.

The Mexicans and others put huge and cruel contrivances into their horses' mouths, apparently regarding the severest bit as the best ; the Englishman chiefly uses a common double bridle, or perhaps only a simple snaffle.

English hacks of the present day are drawn from a few well-recognised sources, but the horses in general use in England during the sixteenth century appear to have been gathered from all quarters of Europe and from some districts of Africa as well. Information on the subject is given at length in a remarkably quaint and interesting old black-letter book, published in 1597, and written by 'Maister Blundeuill of Newton Flatman, in Norffolke,' to quote the superscription ; and 'Maister Blundeuill' is clearly an authority, for he seems to have been employed about the Court of Elizabeth, and he dedicates his work 'to the Right Honorable and his Singular Good Lord, the Lord Robert Dudley, Earle of Leicester, Baron of Denbigh, Knight of the Honerable Order of the Garter, and Maister of the Queenes Maiisties horses and one of her Highnesse Priuy Councell,' to whom 'Thomas Blundeuill wisheth perfect felicitie.' The observations of such a man as this are well worth note, and it is an extraordinary thing that the record of a book by the right-hand man in stable matters of Queen Elizabeth's famous Master of the Horse (or one of them, for the Earl of Worcester was also her M. H.) should have become so obscure that in few bibliographies that deal with the subjects of horses and equitation, though they contain the names of nearly every volume in connection with horses that has been published in any language since the Ἱπποϊατρικόν of Kimon of Athens, circa 430 B.C. (Xenophon's Ἱππαρχικός was fifty years later), is there any mention of Thomas Blundeuill. This being so, it is almost certain that the book will be absolutely unknown to the reader, and comments on it may prove of interest.

Blundevill—we must at any rate supply the 'v' so as to modernise his name for the sake of convenience—was quite unprejudiced, and the 'nation of horsemen' theory is perhaps

a little shaken by the circumstance that he not only finds much lacking in regard to the horse supply, but also suggests what should be done towards acquiring the art of horsemanship 'so that the Gentlemen of the Realme should so farre passe the Frenchmen and all other Nations in the exercise, as they now excell vs : whereby the Realme should bee of such force, as our enemies woulde alwaies be afraid to attempt any enterprises against vs.' The English cavalry of three or four hundred years ago certainly does not seem to want any excuse, but perhaps Blundevill was referring in a great measure to the arts of the *manège*, which have never acquired that popularity in England that they have gained abroad.

In his enumeration of the horses that prospered well in England (from which the horses of to-day are therefore descended), omitting strange kinds and all but the most worthy, the author numbers 'the Turkie, the Barbarian, the Sardinian, the Neapolitan, the Jennet of Spain, the Hungarian, the high Almaine, the Frizeland horse, the Flanders horse, and the Irish hobbie ;' and of all these varieties descriptions are given. The 'Turkie horse' in itself includes a number of other breeds which it would be tedious to mention, and, on the whole, Blundevill did not esteem them very highly except for their courage. It is worth noting that in those days, when in many ways horses were very cruelly treated, it is remarked of the Turk that he 'will go more by gentle means than by stripes or great thrashings.' An odd legend existed to the effect that 'if when you will run him, at the setting forth you saie but the word "Braie" unto him, he will never leave running so long as his breath will serve him.' The 'Barbarian' of the fifteenth century is of course the Barb of to-day, and there are several sorts of Barbs, their general characteristics being speed, endurance, and courage. It would not occur to the Englishman of the present time to look for horses in Sardinia and Corsica, nor indeed has Blundevill much to say on behalf of these breeds. He found them to be very 'unquiet in their pace'—that is to say, intemperate, and prone to resent correction. Of the

courser of Naples he had a very high opinion, however, the race being good, comely, and strong, and 'of so much goodnesse, of so gentle a nature, and of so high a courage as any horse is, of what country so ever he be.' The courser of Naples was distinguished by a Roman nose, or, to quote Blundevill, from the eyes downwards his face bent 'like a Hawkes beak.' Some of the old Italian masters faithfully convey the type in their pictures. The creature is also to be commended for what the author, using a quaint but favourite phrase, calls his 'sure footmanship.'

About the jennets of Spain authorities differ, some ancient writers from whom Blundevill draws declaring that, though famous for their swiftness, they are 'small of stature, of small strength, and of small courage;' while others state the precise opposite; and, as to courage, Blundevill quotes the assertion of soldiers who have told him that they could not tell how many miles jennets have carried their riders out of the field, 'after the jennets themselves have been shot clean through their bodies with harquebushes.' It is by no means obvious that this is to be accepted as a proof of the jennets' courage: it might be that, being desperately frightened, they ran till they dropped. A point which Blundevill himself noticed was that the pace of the jennet is neither trot nor amble, but 'a comelie kind of going like the Turke.' In the case of the Hungarian horse, handsome is as handsome does. These animals are described as having great and hooked heads, eyes that 'stand almost without the head,' broad jaws, a long, rough neck, with a mane hanging down beneath the knees; but they are both temperate and wise. The Almaine horse was big and clumsy, and his pace for the most part a very hard trot. Riders of these animals made them 'turn always with their hinde part, not with their fore part:' obviously they were bad-shouldered horses. The Flanders horse closely resembled the Almaine, though the former was usually bigger, but the Friezeland was quite another creature, generally of mean stature, and of a disposition 'so devilish, so stubborn, and so froward,' that it was

practically impossible to manage him, and thus to exact the 'good comely trot' of which he was capable. The Irish Hobbie had much to recommend him. Except for a tendency to be 'slender and pin-buttocked,' he was indifferently well-shaped, and, when not skittish and fearful for lack of due training, nimble, agile, pleasant, and apt to be taught.

As for the teaching of these days, the methods were generally severe and not seldom exceedingly quaint. Grison, one of the great authorities whom Blundevill quotes, believed that a man's planet influenced his horsemanship, and hoped that all students might have 'the helpe of a good constellation, inclining you to follow continuallie with a fervent zeele the schoole of Mars;' but besides this, three things were stated to be necessary —'first, to know how and when to help your horse; secondlie, how and when to correct him; thirdlie, how and when to cherish him and make much of him;' and the writer goes on to a truth which is perhaps insufficiently appreciated at the present day, to the effect that 'the voice is that which any horse feareth most, and is needful in all disorders.' How the voice was to be used for correcting, thrashing, or to 'coax the horse for doing well' is set forth at length, and reads very oddly. The main directions are too long to transcribe here. There is a special chapter, 'Of the Rod,' showing when the 'rod or cudgell' should be used; and a short chapter, 'Of the Stirrup,' which goes to show that, in spite of the author's criticism on native horsemanship, the average rider was perfectly at home in the saddle, for it is assumed that 'the correction or help of the stirrup is seldom used.' 'Of the Spur' follows, and it is strange at the close of the nineteenth century to find the old writer of the sixteenth describing how 'first you shall understand that in olde time men were so ignorant, as they would never spur their horses until they were not onlie staid of head, but also perfect in all such orders as they used in those daies; so that, though their horses were five or seven years old, yet could no man assure himself of their goodness. For most commonlie, when they came afterward to be spurred,

either they waxed so stubborne and so divelish, as they would not abide the spur, but fall a leaping and flinging, and trieing of masteries to cast their riders;' or else, to summarise, they turned sulky and would not go on. It is satisfactory to find the lesson inculcated that the spur is not to be used often, when once the horse has been taught to stand it, and this partly for reasons of humanity, and partly because 'overmuch spurring will make him swing-tailed, especially if he be a jennet or a Turkie horse, whose tailes be always loose and at libertie, and are not tied as the coursers be.' To see the manner in which the coursers' tails were tied old pictures must again be consulted.

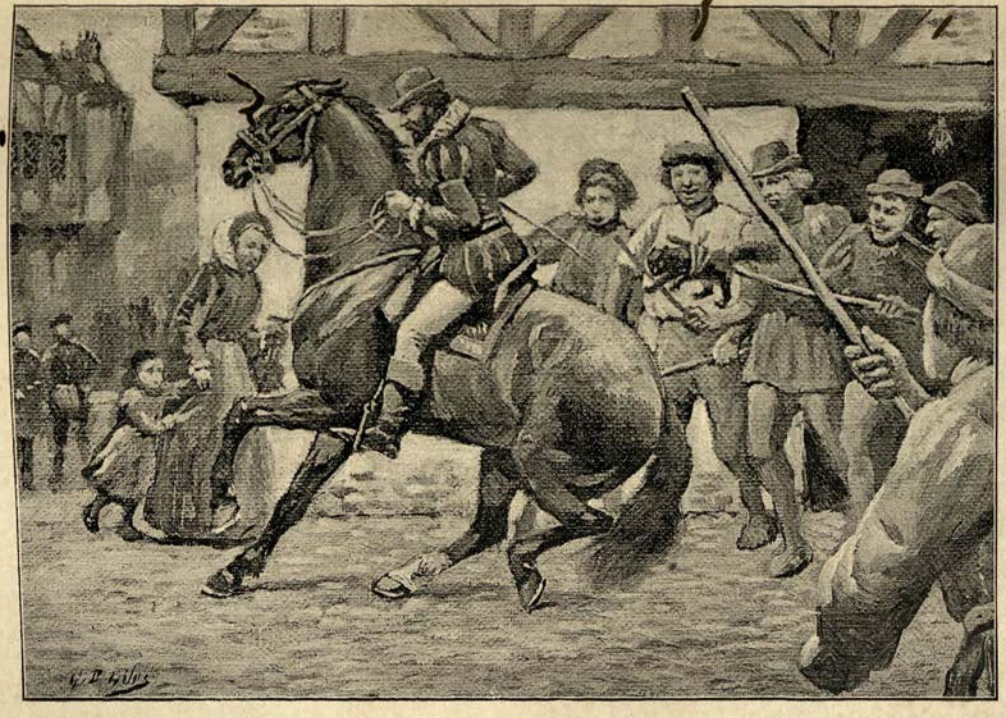
In spite of Blundevill's belief in the efficacy of the human voice, he devotes many chapters to what he advises as the best correction for various faults; and some of these, it is to be feared, must have done immense mischief certainly they must have caused much suffering, for there are several lessons which were only to be taught by beating the horse with a cudgel when in his stable; and in some cases the rider is advised to go into a ploughed field, and, having invoked the aid of one or two footmen, always armed with cudgels, there to belabour the unfortunate horse. Some remedies even more preposterous were recommended by Lord Leicester's right-hand man, one of which is too curious to be passed over, as an example of the methods adopted by this author who lamented the ignorance of his ancestors. The following is a 'correction to be used against restifenesse,' when the rider desires to 'get the maistrie of his horse, and to make him know his faults:'

> Let a footman stand behind you with a shrewd cat tied at the one end of a long pole, with hir bellie upward, so as she may have hir mouth and clawes at libertie; and when your horse doth staie or goe backward, let him thrust the cat betwixt his thighs, so as she may scratch and bite him, sometimes by the thighs, sometimes by the rumpe; . . . and let the footman and all the standers-by threaten the horse with a terrible noise, and you shall see it will make him to go as you will have him; and on so doing be ready

to make much of him. Also, the shrill crie of a hedgehog being strait tied by the foot under the horse's taile is a reminder of like force, which was proved by Master Vincentio Respino, a Neapolitan, who corrected by this means an old restive horse of the King's in such sort, as he had much ado afterward to keepe him from the contrarie vice of running awaie. The like correction also may be given with a whelpe, or some other loud-crieing and biting beast, being tied to the crupper, so as he may hang downe under the horse's taile, having a long ende fastened unto him, which ende, passing between the horse's thighs, the rider shall hold in his right hand to molest the horse therewith by pulling it and letting it go as he shall see it needful. Or, instead of such a beast, there may be tied a piece of iron of a foote in length, or more, and three fingers broade, made full of prickes like thornes.

Let it be added, however, that Blundevill did not recommend these strong measures as a rule—and probably Maister Vincentio Respino must at times have wondered whether he was altogether on the right track when the old restive horse of the King's, after being treated as described, did precisely what it was most natural to expect. The 'waies rehearsed are not to be commonlie used, but only in time of neede, and then with goode discretion; for otherwise you should but amaze your horse and drive him to despair, for he shall never understand your meaning.' The horse's amazement and despair are certainly comprehensible. Such, however, were some of the methods in vogue in the reign of Queen Elizabeth.

At the present day, though certain men have prejudices with regard to the colour of their horses, there are no hard and fast rules laid down by authorities as to what colour should be avoided and what chosen. Three hundred years ago this was considered a very important point, it being supposed that, according to its colour, a horse was influenced by the four elements—earth, air, fire, and water—another quaint theory long extinct. Horses that had more of the earth than of the rest were by disposition 'melancholie, heavie, and faint hearted, and of colour black, russet, bright or dark dunne.' The horse that was influenced for the most part by



'CORRECTION TO BE USED AGAINST RESTIFENESS'!

'the watery element was most commonly white, and he, it was said, usually showed himself to be phlegmatic, slow, and dull. The bay, pleasant and nimble, was of the air; the bright sorrel was of the fire and he was cholerick and fiery, but seldom of great strength. The best colours were thought to be those in which the various elements mingled, an equal share of each making the best horse, and the colours of such animals were brown bay, dapple gray, black full of silver hairs or a fair roan; bright and dark bays were also thought to be particularly good. Black points were regarded as desirable, but very various qualities were supposed to be indicated by white markings, particularly on the feet. How the intricate ideas on this subject arose is a very curious consideration. Thus, horses were esteemed if they had a white off fore foot, or white near hind foot, or both hind feet white, but the white was not to be above the pasterns 'for that were an evil sign betokening divilitie.' The seven bad points were a white near fore foot, a white off (Blundevill calls it 'farre') hind foot, both fore feet white, two white feet on the same side, near fore and near hind, or the reverse. These ideas were accepted in Italy as well as in England, very probably indeed having been adopted in England from the Italian authorities of the period, and each variety had its specific name; thus a horse with a white off foot was called 'arzeglio,' others were 'trauato,' traversed, a 'trastrauato,' cross traversed. A white-tailed horse, 'rapicano,' was said to be commonly a good horse, and an accepted theory was to the effect that 'the horse that hath an ostrich feather either on his forehead, or both sides of his maine, or on the one side, or els behind on his buttocks, or in any place where he himself cannot see it, can never be an euill horse.'

Virgil's description cannot be omitted, familiar as it will be to many readers. He would have the horse

> Illi ardua cervix,
> Argutumque caput, brevis alvus, obesaque terga:
> Luxuriatque toris animosum pectus.

As for shape—and the old writer, in some way seeming to contradict his theories, admits the obvious fact that a horse, however well coloured and marked, is of little worth unless his shape be good—the ancient rules agree for the most part with the opinions of to-day. When perfect shoulders are described as 'long, large, and full of flesh,' the term long and large probably implies well sloped; but the necessity of fulness of flesh is less apparent, nor is the 'large and round breast' now considered essential; and again, the summary which states that 'his whole head together should be like a sheepes head,' is open to argument. The type is recognisable in many old pictures, but a horse's head is not now considered perfect the more closely it resembles the head of the sheep. A poet of the saddle, the late Major Whyte Melville, had a different theory. His perfect horse was to have

> A head like a snake, and a skin like a mouse,
> An eye like a woman—bright, gentle, and brown;
> With loins and a back that would carry a house,
> And quarters to lift you smack over a town.

Neither the snake nor the sheep, however, can be accepted.

It is held by many foreign horsemen that the English hack of the present day is a much less admirable beast, and his rider a much less accomplished horseman, than was the case centuries ago; for the reason that in England the horse and rider are practically never required to possess accomplishments which were once comparatively common in this country and are still held in high esteem abroad. Blundevill gives instructions for the performance of the capriole—or goat's leap—the pirouette and other movements and exercises of the *haute école*, which, as a rule, Englishmen regard as fit only for the circus, in this respect provoking the contempt of those who have studied the arts of the school. An Englishman's highest ambition, apart from success in sport between the flags, is to ride straight to hounds in the manner which, causing no unnecessary exertion to himself or his horse, enables horse and man to last the longest

without fatigue. The rider sits down in his saddle, light hands easily control his horse, he jumps his fences as they come, recognising the manner in which each variety—hedge, timber, or water—should be taken, and has no sort of desire to practise the 'high airs' of the school. To him it seems utter waste of time to induce a horse to piaffer, execute the Spanish trot, or perform other feats of school training. If he can make his horse lead off with either leg as he may indicate, and perhaps swing his croup as well as his forehand, the animal is looked on as possessing a superfluity of accomplishments. The school rider, on the other hand, has a very poor opinion of the man who in what seems to him a rough and uncultivated way can gallop a horse in more or less uncollected fashion over field and fallow, getting over or through such obstacles as intervene. It is argued by an enthusiast—Colonel Theodore Ayrault Dodge, author of an excellent work on riding called 'Patroclus and Penelope'—that no man who has once been a school-rider ever abandons either the knowledge he has gained or its constant practice. 'No one,' he maintains, 'can underrate the pleasure of swift motion upon a vigorous horse. But the school-rider has this, in equal degree with the uneducated horseman, coupled with a feeling of control, and power, and ability to perform which the mere man on horseback never attains. Moreover, all the powers of the school-rider's horse are within the grasp of his hand; and that the powers of the high-strung steed of the average equestrian are all too often resident mainly in the animal itself, is shown by the chapter of accidents daily reiterated in the news-columns. The school man is apt to ride more moderately, and to indulge in a bracing gallop less frequently, because to him the pleasure of slow and rhythmic movement on a fleet and able horse is far greater than mere rapidity can ever be; the untrained rider resorts to speed because this is the one exhilaration within the bounds of his own or his horse's knowledge. I do not wish to be understood as advocating the school habit of *always* keeping a horse collected. I often saunter off a half dozen miles without lifting

the rein, while Patroclus wanders at his own sweet will. I often trot or gallop at my nag's quite unrestrained gait. But if I want to collect him, if I want that obedience which the school teaches him to yield, he must, to be to me a perfect horse, at my slightest inclination give himself absolutely to my control and take all the rest from me. I feel that I am a good judge of either habit of riding, as I have well tried both and absolutely adhere to neither.'

The argument so far as it is based upon newspaper paragraphs about accidents has no value. A school horse is susceptible of sudden fright and might get beyond control, and the best rider may be momentarily off his guard; but otherwise this evidence has value. The truth about school-riding doubtless is that it is an acquired taste. Some men find peculiar delight in it, to others it is tedious and meaningless as an exercise, and, with regard to utility, though it may be admitted that there are possibilities of occasions arising when the school-rider's special command over his horse may prove of great importance, as a rule the Englishman finds that he has no necessity for the practice of school arts. He derives all imaginable enjoyment from riding in the manner in which he is accustomed to ride, and has no inclination to do more, though it is doubtless true that no man can open a gate properly who has not been taught to 'use his legs,' and a more undesirable companion than a man who constantly rides up against you and takes the buttons off your breeches it is difficult to imagine. The school rider tells the horseman who passes muster as well accomplished in the hunting field that he is wilfully ignoring an untried source of pleasure. It might be so.

Quam scit uterque, libens, censebo, exerceat artem.

There is this to be said, moreover, that to teach man or horse these 'airs,' as they are called, is a very prolonged undertaking, as an anecdote related in the book just mentioned shows. 'One of my friends in Touraine,' the author says, 'used in his youth to be a pupil of the famous Baucher. He

once told me how, at the instigation of his class-master, he begged hard for many days to be allowed to ride the master's favourite horse, with whom he was apt to join his higher class. My friend flattered himself that he could manage any horse, as he had long ridden under Baucher's instruction. As an example to the class the master finally gave way. But the experiment was short. My friend soon found that he was so much less accomplished than the high-strung beast, that he was utterly unable to manage or control him, much less to perform any of the school airs, and he was by no means sorry when his feat of equitation was terminated by so dangerous a rear that Baucher deemed it wise to come to the rescue. My friend's hands, though well drilled, were so much less delicate than the horse's mouth, that the latter had at first mistaken some peculiar unsteadiness as the indication for a *pirouette*, to which he had obediently risen ; but then, on feeling some additional unsteadiness of the reins, he had, in his uncertainty and confusion, reared quite beyond control. Yet under the master the horse's habit of obedience was so confirmed that he was apparently as moderate as any courageous horse should be.'

It thus appears that the school horse may be far too accomplished, and that if the rider's artistic progress be not proportionate, mischief may ensue. It should be added, however, that the theory of school riding is for every man to train his own horse. That the art will ever again be generally practised in England is extremely doubtful, though our ignorance of it may earn the contempt of foreigners who make it their chief study if they aspire to be horsemen. Those who deride may be invited to come and see what they can do in the way of winning a Liverpool Grand National.

The perfect hack—that is to say, what is commonly recognised as such, for the school-rider will not, of course, admit that a hack can approach perfection unless it has been trained according to the theories of which Baucher was perhaps the greatest of modern exponents—bends readily and obediently to his rider's hand, though his neck has never undergone the

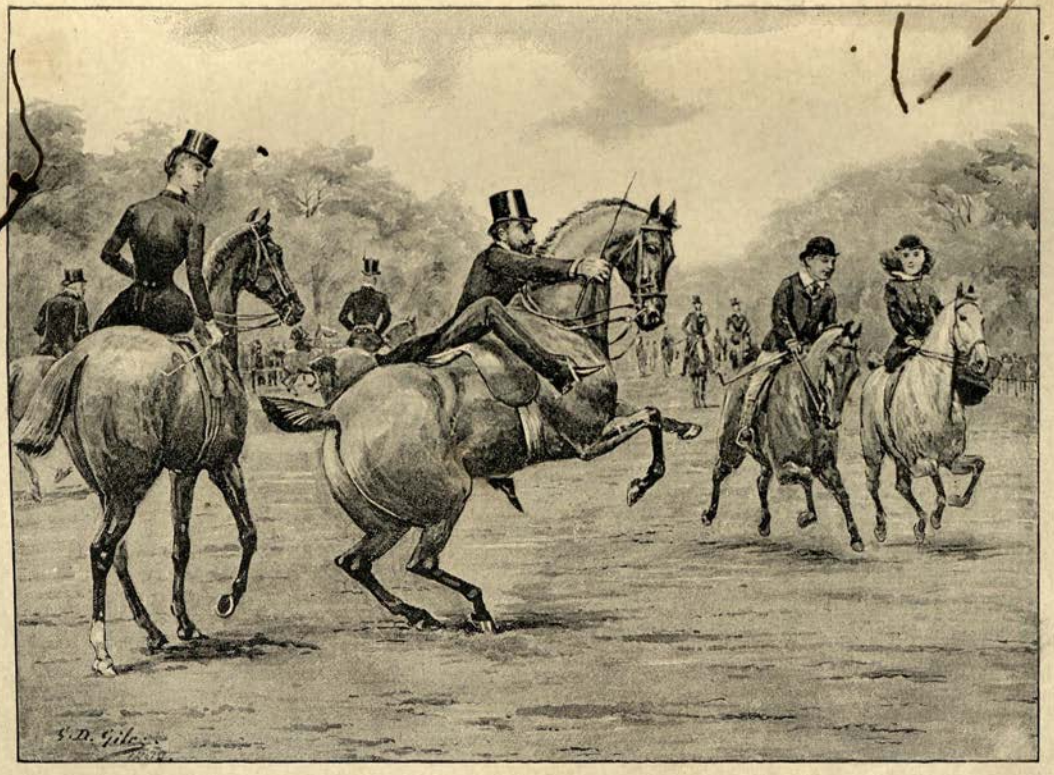
process of suppling, and seems to fulfil all his wishes as soon as they are indicated: in other words, his manners are of the best, and the chief requisites in the saddle-horse are manners together with make and shape, for unless the latter points are deceptive, they may be held to imply sufficient speed, action and stamina for all practical purposes. Whether or not a hack should be thorough-bred depends, it may be said, upon the individual animal. As a rule the routine of a racehorse's life unfits him for the simple and less exciting duties of the hack, and the chances are that his disposition is marked by a mixture of nervousness and courage, which renders him unsuited for a more humdrum career. But it often happens that coarse-bred animals are found of the worst possible disposition, either vicious or sulky or both, eager to find an opportunity of doing mischief; while, on the other hand, there are thorough-breds of an exceptionally good and amiable character, even when in training. When his career on the turf is over, a thorough-bred sometimes makes a particularly excellent hack. The present writer has never ridden a better and for the most part more 'confidential' animal than old Duke of Parma, who won the Cesarewitch as a three-year-old in 1875. The old horse at the time of writing knows precisely what is required of him and does it; he is an excellent hunter, will go as straight as anybody can desire, or he will stand placidly while horses at exercise gallop past, so that his rider may devote all his attention to the business around him. The writer has now and then come across horses in training that were equally amiable, but these latter are the exception, though at the same time few men would be likely to search for a hack while it was in preparation for the racecourse. It is rarely, again, that the thorough-bred, whose business it is to gallop, has the action which is desirable in a hack. The stepper is an artificial product, whose formal method of progression certainly cannot be good for his legs and joints, whether in the saddle or in harness, and tastes may differ as to the beauty of high action; the daisy-cutter, however—and many thorough-breds have a

tendency to daisy-cutting—is a source of danger. One wants a horse to lift up his legs and bend his knees, but only in moderation. The racehorse rarely carries his head as the rider wants his mount to do. In the earlier stages of a race the competitors bend their necks, but when it comes to galloping, they stick out their heads, and many of them carry the habit into private life. On the whole, the chances are against the thorough-bred making a good hack if he has been subjected to the life and discipline of the training stable; but if he exhibits an aptitude for the humbler vocation he has great qualities to recommend him, and will probably prove exceptionally good.

A little blood is, however, a great desideratum in a saddle-horse, and in general there are no better animals for the purpose than half-breds, who unite the grace and fashion of their blue blood with the sedater demeanour of a humbler parentage; but in this respect, since hacks are often, are indeed for the most part, needed for harder work than an hour's trot or gentle canter in the Park, the increasing habit of breeding from unsound sires is to be regretted. Diseases of horseflesh are to a very great extent hereditary, and it frequently happens that a sire not good enough to be kept for thorough-bred mares, because of some chronic or acute infirmity, is set aside for half-breds or others of coarse blood. By this means a breed of unsound animals is propagated. A Committee of the House of Lords sat to investigate this subject some sixteen years ago—in 1874—and accumulated much evidence, though the practical results which followed were small; the committee, in fact, ended somewhat abortively without arriving at any special recommendations.

The perfect hack must have a variety of excellences such as, indeed, are very rarely found in one horse, but the real requisites may perhaps be reduced to four. In the first place, it goes without saying that he must be free from any such obvious disqualifications as rank unsoundness or pronounced vice. There may be an otherwise good hack that 'makes a bit of a noise,' and a rider may hesitate to discard a good-looking,

well-mannered favourite because, when a little pressure is put upon him, this infirmity becomes apparent. That, however, is a question for the rider. The infirmity is apt to grow, and though there are even good hunters, much more good hacks, that are open to the charge of roaring, soundness in this respect should be a *sine quâ non* in purchasing, as the least noise may speedily develop into a distressing malady. In the second place, good legs and feet are an essential. A young horse may be actually sound and may yet have what seem all the elements of unsoundness—dubious hocks, joints with a tendency to roundness, feet contracted or otherwise likely to go wrong. Thirdly, for the saddle-horse good shoulders are indispensable. Without them the chances are that the horse will not step well and safely, and few things are more distressing to a rider than the sensation his mount gives him of an ability to stumble. A well-set sloping shoulder may prove deceptive; that is to say, the action may not be as free and unconstrained as appearances suggest, so this is a thing to be tested; and in the same way a rider may be agreeably surprised at finding how well a horse that is apparently somewhat upright in the shoulder steps out when asked to move; but as a rule external indications are borne out; the upright shouldered hack is unsafe, and conveys to his rider the uncomfortable impression that he is so; the hack with shoulder well set on suggests the idea of safety. In the fourth place come manners, and this consideration is influenced by the circumstance that what seem to be bad manners on the part of the horse may in reality be bad hands on the part of the rider. Nothing is more common than to see a horse that is restive and troublesome, even dangerous, with one man, behaving in a most exemplary way when another rider gets into the saddle; the hack that is placid and a model of obedience in the hands of No. I. will decline to go quietly a dozen yards straight ahead in the hands of No. II. Before any sort of opinion could be given as to the horse's manners in either case, it is obviously only just that No. III. should be called into consultation.



DECLINE TO GO QUIETLY A DOZEN YARDS

Going to Goodwood Races a few years since the writer and a friend, leaving the train at Drayton, hired a Hansom cab for the journey to the course. The singularly good-looking bay horse in the shafts stepped out so gaily that we felt it would be cruel to overtax him, and offered to provide a leader to help us up the hill. The driver, who had alighted and was walking by his horse's head, thanked us, but said the little horse would pull us up with ease, and as he was not going to make another journey he did not care for aid. We asked where he got so good a horse, and he told us at Tattersall's. He had paid 18*l.* for it, had driven it for nearly two years, and was, he believed, the only cab-driver in London who had not owned a whip for that period. Though the man was reluctant to part with the horse he was tempted to do so, and the animal has since done excellent service in a gentleman's stable, is a charming hack, carries a lady, and has been hunted in a modest way with satisfactory results. How he ever came to be parted with for so absurdly small a price remains a mystery.

Another friend of the writer gave 200 guineas for a horse, well nigh perfect in shape and, so far as the purchaser, one of the best of living riders, could tell from trial, as good as he looked out of the stable. After a long ride, during which the creature's behaviour was altogether admirable, the bargain was struck. Next morning he was found with cruelly swollen and bleeding hocks, having evidently occupied the whole night in kicking desperately, nor would anything cure him of the vice. In spite of a well-padded box the horse contrived to injure himself, and was sold for little over a tenth of his cost price. The moral is that it behoves the purchaser to find out all about the horse he proposes to buy—if he can.

An economical and satisfactory method of obtaining a good saddle-horse, if a man have time, skill, and patience, is to make one; that is to say, to buy a likely colt from the breeder, and, when the preliminaries of bitting and backing have been performed—and perhaps this may best be done by a breaker whose character and capacity the owner really knows, unless he have

a light-handed and careful groom in the stable—finishing the youngster's education himself. A good-tempered, willing colt comes to hand in a very short time; but it need hardly be said that judgment and patience must be exercised in dealing with him. We once knew a four-year-old hack, otherwise of the most exemplary behaviour, who was about to be discarded and sold for the presumed vice of shying without any reason. He had twisted round two or three times so suddenly that the owner admitted having nearly come off; and as on one occasion the colt came home alone, there seemed reason to believe that the word 'nearly' did not quite describe the real nature of the occurrence. His education was conducted on the breezy downs above the owner's house, and one day a friend strolled up to see how the little grey framed. Suddenly, while trotting gaily along, he did, indeed, twist round in a way that at first suggested a reasonless shy; but the onlooker observed that a gust of wind having come over the crest of the downs the rider had hastily raised his hand to press down his hat, and it was evidently the motion of the hand that alarmed the horse. The rider procured a closer-fitting hat and the horse ceased to shy. If the truth were known it would usually—almost invariably—be found that a horse's bad habits are really attributable to a man.

Good hacks are more difficult than ever to find, as, comparatively speaking, so few men ride distances to covert now, and very few people except country doctors keep a horse of any sort for road work only. Such horse, or rather hack, should be a well-bred hunter on a small scale, miniature if you please, with exceptionally *good*, not *high* action in his trot, rocking-horse canter at command, a free, sweeping, easy gallop, with the power and will to walk five miles an hour with the reins on his neck, never turning his head to right or left to look at objects on the roadside. He should carry his head gaily, a trifle high perhaps, but above all things he must be *true-made* as if built to order, for though the extreme vigour which this accuracy of shape imparts to all his motions sometimes makes him tiring to any one not

in full practice of horsemanship, only the true-made ones can trot fast (or slow) for ten miles straight on end, without ducking and shaking their heads, a sure sign that an animal is getting more or less sick of his job, and the ability so to do that distance at least is the highest test of the ideal hack. It goes without saying that he must never catch his toe, brush an ankle, or 'drop' behind from any cause. There is no harm in his being a trifle hot and inclined to catch hold in his fast paces, but he *must* walk and not niggle. This sort of animal is so rare that he is hardly appreciated, and, if found by a connoisseur, is as likely as not to be picked up for forty or fifty pounds, the real value to a man fond of riding about the country by himself being at least two hundred.

An useless weed drafted out of a training stable, provided he has good shoulders, and when he has been taught to open gates (not a long process as a rule), is a capital poor man's conveyance to covert. These creatures, though too slow for racing, can always gallop faster than any hunter that is at all likely to be in the poor man's stable: they gallop easily too, though they want kicking along; and as they are to be had for next to nothing the best plan is to keep them always at a gallop, and replace them as fast as legs and feet wear out, which is not as soon as might be expected. Of course all thorough-breds, particularly those which have been for any time in training, are apt to be a trifle capricious and whimsical in temper, and the quieter and lazier they are at starting the more necessary is it to look out for squalls when a tempting bit of grass causes the rider to set them fairly going, or some, to them, unusual apparition meets their eyes. Ponies are good for boys to learn upon,[1] for sportsmen to ride up to the hill, and for old men to use as walking-sticks. It is possible to hack them, but they are not hacks in the true sense of the term.

So much has been written in previous volumes of the Library —Hunting, Racing, and Driving—as to the care of the horse in the stable, that to dwell upon the subject here would be

[1] A good pony hack is worth his weight in gold.—B.

repetition. It may briefly be said that stables with level floors are to be recommended, since it must strain the horse's sinews and fetlock joints, and do him other injuries, to stand continually in an unnatural attitude with his forelegs on a higher level than his hind. The absence of drains has also been advised, and in the Badminton stables it is found that no more straw is used now, there not being a drain in the building, than formerly when the place was drained. A constant supply of water, so that the horse may drink whenever he feels inclined to do so, is another recommendation. It has been calculated that the animal drinks much less if he can always help himself than if supplied at set times, the difference being no less than that between five gallons and eight. The troughs, it should be added, are best made watertight, so that there is no drip; they are to be cleaned daily, a sponge being used for the purpose to soak up water that remains. To prevent a horse from acquiring the mischievous trick of crib-biting, an iron bar is fitted to stand up about an inch above the front of the manger; this has at any rate a tendency to prevent the animal from learning the habit. Manger and rack should be placed at such a height that the horse can stand in a natural attitude to feed. One bad consequence of the old-fashioned high rack was that hay seeds fell into the horse's eyes and ears. The absolute necessity of ensuring sufficient ventilation and of avoiding the excessive heat, which is an evil in very many stables, may be briefly mentioned before this branch of the subject is quitted.

CHAPTER III

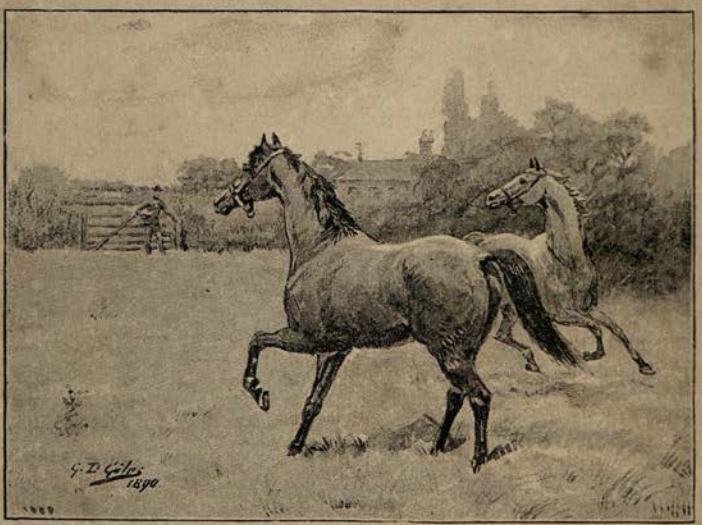
TRAINING THE YOUNG HORSE

By Robert Weir

HANDLING, LONGEING AND BACKING

THE first things to be considered in beginning with a young horse are the age, strength, and condition of the animal you are going to break, how he has been previously used, and his natural disposition. Some young horses are from the first so even tempered, quiet, intelligent, and ready to do what is required of them, that you can scarcely make them do wrong. Others, again, are naturally nervous and suspicious, and require the greatest care in going about them. The main thing at first is to gain their confidence, and to get them to understand that you are not going to hurt them. When the young horse is first taken up from grass, or the strawyard (or wherever he may previously have been), to be broken, he should if possible be placed in a large loose box by himself, and a quiet steady man be selected to look after him. He must have plenty of ventilation, and not be too highly fed :

in fact, at first he should scarcely have any corn at all; hay and damp bran with a handful of corn in it will be quite sufficient. Great care is necessary in the feeding of the animal. If he is allowed to have a quantity of dry corn when first taken up he is certain to be ill, which will of course throw him back, and it will be some time before he is fit to begin work. He should be exercised in hand; that is to say, led about out of



Fresh from grass.

doors for a short time every day in a plain snaffle bridle or cavesson until he gets a little into condition, and his daily allowance of corn increased by degrees.

If the horse is fresh from grass or strawyard it will be advisable to give him a mild dose of physic a day or two after he is taken up. During this time he should be quietly handled in his box, and a beginning should be made at grooming him. He should be induced to submit to have his feet taken up, and so on. Nearly all horses will allow themselves to be

handled if the breaker goes about the work in a proper manner; but a flinching, hesitating mode of doing it will, in a great many cases, make the horse nervous and suspicious, and in the end vicious. The horse is not to be tied up short to the rack or manger, but should have perfect freedom of his head. There is very little fear of a young horse trying to bite you; that is a vice which is learned afterwards, and is generally the result of bad treatment. If he is disposed to kick, do not keep worrying him by doing the thing which causes him to give signs of this vice, but go to his forehand and remain thereabouts till he gets more accustomed to you. When first proceeding to handle a young horse, begin of course with the head and neck; make much of him, not patting him so as to make a clapping sort of noise, which will be likely to startle him, but by smoothing his coat the right way, and talking to him, gradually passing your hand along the near side of his neck and down his shoulders. If he does not take much notice, pass the hand quietly but firmly down his near fore leg, always bearing in mind that a too light feeling is liable to tickle the horse, especially if he is of an irritable disposition. He is not to be bored with too much of this sort of thing, especially if he is not disposed to take as kindly to it as could be wished: about ten minutes or a quarter of an hour is long enough; then feed him and leave him alone for two or three hours, or till nearly feeding time again, and gradually handle his body and limbs all over in the same way, going on from one part to another till he does not take much notice of it.

In taking up his fore feet, do not hit the horse hard between the knee and fetlock to make him lift his foot, as I have often seen done, for this is very likely to put him down on his knees; but lay hold firmly of the fetlock, and without using too much force try and get him to give it to you. If he allows you to bend his knee, it is quite enough for the first time; put it down quietly, make much of him and leave him alone for a while. If you attempt to retain hold of it you will in most cases only cause him to fight you, and it will take you longer next

time. The near fore foot is enough to try in one day ; get, if you can, both fore feet the next day, and the following day go on to the near hind. The great mistake people generally make here is that they stand too far away from the horse, and often by doing so get kicked. The breaker should place himself close to the body of the horse, and near enough to the hind leg to be able to reach and take hold of it. If the horse does kick he cannot hurt much ; even should he reach the man it will be only a push, whereas if he were farther away he would receive the full force of the blow. Many horses are more awkward in having the hind feet lifted than the fore, and I feel sure that in most cases it is caused by the timid way in which the first attempts have been made. No endeavour should be made to lift the off hind from the near side, or for that matter the off fore either. Whatever you want to do to the horse or the horse to do for you, the simpler the manner you set about it is the best ; the more likely he is to understand what you require and to do it kindly. Of course, the lifting of the feet should not be attempted until the body and all the limbs have been well handled, and the horse does not resent the handling of them.

All this should be done by one person, and that, if possible, by the man who is to have the grooming, feeding and care of the animal during his breaking, as it stands to reason that the horse will be inclined to look upon him in a more friendly manner than upon any one else.

It is impossible to say how long it may be before this much is accomplished, for, as I have already said, some horses will take kindly to all this sort of thing almost in a day, whereas others of a different disposition will take weeks of the most patient, kindly, but resolute handling before they will stand it. When once a horse is quiet in his box and submits to be groomed, and have his feet picked up and washed, a considerable stride has been made in his education.

'Shoeing' does not so much matter for some time ; in fact, I think it is just as well not to begin to hammer at horses' feet till you are perfectly sure they will not get upset by it. In that

event you will have the same ground to go over again, and it always takes longer to reassure a horse that has once been upset than it takes to get one quiet in the first instance. Until a horse comes into hard work on the road he is just as well without his hind shoes, even if you shoe him in front. The farrier who has the shoeing of young horses must be a very steady man, who thoroughly understands his business and goes about it quietly, taking his time over it. It would be far cheaper in the end to pay him by time than to give him so much per shoe and have the job hurried. There is not the slightest doubt that many horses are rendered difficult to shoe for the remainder of their lives through having the business improperly performed at first. Very often the horse is abused for ignorance of what is required of him the first time he is shod; yet how can he possibly understand?

By the time all this has been done the horse should be accustomed to being tied up in his box. I would recommend for this purpose a common leather stall collar, without a brow-band, one that has been in use some time is preferable, as it will be softer and more pliable than a new one. The reason for not having a brow-band is because I think (particularly with nervous horses) that when the brow-band shifts or works up, as it is liable to do, it is very irritating to the horse's ears. It is quite useless to keep the collar on the horse's head. The only use of the brow-band in the stable is to prevent the collar from working back and rubbing the mane, which it may do if too loose. To prevent that, in my opinion, is not of so much consequence as to prevent the brow-band from working up to his ears and annoying him. He should at first only be tied up for a short time in the daytime, when some one is near to see that he does not get into any mischief. He will very likely hang back and try to get away from the confinement, but if his groom is handy to coax him, and he is not tied too short, he will soon reconcile himself to it.

The rein should be of leather or hemp. I strongly object to chains. They make too much noise, and are apt to frighten

a timid horse ; besides, if he happens to get his heel over it, a chain makes as a rule a much worse wound than leather or hemp does. I also prefer a large wooden log to the small cast-iron ones one sometimes sees in use. Some young horses get into the habit of playing with the log, and the result is often swollen fetlocks, which I do not think are so often produced when wooden logs are used.

This much having been done in the box, remove the colt to a stable to stand amongst other horses. At first put him in a corner stall as far as possible from the entrance door, so that he may not be annoyed by being passed by every one that comes into the stable ; or, better still, into the stall next to the corner, that is, supposing there is plenty of room and a stall on each side can be spared. I have seen many promising young troopers ruined as far as appearance goes through being put up without a spare stall between each, owing to shortness of room; they learn to kick the post on either side and cap their hocks, making them most unsightly. The worst of it is, that when a horse takes to this sort of amusement, although it must cause him a considerable amount of pain every time he kicks, he persists in doing it even if you place him a stall or two away from any other horse. The best thing to do is, as before stated, to have a spare stall on either side at first ; or if for want of room you have been unfortunate enough to allow your horse to acquire the habit, put him right away into a box by himself until he forgets it.

It would be well now that the horse should be accustomed to stand with a roller on. It assists in getting rid of the barrel which young horses frequently have before beginning to work, and is also a preliminary step to the saddle which is to come hereafter. In putting on the roller great care is required. A pad or cloth of some kind should be put on under it to protect the horse's back, and the roller should be laid quietly over it, care being taken that the end of the roller while loose does not touch the horse's fore legs, or it will very likely upset him. The man should stand on the near side of the horse, and gradually

and quietly buckle one strap only sufficiently tight to secure it, and then fasten the other strap the same length. The straps should then alternately be drawn in one hole at a time so that the horse can feel that it is round his body. No attempt should be made to tighten the straps for the first few days. It is enough that the horse allows it to be put on and taken off again. There is nothing more likely to make a young horse plunge than finding himself suddenly girthed up tight.

For this reason, the more quietly this is done the better ; a little time spent over it will not be wasted. If the horse is much inclined to be upset by the process do not persevere with it in the stable, but put it off till he begins his work in the school.

Supposing the horse to be now tolerably quiet in his stall, and in good health and condition, all of which ought to be the case before anything else is attempted with him, he should begin his lessons on the longe.

LONGEING

It may be mentioned that many horsemen do not believe in longeing a horse at all, and they are quite right if the work be not properly done by a man who understands his business. On the other hand, if a young horse be properly longed, he receives thereby the groundwork of his education, and thence is brought on by degrees, so that from a raw unintelligent brute he becomes the handy intelligent servant and friend of his owner, for whatever purpose his shape and capabilities are best suited. I can conceive nothing much more brutal than the abuse of the longe as I have often seen it used in the country by ignorant people, who seem to have an idea that the only use of it is to flog a horse round and round in a small circle until the poor brute is completely pumped out, and then to get on his back and ride him, or try to do so. No doubt hundreds of young horses are ruined in this way, and their owners in consequence condemn the use of the longe without ever taking the trouble to find out whether their animals have

been properly treated or not ; whereas if their horses had been carefully longed by a thoroughly competent man, and the horse had done well and improved in his lessons as he ought, the verdict would have been all the other way.

I am supposing that there is a school available for breaking the horse ; and here it may not be out of place to say something as to the shape and dimensions of a building for this purpose. All military riding schools are rectangular, the best of them being about 150 feet by 50. Now I am not going to find fault with the shape of military schools, for I am certain that for all the purposes they are ordinarily required to fulfil they cannot well be improved upon. If, however, I were about to build a school solely for the purpose of training young horses, and not for drilling recruits or any other service for which a military school is needed, I would build a square one. The corners would then be at equal distances from each other, and would not, as is the case in a long rectangular school, necessitate making two turns at a short distance from each other at the narrow ends, whilst the horses have to go about three times the distance down the long sides before coming to the short ends again. When longeing also, if the school were square the horse would not have the same opportunities (if you took the centre of it to longe him in) of getting away when crossing the centre that he has in the long narrow school, as he would be equidistant from the sides all the way round. One thing against a square school is that one horse at a time only could be longed (unless it was a very large one), whereas in a long rectangular school two horses can be longed simultaneously, one at each end. However, I should prefer a square school, and if there were plenty of room would build it about 40 yards each way.

On the day of the first lesson the horse should be led quietly into the school, in the snaffle bridle he is going to be longed in a few times round it, so as to get him a little accustomed to the place ; in fact, it would have been as well if he had been led a few times round there during his previous daily

exercise. He should then be brought up into the centre of the circle he is going to be longed on, and have the cavesson put on. The cavesson is placed on the horse's head in the same manner as the head collar, but the centre and bottom straps of it should be passed beneath the cheek-pieces of the bridle before being buckled. In fitting the cavesson, it should be put about four inches above the nostrils—if higher it partly loses its power, and if lower the breathing is likely to be affected by it—and, without actually hurting or irritating the horse more than necessary, must be put on tight enough so that there is no danger of pulling it over his ears in the event of his hanging back. The top of the three straps acts as a throat-lash, and with well bred horses which have small heads requires to be buckled moderately tight so as to guard against the before mentioned evil ; the middle one should be buckled the tightest of the three, so that it will keep it straight on the horse's head. Supposing you are longeing a horse to the left and he is at all inclined to pull away from you, if the centre strap should be too slack the cheek-piece on the opposite side would work into the horse's off eye ; the bottom strap of the three helps to keep the cavesson in its place, but should not be too tight, as it acts partly in the same manner as a curb. In putting the cavesson on the horse's head, care should be taken not to make it more uncomfortable than is necessary the mane and forelock should be pulled out smoothly from under it, and the brow-band of it and of the snaffle bridle, which is underneath, should be well below the ears. The best kind of snaffle is an ordinary smooth mouthing snaffle with keys ; the objection to a great many snaffles one sees in use is that they are not long enough in the mouthpiece. The correct length is about eight inches, so as to allow of a good long draw across the bars of the mouth when riding ; besides, when longeing, the snaffle is not so liable to get fixed under the nosepiece of the cavesson at the sides if it is of sufficient length. Such a fixture often occurs if it is too short. Of course a shorter one can be made to do for well bred horses having small mouths, but this is about the length

generally required, and it would be better to have it an inch too long than a quarter of an inch too short. It is also a mistake to have the snaffle too thin in the mouthpiece. It should be about two and a half inches round. The snaffle should be fitted so low that it will not wrinkle the corners of the horse's mouth, and the keys should nearly touch the lower teeth, so as to encourage the horse to play with them. The cavesson and snaffle having been properly fitted, the roller should now be put on, and it should have a buckle on each side at equal distance from the centre, on which the side reins can be fastened ; there should also be a hook at the top in the middle, midway between the buckles, where the reins of the snaffle may be fastened. A numnah, folded rug, or blanket should be placed on the horse's back under the roller, which should only be fastened tightly enough to keep it in its place ; the same rule applies to the care required in putting on the roller here as in the stable, especially if the horse has not been accustomed to stand in one ; the side reins should then be buckled to the rings of the snaffle, but in doing so no attempt is to be made to bear him up. It is to be specially mentioned that in these lessons you wish the horse to go forward, which he is not very likely to do if confined by the head. The reins therefore should be of the same length on each side, but quite loose, in fact, about the same length as the reins of the snaffle, which are fastened full length on the top of the roller ; rather than have them too tight to begin with, it is better to leave them off altogether for a few days. In putting on the tackle and longeing two men are necessary, but more are in the way ; the fewer people there are about when you want to do anything with a young horse that he has not been accustomed to the better ; one man to hold him and the other to put on the tackle is quite enough.

It is most essential that all the tackle required to be used in breaking should be kept in the best possible working order ; the leathers should be constantly well soaped so as to render them pliable, and all the buckles frequently oiled so that they

work smoothly and easily. It is most inconvenient if you want to take up or let out a strap to find that it is a fixture, and can only be unbuckled by a jerk, which very often has the effect of startling the horse at the very time when you particularly want to keep him quiet. The man who holds the horse should stand on the near side of him, nearly in line with his head, so as to be about on the left front of him ; he should have the spare end of the cavesson rein coiled up in his left hand, and hold the horse with his right hand, about eighteen inches from the centre ring of the cavesson, to which the rein should be

Longeing.

buckled, and not to the near side ring. The man who is to put on the tackle should go about his business very quietly when he has to pass from one side of the horse to the other, always going by the front round the man who is holding him, never behind him.

When all this has been done the horse is not to be hurried forward immediately, but should be allowed to stand for a few minutes and be made much of ; then, when you are perfectly satisfied that everything is all right, lead him forward a few paces, halt him, then bring him back to the place you started

from, the centre of the circle; let him again stand a minute or two, then quietly lead him forward again; it should be understood that in leading a horse that is not inclined to follow, the man should not turn round and walk backwards and try to drag the horse after him, staring hard into his eye all the time, but should try to get the horse to walk alongside of him by coaxing him. There is nothing more likely to make a horse hang back than turning round and looking at him.

He may now be led a few times round the circle, and as it has been the custom to begin everything he has been taught so far from the near side, he should be led round to the left, so that the man who is leading him is still on the near side of him. The other man should follow a short distance behind, not going over exactly the same ground as the horse, but keeping on his left rear, and if the horse is inclined to stop should hold up his hand or show him the whip if necessary. While walking round, the man who is leading the horse should gradually give him a little more rein, keeping the horse going over the same sized circle, but making the circle he himself is walking smaller, so as to get a little farther away from him, but keeping as nearly as possible in line with the horse's shoulder; and then, if he is going pretty kindly, he may be quietly urged into a trot, the man with the whip keeping him out over the circle by showing it when necessary. As the horse increases his pace the man holding the rein must walk a little faster so as to keep himself in line with the animal's shoulder, and not as is generally done stand still and allow the horse to describe a circle round him or not, as he feels inclined. A few times round the circle at a trot is sufficient to begin with, and then walk, but in bringing the horse from a trot to a walk do not attempt to pull him up by the rein; if you do you will only pull his head to the left, his croup will of course go to the right, and you run the chance of giving him a strain in his first lesson. In order to stop him, shake the cavesson rein lightly and give the word '*W-a-l-k*!' in a long soothing tone: rather

let the rein out a little than shorten it, and he will soon understand what you require of him, and will do it; then while he is walking round gradually coil up the rein again and call him up to you. He may not understand you the first time, and it may be necessary to get the assistant to go on the other side of him to stop him, and you may then have to go to him; but after a very few lessons he will be found only too ready to come to you when called up. When you have taken him up to the centre make much of him, and after allowing him to stand a minute or two try to lead him a few times round the circle to the right. As the horse has been accustomed to be always led on the near side up to now, it is only reasonable to expect that he will not be so ready to go that way as the other, but it will generally be found that with a little coaxing he will soon understand what you want of him, and lead as well to the right as to the left. If he does not go all right the first day, do not be impatient; he will probably be more tractable the next; but until he leads round that way satisfactorily do not urge him into a trot or let the rein out too much so as to get too far away from him, or he will be constantly trying to turn right about so as to get back on to the left rein. The first few lessons should not last longer altogether than about twenty minutes. Then make much of him, take off the tackle, let him be led about in the air for a short time, and send him to his stable. The longeing rein should be made of web. It is lighter than a rope, and coils up more easily. It should be about fifteen yards long.

The next day you will most likely find that the horse will take much more kindly to his lesson and will understand better what he is desired to do. He must not be hurried, and if he is inclined to go too fast the side reins may be shortened a little, but it will as a rule be found that soothing him by talking to him and keeping the whip quiet will be the best means of restraining him to a steady pace; in fact, after a very few lessons he will learn to walk and trot at the word. Above all things, avoid a sudden jerk of the cavesson rein, which may injure the pupil. The principal object should be at first to get

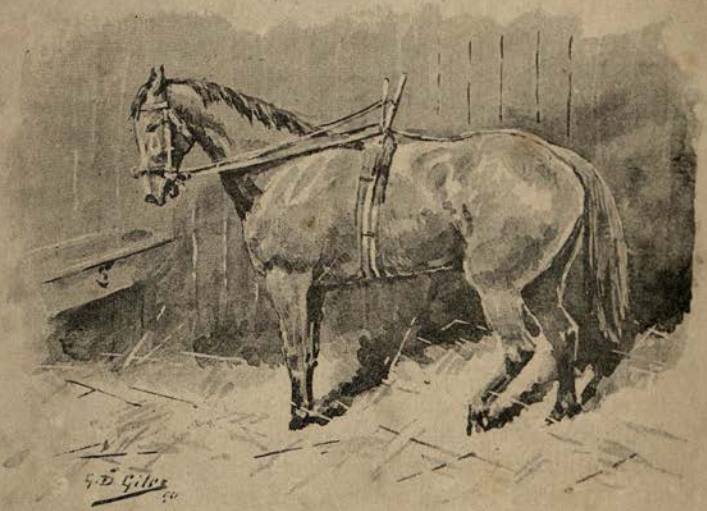
your horse to go at a quiet steady trot and to keep him well away from you, as it is very injurious to the horse to be longed on too small a circle, thereby throwing too much weight on to his inward legs. A circle of about forty or fifty yards in circumference, if the size of the school will admit of it, is best; the man who holds the rein should still walk a small circle, always keeping his attention on the horse and himself in line with his shoulder; the man with the whip should walk a larger circle, using the whip in the right hand when longeing to the left, and in the left hand when longeing to the right. There is more knack in using a whip properly on the longe than many people imagine. It should be nearly always kept moving, and should be worked lightly without more noise than is necessary. If the horse is inclined to be sluggish and slacken his pace, or to stop, the whip should be shown from the rear so as to keep him up to his work, or if he is getting cunning and does not mind the sight of it, he should be touched lightly behind the girth. If the horse is inclined to cut his circle off he should have the whip shown to him more to the front, so as to keep him out, the man keeping close up to the longeing rein and using the whip over or under as it may be necessary. If the horse is still inclined to hurry his pace, the whip should be kept quiet, allowing the lash to trail along the ground; but with most horses it will be found necessary after the first few lessons to keep the whip quietly moving nearly the whole time.

Supposing the horse to be doing his lesson quietly in the roller, he should now be saddled, and the best place to do this is in the school after he has done part of his lesson. Saddling should be gone about in the same manner as the putting on of the roller; if he has taken to his work kindly with the roller there is not usually much trouble in putting on the saddle. It is a mistake to think that all horses should carry their saddles exactly on the same part of the back. Men are taught in the cavalry that the front part of it should be the breadth of the hand behind the play of the shoulder, and no doubt this is

judicious with the majority of riding horses ; but supposing the young one that you are saddling to have a barrel, if you put the saddle in its proper place, before the horse has gone a hundred yards it will slip forward, and the girth will become too slack. The best plan therefore is to put the saddle, in the first place, on that part of the horse's back where he is most likely by his formation to carry it, and tighten the girth only sufficiently to keep it there. The stirrup leathers and irons should be taken off the saddle altogether, and not put on until you are ready to have the horse backed. It is bad to have the stirrup irons dangling about and hitting the horse on the elbow nearly every step he takes, and if you fasten them up they are always liable to work down ; so I think they are better kept off, at any rate in the beginning. If a crupper is to be used to the saddle, the man who is putting it on should not stand too far away from the horse, or, as mentioned previously when we were considering the taking up the near hind leg, he renders himself more liable to get kicked ; the man who is holding the horse should keep his head a little to the left, so that in the event of his kicking he would throw his croup to the right. The crupper should have a buckle on the near side, close to the dock piece ; this makes it much easier to put on. The tail should not be raised by pulling at the hair, but the right hand should be placed under the dock, the tail raised in that way, and the crupper placed under it with the left hand and buckled ; but before buckling it, it is necessary to see that the hair is clear on both sides. Then let the tail quietly down again. It is a mistake to have the crupper too long, as then, if the horse moves his tail about, the hair is much more likely to work up under it than if properly fitted, and this will have a greater tendency to make him kick than if it be too short. When properly fitted the crupper should allow the hand to turn easily beneath it on the horse's croup. The length can be measured pretty nearly before putting it on, so that it should not require much, if any, alteration afterwards. I do not consider that any horse that needs a crupper is fit for riding purposes, but as he may also

be wanted for harness, he may as well be accustomed to wear one. If the horse does not take kindly to the crupper, it is a good plan to have a □ sewn on the roller, and to let him stand for an hour or so every day with it on after he has been exercised until he gets more used to it.

The roller should be put on over the saddle, and the side reins buckled in the same manner as before, and the same lesson repeated; as the horse improves, the side reins should be gradually shortened a little at each lesson, so as to get him



Take hold of his snaffle and mouth himself.

to take hold of his snaffle and mouth himself, but no attempt is to be made to tie the horse in the position in which you wish him to carry himself. The reins should be sufficiently short to feel the horse's mouth, and he should be kept up to his work, so as not to allow him to lean on the snaffle. After each lesson on the longe, the horse should, when taken up to the centre of the circle, be placed square on all four legs and be

bent a little to each hand, also reined back a step or two before being dismissed.

Crosstrees are often of great service in longeing young horses, especially those that do not carry themselves in the proper position on the roller. The old-fashioned wooden crosstrees are preferable, with buckles at various heights for the side reins to be fastened to. The horse works better and yields on them better than on those made of indiarubber or any other material that will stretch, so that, by poking his nose out, he can lengthen the rein almost as much as he likes; whereas on the old wooden tree and leather reins he cannot thus stretch, and when he finds that this is so, he yields the sooner. Of course it is to be understood that the horse is not to be braced up as if he were in a vice, or in all probability, especially if he is of a sluggish disposition, he will simply lean on the snaffle and do no good.

If the horse carry himself with his head too high and his nose out, the reins should be buckled low, but in many instances, young weakly horses are inclined to carry themselves much too low, in which case the reins should be buckled higher, but it must always be borne in mind that you will not get the horse to carry himself in the proper position by tying him there. The inward rein should be a little the shorter, so as to try to get the animal to bend a little to the hand to which he is working. It will be found to answer very well, with horses that are inclined to yaw their heads away on the longe, to use two pairs of reins on the crosstrees, one a little higher than it would be buckled if only one rein were being used, and the other considerably lower, so that without getting the reins too short the horse cannot very well get away, but is almost obliged to bring his head into the required position and mouth himself, and yet he is not tied there. It is a good thing for horses that do not yield very well, to allow them to stand for an hour or two during the day in their box or turned round in the stall with the cross on; but it is an error, common as the practice is, to put the cross and snaffle on him, buckle the side reins, and

leave him to do his work by himself. Some one who understands the business should stay with him and keep him at work by occasionally moving the snaffle in his mouth if he is inclined to lean on it, and making him stand square on all fours while doing so; he must not be allowed to stand on three legs and go to sleep leaning on the snaffle.

Another plan that answers very well with horses that do not yield, is to put on a plain snaffle for the side reins to be buckled to, and put on the mouthing snaffle as well, without reins loose in the mouth, so that the keys just reach the horse's lower teeth. This generally has the effect of inducing the horse to play with them and mouth himself.

Great care must be taken to get a horse to carry himself properly placed, it being perfectly understood that some horses are naturally well placed. The formation of others to whom nature has not been so kind makes it most painful for them to carry themselves properly, and if forced suddenly into a (to them) unnatural position, you cannot well be surprised if they resent it, whereas by asking a little at a time they will generally come to do what is necessary in the end. There are some horses that, from their very bad shape and make, could never be got quite right, and concerning such it can only be said that their place is not under a saddle.

Supposing the horse to be now doing his work well on the longe, that is to say using his limbs freely, trotting at a steady, even pace to both hands, walking when required, carrying himself pretty well in the proper position, and not showing much signs of nervousness, he is fit to be backed.

BACKING

The young horse should be first mounted after he has had his usual lesson on the longe. He should then be brought up to the centre of the circle, the crosstrees or roller should be taken off—the pupil being made much of meantime—and the stirrups let down (they should have been put on the saddle a day or

two previously, but fastened up). The girths should be looked to; they will most likely require to be tightened a hole. The man who is to mount should be without spurs, no matter how good a horseman he may be. There is nothing more likely to bring him to grief, and at the same time spoil the horse, or at any rate throw him back for some considerable time, than an accidental kick with the spur, which might be given in the event of the horse doing anything when mounted so as to make the man partly loose his seat and hold on by his spurs. He does not want a whip either; it would only be in his way, and would be liable to frighten the animal. For a few days previously, before sending the horse to the stable, the near side stirrup should have been let down, and a little weight borne on it by taking hold of the stirrup leather high up and pulling it, without jerking; and if the horse has stood this well, placing the hand on the stirrup iron and pressing on that so as to get him a little accustomed to the weight on the near side. If the horse has shown much nervousness—the man who has had the longeing of him should be the best judge of this—the cross-trees should have been put on him a few times so as to get him accustomed to having something on his back, even if he had not required them on for any other reason.

An extra man is required when the horse is first to be backed, and he should stand on the off side in line with the horse's fore feet, holding the cheek-piece of the snaffle (not the snaffle rein) in his right hand, taking hold of the stirrup leather high up in his left hand, and bearing sufficient weight on it so as to prevent the saddle from heeling over to the near side, when the weight of the man who is mounting is put into the near stirrup. The man who is holding the horse by the caveson should not stand directly in front of him while he is being mounted, as, if he did, and the horse made a sudden plunge forward, he would stand a very good chance of being knocked down, but he should stand on the left front and hold the caveson rein in the same manner as when preparing the horse for his first lesson on the longe. He should watch the horse carefully,

and, if he thoroughly understands his work, should be able to tell pretty easily whether the animal means to do anything awkward or not, and even in most cases what he is likely to do. The man who is going to mount should take his orders from him, and they should be given quietly in an undertone. Anything like hurry or uncertainty is to be particularly avoided. The man who is mounting should be able to measure his stirrups by his arm, so that they will not require any alteration afterwards. He should then, after making much of the horse—a point which is advisedly emphasised and repeated—place himself in line with his fore feet, his heels being about a foot and a half apart, and take up the snaffle reins in the left hand without feeling the horse's mouth, then take a good lock of the mane firmly through the hand with the reins and twist it round the thumb, then quietly take hold of the stirrup and pause a moment. The man, it is to be inferred, will be long enough on the leg and supple enough to enable him to raise the left foot and place it on the stirrup, keeping the right foot steady and firm on the ground without hopping about. He must place his knee firmly on the middle of the flap of the saddle, having the knee well bent so as on no account to touch the horse's side with the toe, carry the right hand quietly to the cantle of the saddle, taking firm hold of it, and pause there again. The man who is holding the horse by the cavesson rein should be better able to tell than either of the others whether it is safe for him to proceed or not, and if he has any doubt should gently tell him to come down, when the foot should be quietly taken out of the stirrup, the hands leave go of the mane and cantle of the saddle. The horse may stand for a while, beginning again as before. Supposing the horse to be docile and promising the word would be 'Up,' and the man who is mounting would quietly and gradually raise himself on the stirrup. He is on no account, however quiet the horse may appear to be, to take the liberty of springing up suddenly, but should pull steadily with both hands (the man on the other side keeping the saddle straight on the horse's back by bearing

on the off stirrup leather), and push himself up as it were from the right instep, until the body is nearly upright, keeping his knee pressed firmly on the flap of the saddle, and then pause again for the next word. If there be a doubt and it is 'Down,' he will lower his body gently until his right foot is on the ground again, but if everything has gone satisfactorily, and the word is 'In' he will bring his right leg over the horse's croup, taking care not to touch him with it, and place his right hand at the same time on the pommel of the saddle so as to sit down in it gently. The man on the off side will place the right foot in the stirrup for him. Once seated in the saddle, he must, after taking a rein in each hand, sit perfectly still, bearing in mind that he has very little control over the animal, and leaving himself entirely in the hands of the man who holds the cavesson rein. The third man should now let go of the horse's head, giving him wholly into the hands of the man with the cavesson, who should talk to him and make much of him in the same soothing tone of voice as when he began to longe him; there is a great deal more in the influence of the voice of a man when properly used than most people are aware of. The man leading him must be on the alert, and if the horse attempts to spring suddenly forward, a sharp pull of the cavesson rein *upwards* in time will in most cases stop him; but if the man be caught napping and the horse get the start and his head between his fore legs, he is not easily pulled up, and it generally ends in grief for the rider; and can it be said that the fault is his? If the horse be inclined to run back when first mounted, the third man may be of assistance to go behind him and keep him up.

Supposing the horse has submitted placidly to the ordeal, he should, after being mounted, be allowed to stand perfectly quiet for a few minutes, and once again be made much of. Then try to lead him forward a few paces. If he go kindly, halt him and make much of him again. It may happen, however, that your horse has been perfectly quiet to mount, but when you wish him to move off the ground he has been mounted on, no amount of

coaxing will persuade him to advance a step. In this case you sometimes get what you want by turning him quietly to the left and then leading him forward a few steps in that direction, but it is as well to bear in mind that, when a horse obstinately refuses to move after being newly backed, when he does make up his mind to go he often moves much quicker than is expected.

He should not be tired too much by having the weight kept a long time on his back. A few minutes is enough, and then dismount him again. The same care should be taken in dismounting as when mounting, particularly to avoid touching the horse in the side with the left toe when lowering the body to the ground. If the rider thus alarms his horse it is just as likely to make mischief as when mounting. Of course it depends entirely upon the disposition of the animal and the manner in which things have fallen out, whether all this is done in one lesson.

Not been judiciously treated.

Nervous horses often require peculiar patience and care; they may want several lessons, but there is nothing more certain than that the greatest possible mistake that can be made is to hurry. It is most necessary to get the horse to stand quietly while being mounted and dismounted. The utmost pains and patience must be given to this very important part of his breaking. There is nothing much more inconvenient than having a horse that is bad to mount but one meets with a great many that are

so, and as a general rule the reason is that the animal has not been judiciously treated in his first lessons in mounting. He should always be allowed to stand a short time after he has been mounted, and then started quietly at a moderate pace. The same lesson should be practised until the horse submits to be mounted and dismounted without showing any fear or nervousness, and the cavesson should not be dispensed with until the horse carries his rider quietly round the school, or whatever place he is being broken in. When the cavesson is taken off for the first time it is not necessary to halt the horse and go through a ceremony. The man who is leading him should, while walking round with him, quietly unbuckle the rein and continue walking round, gradually getting a little farther away from him, leaving the cavesson itself on until he is dismounted.

CHAPTER IV

HINTS ON HORSEMANSHIP

BY ROBERT WEIR

SUPPOSING the horse to be in fairly good condition for work he should now be regularly ridden every day for an hour or so, always on the snaffle. Every horse may well be broken to do everything that is required of him on the snaffle before being bitted, the reason being that the aids on the snaffle are much more simple to the horse, and more easily understood by him than those on the bit. They are also less severe, and the consequence is that he obeys them the more readily; besides, many young horses, especially weakly ones, are inclined to carry their heads much too low, and if they are ridden on the curb too soon, instead of raising them up and teaching them to carry themselves properly, they never get up at all, but go all their lives as if they were travelling down hill the whole time you are on their back; they never learn to use their shoulders as they ought to do. On the other hand, a horse that is inclined to get his head up too much and poke his nose out will, if properly ridden, drop his nose and mouth his snaffle, which he would not do if ridden on the bit, at least certainly not in his earlier lessons. The rider should now carry a whip or small stick in his hand with the rein. It must be left to himself as to which hand he carries it in, but always when he has occasion to change it from one hand into the other the change must be made under hand not over, so that no unnecessary flourish with it

may frighten the horse. The saying that horses always swerve and refuse to the left, and that the reason they do so is because the whip has been always used in the right hand, is open to doubt, although it may happen from this cause. Whips are but little used in the army except by rough riders, and when horses do swerve or refuse they do so to one hand as often as to the other. The object of a man carrying a whip at this stage of the breaking is not to punish his mount but merely to keep him going, if he be inclined to stop, by a quiet tap down the shoulder, keeping the rein the same length, which he could not do if he used his whip behind the girth, the proper place when it is to be used for punishment.

In the first lessons after the horse has been backed and the longeing rein taken off the main object should be to get him to stride out freely in his walk, therefore the reins should not be too short so as to confine him too much. I have often heard it said that you cannot begin to get hold of a horse too soon, which is correct enough supposing the man who is riding him to be a very excellent horseman, who knows exactly how much to get hold of at a time; but there are very few who will not get horses on quicker in the end by giving them as much liberty as they can until the horse grows accustomed to carry weight and use his limbs pretty freely under it. It must be perfectly understood that the horse knows nothing as yet about the aids of the rider's legs, and that they should not in these lessons be used to keep the animal moving, for in many cases, in fact in most, the closing of the legs will have a precisely opposite effect from that intended, and instead of keeping him going will cause him to stop altogether.

If anything be required to prevent the horse from stopping or to make him move forward if he be sluggish, a tap down the shoulder with the whip or a wide motion with the hands and a 'click' with the tongue will in the beginning have a better effect than a closing of the legs. The rider should encourage his horse to walk boldly out, and when he does so may then gradually shorten his reins a little so as to get a little more

hold of him. He should always while riding on the snaffle ride with a rein in each hand, with his elbows close, well down under the shoulder, and the hands about six inches apart ; the rein must be held firmly in the hand, it is a mistake to think that hands are light when the horse is continually drawing the reins through them ; light hands yield, but do not allow the horse to pull the reins through the hands as he pleases. If the horse be inclined to carry himself too low, the hands should be raised a little so as to try to get him to raise his forehand and carry his head in the proper place.

When the horse is properly placed his crest and forehand should be raised, his neck arched, and his nose nearly under his ears. If you were to take a line through the horse's body, his nose should be nearly in line with the top of his tail. It is a mistake to try to get a horse's nose too much drawn in. Many horses are so seen, placed in such a manner that their noses almost touch their chests, and some people may think this looks well. Such animals are, as a rule, neither safe nor comfortable to ride. The judicious horseman would rather of the two ride one that carried himself with his nose a little too much out.

While trotting try to get the pace regular and lively, but not hurried, and the horse should not be kept at a trot too long ; he should not be asked to make the corners of the school too square at first, but should be allowed to round them off in the same manner as when on the circle. After trotting a short time walk and halt, and it is good practice for the horse to dismount once or twice during his lesson. With horses that are badly formed, and as the saying goes 'have their heads put on the wrong way,' so that they are much inclined to star-gazing, the hands should be kept low, with the reins just short enough to feel their mouths, and in most cases they will drop their nose and yield to the snaffle ; but the rider must not make the mistake, especially in the beginning, of trying to hold the horse down. A pair of running reins are often of great assistance with horses of this class. They should be about eighteen feet long ; if they are

too long, and the horse is what is called 'short in the rein,' they are apt to get the spare end of the rein entangled with the rider's foot; if too short with long-necked horses there is not sufficient to let out when the horse is bent in 'shoulder in,' or 'passage.' There should be a buckle in the centre and a buckle and billet at each end of the reins. In putting on the running reins the buckle in the centre should be placed on the horse's neck so that the reins are equally divided, and the end of the reins passed on each side through the ring of the snaffle from the outside, brought back to the girth or surcingle, and buckled to it just below the flaps of the saddle. This is a better place for them than if they were fastened to the D or staples on the front of the saddle. The rider should take them up one in each hand with the snaffle rein, the little finger being between them so as to keep them separate: the running rein should be on the outside. The reins of the snaffle should be considerably the shorter, in fact, when they are first used the weight of the running rein is almost sufficient. If you attempt to tie the horse's head too much with it you will do more harm than good, whereas if judiciously used a great assistance is gained towards teaching a badly formed horse to carry himself correctly. The rider should quite understand that in the event of his young raw horse boring on his hand it is not of the slightest use for him to hold on to his head and attempt to pull him up by main force. If he do so the horse will in all probability lean on him all the more and increase his pace instead of slackening it. By moving the snaffle lightly across the bars of his mouth, or in many instances by giving the animal his head altogether, he will as soon as he finds that he has nothing to lean against stop of his own accord. When this sort of thing occurs the horse should be halted and mouthed a short time at the halt, so as to get him to yield a little, and then tried again; but it is generally found to be the best remedy, when horses at this stage are inclined to bore much on the hand, to put them back on to the longe for a few days and keep them well up to their work on the crosstrees. This as a rule has the desired effect.

The horse will make more progress if his rider give him a short active trot and then a walk, halting and mouthing him a bit while halted, than if he be kept going till he get fatigued ; for he is sure then to try to lean on the hand.

When mouthing the horse or bending him, the snaffle should not be pulled to the right by a jerk, and then to the left, as if the rider were doing his very best to saw through the bars of the horse's mouth, but whether on the move or at the halt, the snaffle should be moved by a long draw through the mouth, and held there for a second or two, then just as quietly through to the other side, and so on, the rider using his discretion as to raising his hands or lowering them a little according to the formation of the horse, and how he is naturally disposed to carry himself. The hands should be nearly always working, and lightly moving the snaffle, hereby keeping the horse's mouth fresh, and not allowing him to lean on the hand. But it must also be borne in mind that this object is not to be attained by making the horse's mouth sore, and it is often made so by the use of a very old snaffle which has become jagged at the joints, and is consequently liable to nip the corners of the mouth, and make them quite raw. Supposing the horse now walks and trots out freely, he should be gradually accustomed to the pressure of the leg, which will, when he responds to it, have the effect of making him collect himself, raise his forehand, and bring his hind legs more under him ; but there is nearly as much art in the proper application of the leg as in using the rein. The rider should on no account apply the leg by kicking at the horse's sides, which would induce fear of the leg, and incline him to fly away from it ; neither should he draw his heels up and cling on, the whole time he is on the horse's back, by the calf of the legs, which would end in the horse becoming callous to the pressure, and taking it as a matter of course that it was the right and proper thing for him to be held on to, without in the slightest degree responding to it. The rider's leg should be applied by first squeezing, then relaxing, much in the same way that he gives

and takes with the hands. Some dull, heavy horses take a considerable time before they understand and respond to the pressure of the leg: others, light, active horses of a generous disposition, acknowledge it almost at once, and require very little leg to keep them up to their work. Generally, the best time to begin using the legs is when the horse is going at a steady trot; then get a little more hold of him, and press the calves of the legs quietly a little stronger, which generally makes him step a little smarter, and brings his hind legs more under him almost at once.

Of course, no man can tell another how strong his aid should be either with hand or leg. If a competent critic were looking on at another person riding a young horse, or, in fact, any horse, he could see if the horse required more or less than the rider was giving him; but every horseman must find out for himself, and be able to judge if his horse be doing his work properly. The horse should next be practised in turning to the right and left at a walk, and afterwards at a trot, and the rider must be careful not to attempt to turn him too short, but give him plenty of room to go round in—in fact, making a half-circle of the turn. He should in the turn, of course, be supported with the outward leg and rein, and be kept up to the hand by the pressure of the inward leg. A square turn is not to be expected at first; in fact, the rider should be satisfied at first that his horse obeys the feeling of the rein, and comes round to the hand without refusing or attempting to stop, which he would most likely be inclined to do if too much were asked from him. This simple lesson should be continued until the rider is satisfied that the horse understands and obeys willingly—that is to say, that he stands quietly and steadily when being mounted and dismounted, trots at a lively, active pace without hurrying, carries himself fairly well placed, turns pretty readily to either hand. Then, it always being assumed that the horse is in good health and condition, he may be advanced another stage in his breaking.

BENDING

This, if properly carried out, is the most useful lesson the horse receives during the whole of his training ; but if unskilfully done, or if the horse be hurried into it, there is no time during his breaking when he is more likely to refuse and show temper, if he have one. No doubt the reason so many people object to having their horses properly broken is that they have had a horse spoiled through being improperly ridden, for no horse can be called broken that does not bend kindly to either hand and 'passage' to both hands when required to do so ; besides, it makes the animal so much more light in hand and obedient, and it is certain that no horse, whether hunter or hack, is any the worse animal because he has been taught to obey the leg of his rider. On the contrary, he is a great deal the better for it, all the more comfortable to ride, and consequently more valuable. In a charger it is of course indispensable.

In beginning this lesson the rider must take the greatest care not to ask too much of his horse at a time, and not to lose his patience if the horse does not quite see what he is asked to do all at once. Of course, dull, heavy, stupid animals require much more patience and perseverance on the part of their breaker than light-hearted intelligent creatures, must have more time given them, and not be abused or forced roughly into their tasks. The horse should be prepared by having his head quietly bent to the right or left while halted, the bend being obtained in the poll of the neck just behind the ears ; and the way to get it is by a gentle feeling of the right rein, supposing the bend be required to the right, but still slight touch must be kept on the left rein, and the horse should be forced up to the hand by the pressure of both legs so that he does not run back, or stand on three legs : he should be made to stand square on all four. It is of no use simply turning the horse's head to the right or left and allowing him to give way in his hind quarters. He

must not be permitted to *throw* his head round, but should be required to bend himself slowly just as much as the rider thinks necessary and no more. He should not be kept on the bend too long, and then just as gradually as his head was bent to the right it should be turned to the front again by a feeling of the left rein. With some horses that do not take kindly to being bent by the feeling of the inward rein in the way before mentioned, the rider will get what he wants by keeping his inward hand firm and low, resting on the thigh if he likes, raising the outward hand a little and working lightly with it, when the horse will in many instances in a very short time bend to the hand which is kept steady. When speaking of outward or inward hand, it should be understood that the hand to which the bend is required or a turn to be made is always the inward hand.

This should frequently be practised after trotting, while halted; and when the horse bends readily and kindly to both hands he should next be tried at turning about on the forehand and haunches. Of the two the turn on the forehand is the simplest, and so is generally tried first. Supposing you are on the right rein, that is to say going round the school to the right, the horse should be quietly halted, and after standing a few seconds a turn in this direction should be made. The right rein should stay the forehand, the hand should be kept low, and the pressure of the left leg should circle the croup round step by step until the horse is half-way about. He will then be facing the side of the house; there halt and make much of him, and then try to complete the turn about in the same manner as he began it. The right leg should be kept closed, so as to prevent the horse from hurrying away from the pressure of the left; the left hand should be raised a little, and should retain a feeling of the horse's mouth during the time the turn about is being made, and in doing this the left leg may be drawn back a little. The whip may be of assistance in this lesson, where the horse does not step with his hind legs away from the pressure of the left leg, to tap him lightly behind the girth with it. Of course to turn about from the left rein the aids of hands and

legs are simply reversed, substituting left for right and right for left, the whip being carried in the other hand.

It will, as a rule, be found that when the horse once takes to stepping away from the pressure of the outward leg by circling the croup round, he will be inclined to hurry away from it, in which case he will not do so much good. He should therefore be kept up to the hand by the inward leg, and always be halted for a moment when half-way about. If the turn about on the forehand be correctly made, the inward forefoot should not be lifted from the ground, and the bend should not be changed till he has completed the turn about; in fact, he should see his croup circling round, but of course it is not to be reasonably expected that this will be done quite correctly the first few times of trying. In turning right about on the haunches the hind quarters are stayed by the right leg and the forehand circled round by the right rein, but the rider will here have to be very careful not to feel the right rein too strongly, as if he does so the horse is very likely to run back instead of circling his forehand round; the left leg should be closed strongly, enough to prevent the horse from throwing his quarters to the left, and a light feeling of the left rein should be retained. At first the left hand should be raised and the pressure of the left rein against the horse's neck may be of some assistance, but this should be dispensed with after the first few times or as soon as the horse has got to understand what is meant. The right leg may here be drawn back a little in steadying the hind quarters, the animal's inward hind foot should not be picked up during the turn, and the bend should be kept to the right, halting him when half-way about as when turning on the forehand. Great patience is required from the rider in teaching his horse during this lesson, and he should not keep on turning him about so as to disgust him with the movement, even if he does not take it up very well, but let him go to his front, trot him a few times round the house, halt, make much of him, and then have another try.

Having got the horse to turn about fairly well on the forehand and haunches, he may next be tried a few steps in 'shoulder

in.' If the horse be placed in 'shoulder in' correctly, his body from head to tail should be bent so as almost to describe a third of a circle; but the mistake people who do not sufficiently understand the use of the movement generally make is that, instead of placing their horses in this way, they bring the forehand too much in, so that the horse is nearly if not quite square, and consequently there is very little if any bend at all. Still, supposing the horse to be working on the right rein, the forehand should be brought in by a feeling of the right rein, and the left leg closed in the same manner as if the horse were going to incline to the right; when he is in that position the right leg should be closed and the shoulders led off by the left rein, the bend being kept to the right, so that the horse is gaining ground to his left (sideways) though still bent and looking to his right. The left rein leads the horse and the right bends him; the pressure of the right leg makes him cross his legs (which he should do with both fore and hind legs), and the left leg prevents him from hurrying away from the pressure of the right or from running back behind the hand; so that his fore and hind feet move on two distinct lines, without advancing or reining back. The horse must not be allowed to hurry, and should be frequently halted in this position by feeling both reins and closing the left leg, but the closing of the leg should have more to do with his halting than the feeling of the reins.

It is not likely that the horse is going to understand all these things at once and be willing to do them the first time of asking. The lesson must be gone about quietly and gradually, at first by getting a little extra bend to whichever hand the horse is working, without asking him to cross his legs at all and without checking the pace, then by degrees getting his forehand a little more in and leading him off with the outward rein for a few steps only, and letting him go forward again. Then bring his forehand in again and halt him, and bend him while halted in that position to the hand he is working, and try to lead him off for a few steps from the halt and forward again. If you

get a few steps in the first few lessons, be satisfied, and try for a little more each time till he gives it to you altogether without attempting to stop; but above all things avoid getting up a fight with him.

When the horse works steadily and quietly in 'shoulder in' to both hands, he may next be asked to 'passage,' and this should be started from 'shoulder in.' Supposing, again, that you are working on the right rein, without in any way changing the position of the horse, take the right leg nearly away from him altogether, close the left leg, and try, by leading the shoulders off with the right rein, to passage him across the school in the same position he was in at 'shoulder in.' He will most likely advance a little at first, instead of passaging square across; but so long as he goes in the required direction, be satisfied, only, if possible, keep the bend to the right until he arrives at the opposite side, and then change it to the left, allow him to go forward, and make much of him. 'Passaging' differs from 'shoulder in' in this respect, that in 'shoulder in' the horse bends and looks the contrary way to that in which he is going, whereas in the 'passage' he bends and looks and goes the same way; also that in making a turn while working 'shoulder in,' it is made on the forehand, the inward rein staying the forehand, and the inward leg circling the croup round, while in the 'passage' all turns are made on the haunches, the inward leg staying the hind quarters, and the inward rein circling the horse's forehand round.

'Passage shoulder out' is working 'passage' with the horse's head towards the side of the school, and making the turns at the corners of the house on the haunches. The horse is brought to this position from 'shoulder in' by turning *outwards* about—that is to say, if working right shoulder in, turning left about, and brought back to 'shoulder in' by turning left about; and in this case the horse should make the turn on his centre, the man's body being on the same line during and after the turn as before he began it. The horse's fore and hind feet should, while going about, describe a complete circle.

Or it may be thought desirable from 'passage shoulder out,' to 'passage' across the school or down the middle of it, in which case the rider simply makes a turn on the hind feet, and keeps him passaging in the same position as when his head was to the side. On arriving at the opposite side or end of the school, if he wishes to bring the horse to 'shoulder in' on the other rein, the first thing to do is to change the position of the horse's head from right to left or left to right, as may be, halt the fore feet, and circle the croup quietly round, so as to make the turn on the forehand; then lead the shoulders off with the outward rein. 'Half passage' differs from the full passage inasmuch as that in the passage the horse crosses his legs, whereas in the half passage he only half crosses them by placing one foot in front of the other, so that he gains as much ground to his front as the hand to which he is working; consequently the rider requires to use in the half passage more inward leg, and not quite so much outward as in the full.

The half passage is very good practice, when the horse is farther advanced, to be done at a canter, but he should, of course, first be taught to do it at a walk. The whole of the foregoing 'bending' lesson can be done at a trot, but unless the rider is himself quite a first-rate horseman, and has got his horse very supple and handy, he had better be content with doing it at a walk, or he may possibly do more harm than good. The rider must also, during this lesson, be careful that the horse does not get into the way of anticipating him. He should avoid always doing the same thing at one particular part of the school, or the horse will begin to do it by himself, so as to get away from the feeling of the rein and closing of the legs, and this would be the reverse of good progress. The rider should also take care that whether in 'passage,' 'half passage,' or 'shoulder in,' his horse is correctly placed, that his shoulders always lead, and that when the horse has once been made to understand what is required of him, he is to be kept well up to his bridle with the legs, and not to be allowed to slide through his work and so get behind the hand.

REINING BACK

'Reining back' is a most useful and important lesson in the training of the young horse, not only because it is very often desirable that the horse should step backwards, to enable the rider to put him exactly in the place he requires him to be, but also because, especially in the case of horses which have bad, heavy shoulders, are low in front, and consequently inclined to be heavy in hand, it raises their forehands, and teaches them to collect themselves better than anything else would do. It should not be begun too early in his breaking, the first thing being to teach the animal to go straight to his front freely, and carry the weight, and afterwards to obey the feeling of the rein and closing of the leg, which he has been taught to do in the bending lesson. In beginning to rein back, if he has not already done so during the lessons on the longe, the rider should dismount, as it stands to reason that it is much easier for the horse to do it with the weight off his back than with his rider up. The man should place himself in front of the horse, and take a snaffle rein in each hand, about three inches from the rings of the snaffle, and, without sawing it, press quietly against the bars of the horse's mouth. If the horse yields, and goes back kindly and quietly, so much the better; make much of him, lead him forward a few steps, and repeat it. On the other hand, it is quite possible that he may plant himself firmly, and be obstinate about it, and any amount of pushing at his mouth will not induce him to take one step to the rear. In that case, the best thing to do is to place him broadside on to the side of the house, take the near snaffle rein in the left hand, and with the right hand tap him smartly on the chest with a hand whip, which will generally have the desired effect so that he will step back a few paces, and when once he has been induced to do that, he will, if not forced too much or abused, learn to do it quite easily in a few lessons. Every horse should be taught to step freely to the rear when

dismounted before he is asked to do so with a man on his back, and when he does so, the man may mount and try to get a few steps from him mounted. In reining back, the horse is on no account to be allowed to run back out of hand, which is a habit many young horses are apt to acquire, so as to get away from the feeling of the reins and closing of the legs; he should be kept well up to his bridle with the legs. He must not be allowed to throw his haunches to the right or left, but should be taught to rein back on a perfectly straight line, and he should take an even cadenced pace to the rear the same as when going forward.

When halted, as he frequently should be while reining back, he should be made to stand evenly on all four legs and not with his legs sprawled out, as young horses are very apt to do if not well kept up to it. The hands should be light, but the reins held firmly in them, and they should yield after every step. There is nothing so likely to cause a horse to refuse while reining back as a dull heavy feeling of the hand unsupported by the pressure of the legs. The horse's head should be kept as nearly as possible in the same position as when going forward. Many horses are in the habit of getting their heads too low in reining back, and keeping their snaffles loose in the mouth so as to get behind the hand; they should not be allowed to do this; they might almost as well not do it at all for all the good the practice does them. The best cure for them is to halt them every few steps, keeping them well up to the hand with the legs, and then go on again. Others will be inclined to get their heads too much up, and poke their noses out, and plant their fore feet out in front of them. It is not the slightest use to try to rein a horse back while he is in this position, for he could hardly step back if he tried while so placed, and trying to force him to do so would only make him more obstinate. The best thing in this case is either to dismount and give him a little more practice with the weight off his back, or move him forward a few steps so as to get hold of him a little and his head properly placed; then halt him and

try again, bearing in mind that the pressure of the leg should be applied before the feeling of the rein, as it stands to reason that if the mouth be felt first, the weight is thrown almost entirely on to the hind legs, making it very difficult for the horse to bend his hocks, whereas by closing the leg first the horse goes up to his bridle, keeps his balance, and does it much more easily. A dismounted man may be of service sometimes, where horses are very obstinate to rein back when mounted, to do the same as recommended before mounting, but he must not attempt to force the animal to step back with his head up and his nose stuck out, but should always place him first.

There is another thing to be taken into consideration, in the case of a horse showing a disinclination to rein back with the rider up, and that is, that the horse is perhaps not quite right in the back, and although he may have done his work fairly well up to this, and not shown much, if any, sign of it, yet when asked to do this he is not able to comply, and not from want of will. If this is ascertained to be the reason of his refusing, it must be left to the discretion of the owner as to whether he had not better be put to some other way of earning his living than riding. At any rate a veterinary surgeon's opinion should be taken, as to whether the horse is likely to get the better of it or not.

This lesson, like the previous ones, should not be continued too long at a time, but should be varied with what the horse has already learnt to do, and when he does it fairly well he may next be taught to canter.

CANTERING

The canter should be begun on a large circle, or, if the school is too small to allow of the circle being of good size, it may be done when going large round the house but rounding the corners off. In the first lessons it should be taken up from the trot. After trotting a few times steadily round the circle the pace should be gradually increased, and the horse urged.

forward into a canter by the application of both legs, the outward the stronger.

The rider should be pretty well able to judge by the feeling of his horse under him the exact moment to press his horse into a canter so as to ensure his striking off correctly, that is to say, with his inward legs leading. It will generally be found that the opportunity offers itself most frequently just in the act of rounding off one of the corners, or when coming to the side of the school after crossing the centre of it. In the first lessons of the young horse in cantering, it is best, instead of trying to raise his forehand by feeling the reins, to yield the hand at the same time as you close the legs, and trust to the application of the legs at the proper moment to ensure the horse striking off into his canter correctly. In case he does happen to get off false, that is to say, leading with his outward legs, too much notice need not be taken. He may be allowed to drop quietly into a trot, and after trotting a time or two round try again.

If he go off true and united at the first attempt, keep the legs close to him so as to prevent him from dropping into a trot for a few times round the circle, then quietly trot, walk, and halt, and make much of him, give him his head for a short time altogether to let him get his wind, for in the early lessons in cantering it does not require a great deal of it to take a lot out of him. Then, after he has rested, work him a short time in the bending lesson, and after reining back a few steps, keeping him well up to the hand, put him on the circle again, and try in the same manner as before to get a few steps from him at a canter the other way round. Great care must be taken when pulling up that it is not done too suddenly so as to run the chance of straining the horse. Most young horses go in a rough awkward style when first learning to canter, and this is not improved by the rider trying to collect them too soon. As a rule, in beginning they require plenty of support from the rider's legs and not too much restraint from his hands, but it too frequently happens, especially if the horse go a little more

97508

awkwardly than the general run of young horses, that he gets a great deal too much restraint from the hand for the simple reason that his awkward loose way of going makes him a little difficult to sit on, and the rider is apt in consequence to put too much weight on his horse's mouth to assist himself in keeping his seat. After a few lessons the reins may be gradually shortened, the horse's forehand more raised, and the pace made a little slower by degrees, until it becomes suitable to the particular purpose to serve which the animal may be intended. If he is to be hunted it is not necessary to collect him too much, but if he is to be made into a hack or charger he can hardly be got too much collected, although the pace should not be so short as to at all interfere with the natural spring of the horse and give him what is called a wooden sort of action.

Notwithstanding that the canter is the easiest pace the horse goes at, that is to say, after he has been taught and properly collected, there is no other pace in which he is more likely to shirk his work and get behind the hand, and this generally comes from the rider thinking, because his horse goes pretty well and evenly at this pace, that he is all right and so takes it easy himself; but it will be found in most cases that horses which seem to an inexperienced rider to be the best at this pace are in reality the worst, and want more leg than others to make them do their work and keep them up to the hand.

When the horse canters fairly well on the circle to both hands he should be taken round the house at the same pace, and the change tried by making a long incline across the school. The rider here must be careful not to ask his horse to make the change too abruptly, but on arriving at the opposite side should at first quietly pull him up to a trot, and put him on the circle to the other hand before asking him to canter to that hand. Some horses, after a little practice in this part of their cantering lesson, get into the way of changing too soon so as to escape from the application of the rider's aid. This of course should not be allowed. The horse must not be permitted to change even when he comes on to the other rein

until he is asked to do so by his rider, and it is good practice, in cases where horses have got into the way of anticipating the change, to keep them going on the same leg after making an incline for a short time, although it be false, and then make a half halt and change on to the proper leg. Nearly all horses would rather canter to one particular hand than to the other. It is often said that it is more difficult to teach a horse to canter to the right than to the left, in fact that the generality of horses would canter to the left, but that they require to be taught to canter to the right. Experience scarcely proves this; many horses are certainly as awkward to canter to the left as to the right; and the best thing to do is to give such as these two lessons on the rein to which they are awkward or stiff to one on the other, until they canter equally well to either hand. It is a common practice when horses are heavy and awkward to canter to one particular hand. If this by chance be the left, their riders try to make them do so by pulling their heads round to the right and closing the legs, or spurring them while in this position to make them strike off correctly, and no doubt they in most cases succeed in their endeavour, but it is a most unfair way of managing, for the horse must be to a certain extent thrown off his balance, and is very liable to be strained; moreover, as he has to cross his legs while in that position he very likely comes down on his side, and the rider, if he gets a squeeze, as he most likely does in a tumble of this sort, will probably try another way next time.

If a horse be very awkward his head may be turned a little off the circle, but the bend should be kept to the hand to which he is working, as when working 'passage shoulder out,' but the inward rein should lead him off, and when he has been struck off correctly, the hind legs should follow the track of the fore, and the horse well supported by both legs, especially the outward, so as to keep him going and prevent him from changing. Many horses, especially coarse-bred ones, having upright heavy shoulders, take a long time before they will canter nicely, and this is not to be wondered at, as it is much harder work

for them than for better bred ones of a better shape. Such horses are really not in their places as saddle horses at all. If they are intended to carry a man they usually require a great deal more time than the good shaped ones, and their riders should be satisfied with a little at a time, frequently halting and bending them, and reining back a few steps, then trying again.

Some horses—even good shaped ones—acquire the habit at a canter of getting their heads too low and boring on the hand. This often comes of previous bad riding, and should be corrected by the rider keeping them well up to their work with the legs and frequently reining back. Others again at this pace, as well as the other paces, are inclined to poke their noses out and carry their heads too high. These require the hands to be kept low and not too much leg, for it often happens that this style of going is produced by the rider having driven up more with his legs than he could retain in his hands. In either case there is no better correction for horses, when they do not canter as collectedly or carry themselves as they ought to do, than a little reining back. If well done, it gets those that carry their heads too low to raise their forehands and bring their haunches under them, and makes them altogether lighter in hand; in the opposite case it has the effect of bringing the horse's nose more under his ears, and teaches him to yield to the rider's hand instead of fighting at his bridle. When turning at a canter, which should not be practised until the horse is fairly well collected, he requires to be kept well up to the hand with both legs, the outward of course the stronger, so as to prevent the haunches from being thrown out, which is more likely to be done in this case than at a trot. The horse must not be allowed to hurry in the turn, which young horses at first are often inclined to do. The rider should make the turn, if anything, at a slower pace than when going straight forward, keeping the forehand well raised to prevent the horse coming too much on his shoulders, and giving him plenty of room to turn in, until such time as he is well balanced in his canter.

Of course it will not now be necessary to put the horse on

the circle before beginning to canter, or always to strike him off from the trot, but he may now be practised in taking up the canter from the walk when going straight forward, and should be frequently brought from a canter to a trot. When he has settled down at that pace he should be extended to trot out nearly as fast as he can, the rider urging him with the legs to make him step out freely, and restraining him with the hand at the same time; if a horse does this part of the lesson well his rider may be sure that he is up to his bridle. Horses that are intended to be used as ladies' hacks should be practised in cantering oftener to the right than to the left, it being much easier and more pleasant for a lady that her horse should canter to that hand than to the other. This part of the lady's comfort in riding is not so much attended to as it used to be. About one in every four of the horses ridden by ladies in the Park canter to the left instead of to the right, and this must be because they have not been properly broken to canter for a lady. People who ought to know better say that teaching a horse to canter collectedly spoils his pace at a trot, but in fact it does nothing of the kind. There are, doubtless, plenty of horses that from bad riding get into a loose lobbing canter behind the hand, and would rather go at that pace than trot; but this is almost invariably caused by the rider not having kept his horse up to his work at any of his paces, and the best remedy for it is to keep the horse well up to his bridle with the leg at a canter, so as to make it harder work for him. He will in most cases soon be glad to trot, and trot freely.

As before mentioned in the 'Bending' lesson, the 'half-passage' at a canter is very good practice in the breaking of the young horse, and it should be begun from the incline.

After making the half turn to incline, say to the right, the left leg should be closed strongly, so as to bring the horse's croup a little more up. He will not, of course, be expected at first to do the half passage correctly, that is to say, half cross his legs by placing one foot in front of the other, nor should he be asked to do so, but so long as the bend is kept to the

hand to which the half passage is to be made, and he is got to understand a little of what he is required to do, the rider should be satisfied. A little more may be asked each time of trying, until the horse gets into the proper way of doing it. The mistake that is most generally made here is, that instead of leading the horse off with the inward rein, the rider is apt to try to get the horse's croup up by feeling the outward rein, instead of waiting until he has got his horse in the new direction, and then trying to get him a little more square by closing the outward leg. Of course it stands to reason that if the horse's head be pulled to the right, his croup will go to the left, and inexperienced horsemen often work on this method in beginning the half passage; but they make a great mistake, for in most cases a young horse ridden on these lines does not understand what is wanted of him, and the rider very often finds after a few attempts that his horse does not do it as well as he did the first time, whereas if he had commenced as before stated from the incline, he would have shown the animal what he wanted done, and would most likely have got him to do it, instead of confusing him and causing him, perhaps, to refuse altogether. If the half passage be correctly made, the horse should gain as much ground to his front as he does to his right or left. He must bend to the hand to which he is working, and he must not be allowed to change on to the other leg until the half passage is finished. He requires to be ridden well up to his work with both legs, the outward the stronger, to make him half cross his legs and keep his croup up so that he goes in an oblique direction, the inward leg to keep him up to the hand.

LEAPING

No horse that is to be used for riding purposes can be said to be broken if he has not been taught to jump.

The riding school is not the best place for such instruction, as the horse does not come across the variety of obstacles to be got over that he would find out of doors in the country,

but the bar in the school is a very good thing to begin with. The first lesson in jumping should be given dismounted, on the cavesson, it being only fair that the horse should get accustomed to jump over an obstacle by himself before he is asked to do it with a man on his back. His head should be quite free; in fact, the bridle may be taken off altogether at first. The bar should be laid on the ground, and the horse be walked

Over an obstacle by himself.

a few times quietly over it; he may prefer, although he can perfectly well step over, to jump it, and if he does, so much the better. If the horse appears to be shy of it, a little coaxing will be found to be the surest way of overcoming the shyness. Above everything, keep the whip away; a short time spent in talking to him and coaxing him will pay infinitely better than abusing him. When he leads quietly over the bar on the ground, it may be put up into the first hole, which should only

make it about eighteen inches from the ground; but it ought to be fixed up pretty firmly, so that in stepping over it if the horse does not step quite clear, it will not come down unless he hits it rather hard. The bar should be well bound with hay, or some other soft material, so that he cannot hurt himself much. It is the usual practice to bind the leaping bar with furze, which is a very good plan later on, when the horse has been taught to jump, as it induces a lazy one to jump high enough to clear it, but hay or straw bound round it is the best when beginning with a young one.

The horse should not be required even to step over the bar more than three or four times in a day, and that at the end of his usual lesson, just before he is sent to his stable; there is nothing more likely to make him careless and slovenly than to be kept going round and round over the same thing for a long time. When he has got accustomed to walk over the bar, the cavesson rein should be let out, and he should be made to describe a circle, so as to longe him over at a trot. If he only trot over, be satisfied, and if he does so pretty kindly, put it up another hole the next day, and he will most likely jump it. Never mind how awkwardly he does it, so long as he goes over. Repeat it a few times, make much of him and let him go in. When he jumps freely on the longe over the bar about three feet high, the cavesson may be taken off and he may be ridden over. When longeing a horse over the bar, the person who is doing it should take care to lift the cavesson rein over the post in time, so as to avoid getting it caught, which would most likely baulk the horse. There is a certain amount of knack in doing this nicely. It is easily done if the man is about in line with the bar when the horse comes to it, but if he allow the horse to get in front of him there is sure to be a certain amount of jerk, which, even if the rein clears the post, ought to be avoided.

When the horse is first ridden over the bar it should again be lowered to the first hole, the rider should be most careful

not in the slightest to interfere with his horse's mouth when he jumps, or for some little distance after he is over, and if he does not rise at all, but merely trots over it, he should not be disappointed, but close his legs a little stronger next time, which will in all probability have the effect of getting the horse to bend his knees, raise his forehand and spring over it. Nearly all young horses at first jump in a clumsy awkward sort of

Avoid getting it caught.

fashion, and are more difficult to sit on than a trained horse would be. The rider must therefore be prepared to keep his legs close and sit tight, allowing his body play from the loins, so as to avoid hanging on to the horse's mouth to preserve his seat. A few horse's lengths after he is over, quietly collect him and make much of him. This should be continued for a few days, or until the horse carry his rider kindly, and with ease to himself, over this low jump. And then the bar should

be gradually raised hole by hole until it is as high as the horse is judged to be capable of clearing with ease. Rushing at a jump is a very bad fault, and one that if not checked is pretty sure sooner or later to bring horse and rider to grief. The majority of horses that learn this very dangerous habit do so from having in their earlier lessons been flogged or hustled over the bar or whatever obstacle they were being practised over, instead of being walked over it quietly. In most cases where rushing occurs the horse has by bad usage been taught to do the very thing that every one is most anxious to avoid, a fault which takes a long time and great patience to cure. Some horses of a hot fretful disposition are inclined to rush at their jump even at the first time of asking. In their case the best remedy is to take as little notice as possible, but give them their heads so that they may see where they are going, and in time, when they find that nothing awful happens to them, they of their own accord get into the way of taking things more coolly. Many more horses, however, rush more from fear caused by ill-usage as young ones than from any other reason, and the best thing to do for such a one is to walk him nearly up to the bar, halting and making much of him every few paces, occasionally reining back a step or two and going forward again, then when within about three horse's lengths or so, according to the height of the bar (which should be low for this purpose), give him his head and allow him to do it by himself; make much of him after he is over, and in time he may be got to jump coolly. On the other hand, there are many horses that are perfectly well able to jump but are naturally lazy and slovenly. Two or three strokes with a good sharp cutting whip just behind the rider's leg, to liven them up a little and persuade them to make the necessary exertion, is the best treatment for these. When a horse has to be punished to make him jump, it is better the man on his back should do it, unless it be a case where he must have both hands to keep his horse's head straight, and then a man on foot with a longeing

whip may assist him ; a cut from a whip seems to have more effect on a lazy brute than spurs.

Many people believe in putting a horse down if he is lazy at his jump, and there is no doubt that by giving a horse a fall he takes particular care next time to jump bigger, but there are grave objections to doing this with young ones. They should have plenty of encouragement at first, and not be asked too much, till they are well practised in jumping.

Although hanging on to a horse's mouth (especially a young one) is about the surest way to prevent him from jumping, or else to pull him on to or into what it is desired by his rider he should get over, yet he should be ridden firmly with hand and leg right up to his leap, and the hands should yield only when the rider is perfectly certain that his horse means to take the leap. One often hears of some one having *lifted* his horse in a most extraordinary manner over some very extraordinary fence, but how such lifting can be effected is a mystery. One can understand a good horseman having ridden his horse resolutely with hand and legs right up to his fence, and then by closing his legs strongly, or using his whip or spur at the exact moment, stimulating his horse to make his very best effort ; but there is no such thing as 'lifting' him, and there is reason to believe that many people try to persuade themselves they are 'lifting' their horses, when in reality they are simply holding on to their horse's mouth.

Refusing, when a horse has once become a good free jumper, is more often caused by nervousness on the part of the rider than by anything else. Most horses, when they have once taken well to jumping, rather enjoy it than otherwise, and even those that are not quite so keen about it seldom take to refusing if they are resolutely ridden, and not asked to jump something that it is impossible for them to get over. A few instances of the rider changing his mind when he has once put his horse's head at a jump will be found to be about the surest plan of turning the best of jumpers into a refuser.

When the horse jumps the bar in the school to the satisfaction of his rider, he should be taken out of doors, again put on the cavesson and led over small fences, including ditches or in fact whatever of a moderate kind comes in the way, taking the larger ones by degrees, until he gets used to jumping whatever sort of fence he may be asked, and does it kindly and safely. He should then be ridden over the jumps, beginning with the small ones first, and then going on again to the larger ones ; any experienced rider can tell when he has got his horse over about as much as he is able to compass, and he should then be satisfied. There are no doubt times when from excitement a horse will get over places that he would not attempt in his cooler moments, or his rider think of asking him to try, but in teaching the young horse the rider should be careful not to ask him to do more than he can do with comparative ease. No hard and fast rule can be laid down as regards the pace at which the horse is to be ridden at any of his fences. This is a matter best left to the discretion of the rider, according as to whether his horse is a free or a slovenly jumper, so long as he avoids rushing, but it should be held as a rule not to ride too fast at stiff timber, or too slow at water ; also when riding over hedges and ditches the pace should be a little faster when the ditch is on the landing side than it is when it is on the taking-off side. On the cavesson is thought by many to be a better way of teaching a young one to jump dismounted than driving him by a long pair of reins from behind, as is much practised in Ireland. It would obviously require a most extraordinarily active man to follow a horse if he jumped freely over small fences without stopping him the moment he landed, whereas on the cavesson and about fifteen yards of rein a man of average activity can pretty nearly get over small fences with the horse, and by letting the cavesson rein out need not interfere with him immediately after jumping.

BITTING

The horse having been taught to go through all the foregoing lessons steadily on the snaffle, may now be bitted; and the first thing here to do is to select the easiest bit that can be found, the lower the port the better, in fact it should have no port at all, but the mouthpiece be just a little arched in the centre so that the horse's tongue lies nearly under it. Care should be taken that the bit is wide enough in the mouthpiece, so that it does not press against the sides of the mouth or pinch the lips; at the same time it must not be too wide, for if it should be the mouthpiece will not have a fair equal bearing on the bars of the horse's mouth on both sides at the same moment, but will be constantly shifting from one side to the other, and thus render the rider's aid uncertain. It should also be remembered that the longer the cheek-pieces or branches of the bit are the more severe it is, so that when selecting a bit for a young horse it is desirable to choose one with shortish cheek-pieces. The bridoon, which is exactly on the same principle as the snaffle, should be fitted in the same manner as the snaffle, and before placing it in the horse's mouth the bridoon should be placed over the mouthpiece of the bit. There is no better general guide for fitting the bit than that laid down in the Cavalry Regulations, which is, 'that the mouthpiece should be one inch above the lower tush in a horse's mouth, and in a mare's two inches above the corner tooth.' Some horses of peculiar conformation of the mouth require the mouthpiece of the bit to be placed a little higher or lower, and in the case of horses that are inclined to star-gazing, the bit should be fitted a little lower than here laid down, but it should also be borne in mind that by dropping the bit lower you make it more severe, thereby requiring a lighter hand to ride on it.

No bridle is better suited to the first bitting of a young horse that has been properly prepared on the snaffle than the

ordinary easy double-reined bridle, so long as it is properly fitted. It is simple in its action, and easy for the horse to understand, which is the main thing wanted. The curb should be looked to before putting it on to see that there are no rough links in it, which is often the case when it has been in wear for some time. If the curb be a single one, do not use one that has worn thin and wide in the links; they cut almost like a knife. If the curb be a double one, twist it up before putting it on and see that each link fits properly into its place, for if it is not so the curb cannot be very comfortable to the horse; it will not have the smooth bearing round the jaw that it is desirable it should have. In putting it on see that it will admit two fingers easily between it and the jaw. So long as it lies in the groove of the chin and does not get down under the lower lip it can hardly, in the beginning, be too slack, although after a time, when the horse is ridden on the bit, the curb should not be fitted to allow more than the two fingers, but care must be taken at all times that the links are quite smooth.

Every one, whether he has been accustomed to riding or not, must be perfectly well aware that the action of the snaffle and the bit are totally different. The snaffle acts directly on the bars of the horse's mouth and tongue, whereas on the bit, when the reins are shortened, the lower part of the cheek-pieces are drawn back, which tightens the curb, in addition to the mouthpiece pressing on the bars of the mouth, making it much more severe than the snaffle. The rider, therefore, cannot be too careful, in the first lessons on the bit, to avoid any harsh usage of it, but must begin in the simplest manner possible, so as to get his horse to understand and obey the feeling of it. The best way is to begin dismounted.

The bridle having been put on, and properly fitted, the man should stand on the near side of the horse, facing him, with his heels apart, nearly in the same position as if he were going to mount, only near to the horse's head, instead of being opposite the saddle, the bit and bridoon reins being loose on the horse's neck. He should then pass his right hand quietly under

the reins, and take hold of the right bit rein, about four inches from the ring of the bit, at the same time take the left bit rein in the left hand, close to the ring, and quietly, by drawing the right hand back a little, and bringing the left hand forward, turn the bit in the horse's mouth, so as to get a little bend to the right. When he has done this gently, he should unbend him again, make much of him, and going to the off side repeat the same thing to the left. When bending the horse on the bit, do not attempt to play with it, as by doing so there must be a certain amount of jerk, but turn it gradually across the bars of the mouth, with just sufficient pressure to make the horse yield ; and then make much of him. A short time spent in bending dismounted for a few days, will be found to be of the greatest assistance in getting the horse to take kindly to his bit when mounted. When mounting the horse for the first time after he has been bitted, the rider should do so on the bridoon only, and then take a bit and bridoon rein in each hand, the little finger between them, in the same manner as when riding on a snaffle and running reins, and ride altogether on the bridoon rein, having the bit reins just so short that in the event of the horse being inclined to throw his head about, there will not be too much play with the bit and no danger of his throwing the bit rein over his head. The horse should be kept at steady straightforward work for a few days after being bitted, until he becomes accustomed to obey the feeling of the bit, and as he grows more reconciled to it, the bit reins should be gradually shortened until the horse goes up to his bridle. When the rider has an equal feeling of all four reins, the horse should be put through the whole of the lessons he has been previously taught on the snaffle every day. He must be frequently halted, so as not to overtire him, and care should be taken not to keep on at any one lesson too long at a time, so as to disgust the horse with it, which would either end in his refusing, or else trying to slide through it in a slovenly sort of way, which would not have the desired effect.

It often happens that young horsemen, with the best of all

possible intentions, will keep a horse that does not exactly please them in some particular part of a lesson at the same thing until he gets sick and tired of it and refuses. In most cases the man then loses his temper also. There is a fight, and the rider at such a time does not always get the best of it; whereas by not wearying the horse with repetitions of the same thing until his patience and perhaps his strength were exhausted, the rider would in all probability have got what he wanted next time of asking. Riding on the bit alone should not be attempted until the horse acquits himself satisfactorily on all four reins, and then only by a very good horseman who has a perfectly independent seat and light hands. Even such a rider as this should, in all turns, for some time use his inward bridoon rein, to lead his horse's forehand into the required new direction. There are differences of opinion as to the best way of holding the reins when riding on the bit alone, but probably there is no better way than that which is practised in the Cavalry, that is, the little finger of the left hand between the reins, which are brought through the full of the hand and laid over the forefinger, and the thumb closed on them, the bridoon rein being also through the full of the hand at full length equally divided and laid over the forefinger also, but with the thumb on the bit reins only. The right hand should be always ready to assist with the bridoon rein on either side as may be required. This style of riding should only be practised for military purposes on a well broken charger, where the rider must have his right hand at liberty for the use of his weapon, or on a well broken hack for park riding; but for all ordinary purposes horses should be ridden on all four reins. The rider by this method keeps his horse's mouth fresher, and horses as a general rule go better up to their bridles than when ridden on the bit only; besides, unless the horse be very well broken, and the rider thoroughly accustomed to ride on the bit, he is very liable, unless he uses the bridoon to help him, to try to turn his horse on the wrong rein, which is not calculated to improve either his mouth or his temper.

There are any number of bits in use of different patterns,

all more or less severe, and no doubt there are many horses that have not been properly broken, or that have been badly ridden after breaking, that require something out of the common to keep them under control, especially when excited. But in most cases the easier the bit, and consequently the less pain the horse has to endure from it, the more pleasantly he will go. When a man once takes the idea into his head that a horse wants something more severe than its ordinary double-rein bridle to hold him, he may go on getting a bit a little higher in the port, and then one higher still, from that to a Chifney, and so on (there are plenty of them severe enough to hold a bullock if main strength and the amount of pain caused to the animal by their use or abuse would hold him), till he got to the severest he could find; and still the horse would pull. But put the same horse back on to a common double bridle, with some one on his back for a time possessed of patience and good hands, and he will go more pleasantly than in any of the jaw-breaking bits. Those bits which have moveable mouthpieces answer very well for most horses; they are not necessarily severe, and as the mouthpiece moves up and down it encourages the horse to play with it, and helps to keep his mouth fresh. When a young horse is first bitted, however, it is best to use a bit that has a fixed mouthpiece.

Moveable mouthpieces, after being in wear some time, get open at the joints, and, if not looked to, are apt to pinch the horse's mouth. The objection to a Pelham is that it is often desirable to use the bridoon only, and the mouthpiece for bit and bridoon being one, this is less convenient than when they are separate; besides, the mouthpiece of the Pelham being jointed in the centre like the snaffle, it has the effect (especially after being worn for a time) when the bit reins are tightened of squeezing the bars of the horse's mouth instead of bearing fairly on them.

A noseband is often used for horses that have not very good mouths, and I think often with better effect than a severe bit. When it is used, it should be on the cheek-pieces of the

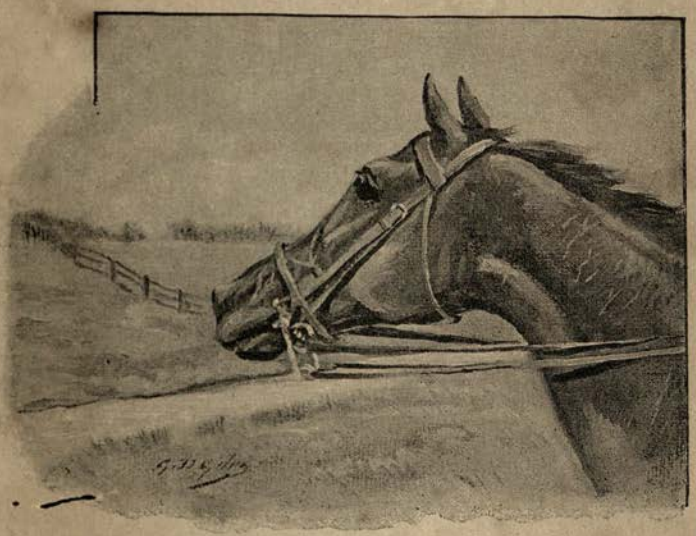
bit headstall, and should be buckled beneath the bridoon headstall, low enough and tight enough to assist in preventing the horse from opening his mouth too wide, but at the same time not to interfere with his breathing. A martingale is often used with good results for horses that are inclined to get their heads up. It should be a running martingale, attached to the breastplate, having two rings, one at the end of each strap of the martingale; the bridoon reins are passed one through each ring, and buckled to the bridoon in the usual way; or if the reins are sewn on to the bridoon, the buckle in the centre can be undone and the rein passed through the rings in that way, and used in the same manner as when riding on the snaffle with running reins.

Standing martingales, for riding purposes, are certainly the most useless and dangerous thing that can be put on a horse. They are attached to the breastplate also, but where the rings are sewn on to the straps in the running martingale a small buckle and strap, commonly called a billet, is sewn on to the standing one, and these are buckled to the rings of the bridoon; the length is adjusted by another buckle on the breastplate, low down, through which the end of the martingale is passed and is let out, or taken up, as is considered necessary. In some cases they have only one billet, which is buckled to the noseband, but in either case there can be no question of give and take in the matter, for the rider, having once put it on and mounted, has no control over it—it must be a fixture. Supposing the horse stumbles badly, about the first thing he does to try to recover himself is to throw his head up, but if he has a standing martingale on as soon as he does this he is checked sharply in the mouth at the very moment when his head should be at liberty. The consequence is very likely a pair of broken knees, whereas, if he had not been tied by the martingale, he would in all probability have recovered after a scramble. Then again, no sane man would attempt to ride a horse over a fence of any size with such an obstruction on, unless he had previously made up his mind to see what sort of

a tumble he would be likely to get, and how quickly he could spoil his horse into the bargain. None of these appliances are requisite in the bitting of the young horse. They apply more to the riding of those that have been badly broken or spoiled afterwards.

OUT OF DOORS

Although nearly all the instructions for the previous lessons to the young horse have been given for working in the school, there is no reason why he should not occasionally have been



Out of doors.

ridden for a short time out of doors ; in fact, it is desirable as soon as horses are far enough advanced, and the rider feels he has sufficient control over them, that they should be taken out on the road or elsewhere for a short time every day, after their lesson in the school. In case a horse is not very strong, and the lesson in the school is considered to be enough for him, it is

advisable to miss a day's work in the school now and then, and take him outside instead. It stands to reason that it is better for the health of the horse to take his exercise out in the air sometimes, and he is not so liable to get disgusted, for it must grow rather monotonous for a horse, during the whole time he is being broken, to be simply taken from the stable to the school, and after his lesson back to the stable again. Of course every one has not the advantage of a school to begin working young horses in, and there are, as is well known, many very well broken horses that have never been inside one in their lives; but it does not follow that the school is not the best place, so long as they get a certain amount of outdoor work as well, although people who ought to know better say that they would rather be without one. Those same people, when they have tried to break a horse themselves out of doors, and have not only failed to do so, but got the animal to such a pitch that they could not ride him a hundred yards without getting some one to lead him, when in fact they have found the horse getting more the master every day, generally send him to a school, and are then considerably disappointed if the horse is not turned out to their satisfaction. It is not here asserted that this horse or that horse cannot be broken without a school if he is in good hands, but it is unquestionably harder to redeem a failure than to begin at the beginning. No horse is so bad to break as the one that has been made a fool of by some person who had not the knowledge or patience to teach him. Even when such a one is sent to the school, and is there well and patiently ridden for some time by an experienced horseman, he rarely if ever turns out so well as those that begin their education in the school, in the hands of some one who thoroughly understands his business. But this is rather getting away from the subject of riding the horse out of doors.

Young horses, on being first taken out, are naturally disposed to look about them, and their attention is in consequence to a certain extent taken off their riders. So long as they go fairly well to their front, it is as well to satisfy their curiosity.

If you see anything ahead likely to frighten the horse do not turn back, because just as likely as not the horse has seen it as soon as you. Give it as wide a berth as you can without taking any notice of it. If you begin to take more hold of the horse, you will only make him suspicious. Meet the same thing again, if possible, during your ride, and this time pass it a little closer; on no account, if the horse be shy, should the rider attempt to force the animal's head towards the object he fears. If he be inquisitive enough to want to have a look at it, well and good; let him do so; but never, especially in the case of a young horse, put his head hard at the thing he is afraid of, and try to force him up to it. If you do so, it is sure to cause a fight, which will make the horse, through having been punished, more frightened next time he sees the same object; whereas, by turning his head a little away from what alarmed him, and taking as little notice yourself as possible, so as to get the horse to think it is all right, he will in all probability pass it, without doing anything more than, perhaps, increasing his pace a little, and soon, finding he has no cause to be afraid, will not take the slightest notice.

Perhaps the most common fault that is found among young horses in their first lessons out of the school, is their reluctance to leave home. There are decided objections to allowing young horses to get into the habit of always wanting to be in company with others; nevertheless, in beginning with a horse that is inclined to hang at home, the best plan is to send some one on a steady old nag with him for a few days, just by way of giving him a lead. Nearly all young horses will follow, or go with another pretty freely, though in most instances there is a marked improvement in their style of going as soon as they know their heads are turned towards home. Of course, the quietest road that is convenient should be selected at first, but the rider must not make the mistake of always taking his horse the same daily round, especially if he is one of the cunning sort, for he will very soon get to know his usual journey, and have a decided objection to go any other way. It is better,

after he has been out a few times, to put up with a little more traffic, or a worse road, than to get him into a certain routine; as, after all, he will have to get used to good roads and bad ones, quiet and busy thoroughfares. It will be found that horses get out of the way of hanging to home sooner if the rider, by selecting different routes, and frequently turning, can make the horse lose himself, so that he does not know whether he is going home or not. The man on the old horse, supposing one has been required to go with the young one, should, by degrees, ride farther away, sometimes allowing the young one to go first, until he is willing either to follow or lead, and then the companion may be dispensed with. Horses should be ridden up to their bridles out of doors, the same as in the school; the lessons in the school having been given with the object of making them intelligent, active, and obedient to the hand and legs of the rider, and no horse retains that activity and readiness to obey unless he is constantly kept up to his work. It must not be understood that the horse is never to have a moment's peace, and is always to be worried from the

A considerable amount of trouble.

time he is mounted until he is dismounted, but any horse, be he ever so well broken, if allowed to shirk his work for any length of time, will take advantage of his rider, and give a considerable amount of trouble before he is put right again.

THE GALLOP

Although the horse has been taught to walk, trot, and canter, and to carry himself properly in the riding school, yet nothing so far has been said about extending his pace to a gallop; but when he has been ridden out of doors for a time, and has got over any shyness, or whatever other faults he may have had, he should occasionally, where the going is good and soft, be put into a gallop. In doing this, the rider is not to give the horse his head, and kick him along as fast as he can get him to go, with the reins full length, and his legs swinging like pendulums, as one often sees. On the contrary, the pace should be gradually increased from a canter, and no matter how fast it is, the horse should be ridden up to the hand with the legs. It will be found that if the horse is ridden up to his work in this way when extended, he will make more progress, that is to say, he will get over more ground in less time than he would if allowed to have the full length of the rein and to go his own way; besides that, when properly ridden, he is safer and more comfortable to his master. But here again, the rider must not get the idea into his head that he is riding his horse up to his bridle if he is only hanging on by the animal's head, which is often the case. When pulling up after a gallop, the pace should be taken off by degrees, the rider sitting well down in the saddle, the hands kept down (except in the case of a horse that is inclined to get his head down and bore on the hand, when, of course, they should be raised), and the legs closed. A horse that has been properly broken can, of course, always be pulled up shorter than a badly broken one, but, at the same time, it is not advisable when there is no necessity for it to pull him up too short, for let the horse be ever so well balanced, collected, and obedient to the hand, pulling him up

short must to a certain extent strain him, and it is hardly the thing one likes to find out, that, after having taken considerable pains to get your horse exactly to your liking, he has gone in his hocks. Of course, there are occasions when one is bound to pull up as quickly as possible, perhaps to avoid riding over or into some one who has been unfortunate, but these are not of very frequent occurrence, and it is time enough to practise it when obliged to do so.

Many young horses have a decided objection to other horses galloping up close behind, or passing them. This happens sometimes from nervousness, and sometimes is nothing more than the natural desire, from high spirits, and a wish to join in the fun, to go as fast as his neighbours. With those that are nervous, the best cure is to get some one to pass you frequently on a quiet horse at a moderate pace, at some little distance off, and gradually decrease the space between the two until your companion passes quite close. The rider of the nervous one should make much of him, which will generally in time induce him to take no notice of passers by. In the other case the only thing the rider has to do is to keep his horse's attention on himself, by moving the snaffle or bridoon lightly across the horse's mouth while the other horse is passing, and keep his head up so as to prevent him kicking at the horse coming up behind him; but this sort of thing is more often caused by the horse being over-fresh than by anything else, and a little more work will be found of assistance in keeping him steady.

A worse fault which the young horse sometimes develops is turning sharply round, in most cases making a half rear first, on seeing another animal coming towards him at a fast pace. When this sort of thing occurs, the horse's eyes should be examined, for it may arise from short-sightedness, in which case he will be disposed to do the same thing on coming unexpectedly on to anything else, such as a piece of white paper, a pool of water, or anything of that sort. If his eyes are found to be all right, and he only turns round thus when

meeting another horse going at a smartish pace, the same remedy should be tried as that recommended in the case of the horse that is nervous when one gallops up behind him, only of course the companion must meet him instead of passing him from behind. As horses that do this sort of thing usually whip round outwards, that is to say, turn their heads away from the one that is meeting them, the rider should be prepared with his inward rein and outward leg in time to prevent his mount from getting round. Of course these faults are not cured in a day, but they are very awkward and dangerous habits for a horse to get confirmed in, and if taken in time with young horses, the cure is generally complete. Unfailing patience is necessary on the part of the rider, and the other horse must not be rushed at the pupil too soon or too suddenly.

PUNISHMENT

In all the lessons to the young horse punishment has scarcely been mentioned, not because it is never necessary, but because the horse should if possible be taught to do all that is required of him without it. But the best disposed man will sometimes be obliged to have recourse to it, and he is a very good even-tempered horse that has taken kindly to all his lessons, and must have been very well ridden by a good patient rider, if the necessity for punishment has never arisen. If it has not, so much the more credit is due to the rider.

The class of horse that usually escapes being punished, if he is in good hands, is the generous, light-hearted, free-going animal, pretty well bred, with just a dash of mischief in him. He always comes out of his stable fresh, and remains pretty much the same all day ; but in the hands of people who are not very good riders, this light-heartedness is often disagreeable, and the horse is punished for it. It must not be understood that, if a horse gets his back up from being short of work, the rider is to give him his head, and let him put it between his knees, and buck or kick till he throws him off ; but it is certain

that horses are often abused for being light-hearted, when just a little firm close riding for a few minutes after starting is all that is needed. This does not apply to a horse that has acquired the habit of bucking every time he is mounted, concerning which something will be said farther on, but only to the case of a horse being a little fresh, and above himself from being short of work.

There are differences of opinion as to what sort of punishment, when punishment is really necessary, is the more effective, whip or spurs. As to this no rule can be laid down. It depends upon the disposition of the horse, and what he has to be punished for. In the first place, the rider should be perfectly certain that the horse thoroughly understands what is required of him, and that the obstinacy or idleness does not arise from any defect in the bitting, from the fitting of any of his appointments, or from any physical disability to do what is asked of him. If the rider thinks the horse has been brought on too quickly from one lesson to another, and that he refuses in consequence, take him back if necessary to the beginning, but as soon as he has convinced himself that the horse perfectly understands what is required of him, and that it is only from obstinacy or cunningness to get out of his work that he refuses, then the sooner he is punished the better. The common fault here is that, when the punishment is inflicted, the rider has worked himself up into a temper, and is not in a fit state to inflict it with discretion, in which case it is better left alone till it can be done coolly. In most cases, where punishment is necessary, it is to be traced to the horse being behind the hand, that is to say, not sufficiently obedient to the aids of the rider's hands and legs. Instead of the rider having a light feeling of his horse's mouth, which he always should have in all his paces, the horse hangs as it were between his legs, and keeps the bit loose in his mouth, without ever taking hold of it. If an attempt be made to rein him back, and get hold of him in that way, he lowers his head and runs back, or throws his head up and rears; if he be put into a trot and the rider tries to urge him

up to his bridle with the leg, he immediately drops into a lobbing sort of canter, and this is perhaps the best time to get hold of him and put him into his bridle. The rider must be very firm about it, keeping his hands low and his fingers firmly on the rein ; then he should close his legs strongly, and if that has not the desired effect of forcing the horse up to his bridle draw the lower part of the legs a little farther back, and, without first taking the leg away, apply both spurs sharply behind the girth, still keeping the hand firm. If the hands yield at the moment the spur is applied, the horse will simply go forward at an increased pace, to get away from the punishment, still without going up to his bridle, whereas if the hands are held firm without yielding, he must go on to his bit.

It is not always that the desired result is obtained at once, but the rider should be able to judge when there is an improvement in the going of his horse, and then try to keep him up to it without further punishment. Drawing the heels up and tickling the horse with the spur, which is a thing often done unintentionally, especially in the bending lesson, is about the surest way of teaching a young horse to kick ; but there are often instances of horses 'cow kicking' at the leg, when they have not been touched with the spur at all, and, if they do so, the spur on the side that he kicked should be applied sharply without hesitation. If it be taken in time the horse seldom perseveres in the habit, but if allowed to go on unchecked, he gets confirmed in it, and it takes some time and more punishment to eradicate it.

Rearing is the most dangerous form of vice a horse can show, and this is a sure sign that the animal is behind the hand. It may be said that a horse never rears unless as a consequence of some sudden start or fright, except when he is behind the hand ; and the worst of it is, that this is about the most difficult form of vice to tackle, for fear of the horse coming back on the top of one. There are various ways of breaking the horse of it, or trying to do so. Some people advocate smashing bottles or bladders of water over their heads while they are up, others are in favour of pulling them over. As for the first remedy, you

may as well break a bladder of water over the stable-door for the lasting effect it is likely to have; it may astonish him for the moment, but the horse will in all probability rear again the next time he feels disposed to do so, and you may get a considerable supply of bladders, and pass some time in expending them, before you do much good. As to pulling the horse over, it is a thing that requires considerable nerve and agility on the part of the rider, and it is not every one that cares to try the experiment. When done the result is not sufficiently satisfactory to justify the risk, both to horse and rider. The way to do this, if the rider care to try it, is to take the right foot out of the stirrup when the horse is rising, and hold the reins in the right hand, the left hand being on the horse's crest. When he is nearly upright, or as far up as he usually rises, take the left foot out also, and give a sharp pull with the bit reins, at the same time push with the left hand, which will help the rider to spring clear, but as before said it is very risky, and does not get to the root of the mischief; besides, if a horse does come straight back he is very likely to strike the top of his head very hard, the consequence of which may be to kill him on the spot. Such cases have occurred when the rider has unintentionally pulled the animal over.

Rearing bits are not to be depended upon: horses can rear almost as easily with as without them. The man who has to ride a rearer cannot do better than put a good snaffle in the animal's mouth, and a pair of running reins, which should be fastened not to the girth or surcingle at the side in the usual way, but brought down between the horse's fore legs and buckled underneath. If anything will tie him down that will, but it does not always do so. If he still gets up the best thing to do, and the safest, is to let the reins out a little, so as to be quite sure not to hold on by his head and pull him down, leaning forward so as to preserve the balance of the body, and keeping the legs close. As soon as you find that he is coming down, be on the alert, and before his fore feet touch the ground drive both spurs in, so as to send him to his front, and when

you have fairly set him going then get hold of his head and keep him up to it; but drive him forward before you try to get hold of his mouth too much, or you will very likely have him up again. Spurs here are better than the whip if the horse goes freely away from them, if he does not, then a whip or an ash plant; but as the rider has to ride with one hand, to use a whip puts him rather at a disadvantage. If the rider has a man on foot handy with a longeing whip, assistance may be given, but it is desirable that the rider should do what is necessary. He need never be afraid of his horse coming back with him while the animal strikes out with his fore feet. As long as he does that he has got his balance all right, but look out if his fore feet drop down under him. The rider should then be prepared to shift for himself, for the horse will very likely come over or back, or down on his side. Some people appear to entertain the idea that horses which are given to rearing will in some cases purposely throw themselves over so as to get rid of their rider, but this is ridiculous. Although the horse finds that by rearing he for the time gets away from the feeling of the bridle, yet he is quite as much afraid of falling over backwards as the man in the saddle is of his doing so. So long as he can keep his balance and is not pulled over by the rider holding on by the reins, there is not much danger of the horse going over purposely.

Of course horses which have weak loins and hocks are more likely to fall than those which are strong behind the saddle, but if they come down from that cause they generally come down on one side, rarely straight over. The best way to deal with a rearer is, then, to let him alone when he is up, but punish him by driving him to his front as he is coming down, and then try to keep him up to the hand afterwards.

Bucking, a very nasty habit for horses to get into, is generally caused by bad saddling in the earlier lessons. If the saddle be put on hurriedly and the girth suddenly tightened, instead of being gradually drawn up hole by hole, as directed in the first lessons, the young horse is very likely to blow himself out

round his back, and, by a succession of jumps, burst the girths and so get rid of the saddle. Having once done this, there is not much doubt that he will try the experiment again. Of course, if this happens during the early lessons, the only thing is to take more time, and be more careful in the succeeding lessons, but sufficient care is not always taken, and the horses get confirmed in the habit. It also often happens that horses take to bucking even when they have been used to the saddle for a long time. The horse is perhaps wanted in a hurry. He has the saddle thrown on to his back and girthed up, the bridle put on, he is taken out immediately and mounted. Perhaps his stomach is distended by having been recently fed, and he is very uncomfortable, when instead of starting off at his best pace, from the application of his rider's heels or spurs, he takes the liberty, for the first time perhaps in his life, of disagreeing with his rider, jerks his head away, puts it between his fore legs, rounds his back, so that there is very little left to sit upon, and in less time than it takes to say all this, gets rid of his rider. About two or three bucks do it, as a rule, in the first instance, for the master, if he be the victim, is almost sure to be unprepared, and the whole thing is over very quickly, at least for that time. Very likely, if the horse be mounted again as soon as the man has pulled himself together, he may go off as quietly as if nothing had happened; but for all that the rider may be pretty certain that the animal will remember it, and will do the same thing again and again, so long as he gets the best of it, even if he have been properly saddled, and mounted carefully without hurry.

There is one other way in which bucking is sometimes caused, which it may be as well to mention here before going on to the remedy, and that is from sufficient care not being taken in examining the saddle before putting it on. When a saddle has the pannels new lined, a nail may be left in the lining. The rider may look round the horse before mounting, and not see anything wrong, although he will notice the animal is rather fidgety. However, he will not have been long

on his horse's back before he finds out that something is wrong, and on taking off the saddle and examining the pannels, may find the cause, as for instance that a nail had been driven farther into the horse's back than it had ever been into anything else. Grooms, and all who have to do with horses, cannot be too careful in examining everything the horse has to wear. In most cases the rider of a horse that is being thus tormented will find out that something is amiss, in the same way as the rider of the horse hurriedly saddled, girthed up too tight, and mounted at once as before described, that is to say, by getting a spill, or at any rate having to do all he knows to avoid one.

The best way to deal with a horse when he has taken to this sort of amusement, if good saddling and allowing him to stand with the saddle on for some time before mounting have not had the desired effect, is to put a cavesson on him and get a good man to hold him while being mounted, for it is nearly always on first being brought out and mounted that horses will buck. After he is mounted let him stand for a short time, then lead him forward quietly, in fact treat him exactly on the same lines as when backing the young horse for the first time. The man holding the cavesson must be on the alert so as to catch him in time if he attempts to get his head down, and prevent him by a sharp pull upwards with the cavesson rein. Then lead him about quietly until he has quite got his back down, when the cavesson may be taken off. This does not always put the matter right, especially if the horse has got the best of it a few times. He may appear to have forgotten all about it, and have gone for a few days as well as could be wished, and then without any reason, as far as one can see, will be as bad as ever. When once a horse has got his head away, if he really means bucking and can do it well, if he only keeps on long enough he can put down the best man that can be found. It is a question of whose wind lasts the longest, let the man be as good as he may be. The best sort of punishment to reclaim a brute of this kind is to get an assistant on foot with a good longeing whip. The man who holds the cavesson should help

the rider when the horse tries to get his head away, while the other man uses the whip to drive him forward. The rider wants both hands; he might be able to use his spurs, but they would not have the same effect as the noise and sting of a whip when well used. This mode of punishment may sound very severe, but when a horse is resolute he requires strong measures to be taken with him. One or two decided lessons of this sort will have a better and more lasting effect on the horse than half doing it again and again. When the animal finds himself beaten a few times at the game, he will probably give it up; but he will require still to be carefully saddled and quietly mounted, for it is a difficult thing to be quite sure when he has been effectually cured of it.

Punishment should never on any account be resorted to in the early lessons of the young horse. He should be encouraged in every possible way, and taught to do what is required of him; but it often happens that towards the end of his breaking he gets cunning or lazy, or perhaps a little of both, and some punishment is absolutely necessary, especially in the case of underbred horses, that are frequently inclined to be sluggish. With older horses, when severe punishment is necessary the fault generally lies in the first place with the rider, or with those who have had charge of the horse. The necessity for it ought never to have arisen, but when it has, although it may seem hard lines on the horse, it is better for him that he should be taken in hand resolutely at once, as soon as the rider has convinced himself that it has to be done, than that salutary discipline should be postponed till the horse gets more confirmed in his bad ways, and has consequently to be punished even more severely. Punishment, however, should always be inflicted with discretion, and when it has had the desired effect the horse should again be encouraged.

CHAPTER V

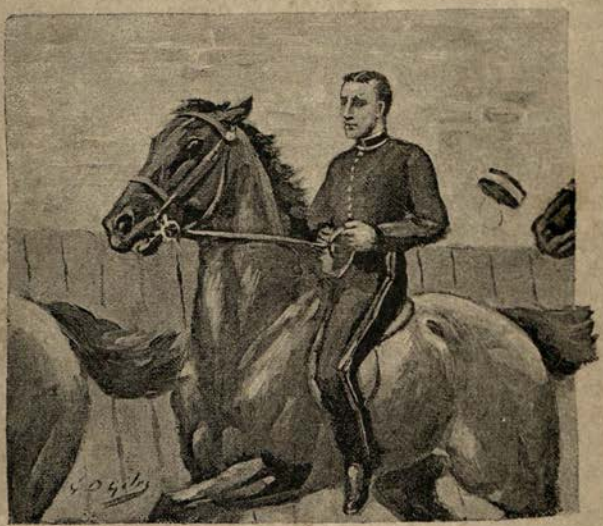
HANDS AND SEAT

By Robert Weir

There are few people who, after having had a mount a dozen times in their lives, would not consider themselves very much insulted on being told they had no hands, not to say anything of the number of men one meets who have been mixed up with horses all their lives, and are of course quite certain that their hands are perfection. But before we say too much about hands, there is something else to be obtained, viz., seat. No man, or for that matter woman either, ever had or can have good hands unless he or she has first acquired a firm independent seat. There are, no doubt, scores of people who thoroughly understand riding as far as they can be taught, and can ride a quiet easy horse as well as could be wished, even if the horse has not been well broken; but failure would be the result if you asked the same person to ride another with a better mouth, and altogether better trained, but which required a little more sitting on.

There are also, as is well known, many people who, although they began to ride as children, and have been familiar with the saddle all their lives, never get a good seat, not from want of practice or from not taking an interest in riding, but simply from nervousness. Others, again, who have taken to riding late in life, after they have begun to get set and heavy, do not as a rule obtain a good seat, not always from want of nerve (though

that is often their great fault also), but from being too stiff and not accompanying the movement of the horse. No such riders can ever be said to have good hands. The first, who could ride the easy horse not well trained, who had been taught to ride as far as teaching could benefit him, and who understood something of horsemanship (although he had not been able to get a good seat), would not be able to sit on the well-trained horse without sometimes having to assist himself by the reins, which



Depend more or less on the horse's mouth.

would most likely make the animal fretful and shy of his bit; and although the rider himself would know quite well that it was his own fault, yet from want of strength in the seat he could not help doing what he knew to be wrong. The second, or nervous man, would very likely be all right on his own horse to which he had got accustomed, but if he got on another one that was at all shy, or troubled with the same complaint as himself, nervousness, supposing that a bird flew out of the hedge,

or something else quite as trivial occurred to startle his horse, in nineteen cases out of twenty the first thing he would do would be to scramble his reins up short, and hold on to his horse's mouth. The other I have mentioned, who is stiff, and does not accompany his horse in all his movements, is also certain to depend more or less on his horse's mouth to keep him in the saddle. Now each of these may get on very well on a certain class of horse, that, in fact, to which they are used, but neither of them is possessed of the firm independent seat which is indispensable for good hands.

On the other hand, there is many a man who can stick on like a leech, who has nerves like steel, but who would nevertheless be more likely to spoil a well broken horse than either of those with bad or indifferent seats. Such a rider would turn any well-disposed high-couraged young horse that might be given into his hands into a sulky brute, or a nervous wretch not fit to ride. The class of horsemen here referred to—and there are many such—fancy that they are as strong as the horse because they find themselves able to sit on his back better than most people. Everything they require from the horse is demanded by brute force, and the poor beast is often driven to attempt things to which his strength is quite unequal. Such men have not the patience or common sense to know that the horse requires to be shown what to do, and must have time in which to learn to do it; they think it a grand thing to bully the horse, and of course confuse instead of teaching him.

Take another instance of a man with a seat and nerve as good as the bully last mentioned, but of a different disposition. He very likely never ill-used a horse in his life, and would, perhaps, be the first to condemn ill-usage, but on the other hand, so long as he sits on the horse's back and gets him to go *pretty nearly* where he wants him to, he never minds in what sort of form the work is done.

If he took the trouble, this man might make himself hands, but the fact remains that he has ridden for years with his reins

any length, long or short, never using his legs except to hold on with, or to give his horse a kick to make him go faster, and not knowing any other use for them. This sort of rider would not of course be so likely to ruin a young horse as the one last mentioned, but he would never break one, that is, make him a pleasant handy horse for any one else to ride, nor, if he got one that had been well broken, would he keep him up to his work afterwards.

The first thing requisite, then, is a firm seat, but it is not enough that the strength of seat is sufficient to enable the rider to sit on his horse's back. It must be in the proper place, that is in the middle of the saddle. If a man sits too far back, it will have the effect of pushing the legs too far forward, and although he may from long practice be able to sit on his horse in this fashion, yet he would never be able to use his legs properly, which, in the case of horses that are sluggish, encourages them to lean on the hand for the want of leg to keep them up to the bridle, or in the opposite case allowing them to shirk their work and get behind the hand.

It will be apparent to any one, whether he ride or not, that a man who leans his body too far forward must ride to a certain extent on his fork, and is almost entirely at the mercy of the horse. The man who has good hands and seat—and they go very much together—is he who sits well down in the middle of his saddle in an easy natural position, the upper part of his body over his hips, or, if inclined either way, a little back ; his thigh well down the flap of the saddle, and the lower part of his leg about covering the girth ; the body supple, not resisting the motion of the horse. The elbows should always be under the shoulders, without stiffness, and the hands should give and take, so as not at any time to have a dull hard feeling on the horse's mouth. The leg should work in unison with the hand, it will be found that the man who rides in the position described will, in applying the leg, draw it a little back, so that the horse feels the pressure just behind the girth. The man who has good hands and seat will not, if his horse throw his

head up and poke his nose out, immediately clutch the reins shorter and ram his legs or spurs into the animal's sides, but will drop his hand for a moment, and then, when the horse drops his nose, as he is almost certain to do, will quietly shorten his reins a little, and close the legs so as to endeavour to keep him there.

A man who has not good hands or seat almost invariably does exactly the opposite. He scrambles his reins up short, and holds on to his horse's head, which has the effect of making the horse poke his nose out still more. The rider very likely loses what little control he had, and the horse goes on increasing his pace until he thinks he has had enough of it, and stops of his own accord, when the rider forthwith gives out that he has been run away with, whereas in reality he made the horse run away, or at all events encouraged him to do so, that is, if this sort of thing can be called running away. Again, the man without hands and seat would, as a rule, if his horse were inclined to get his head down, shorten his reins and pull hard at his head to try to get it up again; but here the man who has good hands and seat would first close his legs strongly, so as to force the horse's head away, and quietly raise his hand, working the snaffle or bridoon lightly across the mouth.

Many more comparisons might be drawn between good and bad hands and seats, but perhaps these few are sufficient; and, to sum up, the best seat and hands are those in possession of the man with a good temper, between whom and his horse there is, so to speak, constant communication. He has always a feeling on his horse's mouth, but never holds on by it; he can tell by the feel of his horse if he contemplates doing anything out of the common, and can nearly always forestall him, without the horse seeming to be aware of it. He is always carried well and pleasantly. If his horse should by any means be startled and take a jump to one side or the other, he goes with him and does not pull his mouth about; in fact, it would appear that horse and man were one machine, possessed of one mind between them. If many people who keep horses—it

would be too much to say who *ride* them—once got to understand how agreeable is the feeling of a horse going pleasantly and evenly into his bridle without pulling, at the same time feeling, as it were, every motion of the horse, they would never be satisfied with one that was not broken, and would try to keep him up to the mark when once they really understood what riding meant.

CHAPTER VI

RACE RIDING

By Alfred E. T. Watson

AN instructive anecdote is told of the late George Fordham, a jockey whose superior has never been seen on the turf. It happened one day that a match was to be ridden at Newmarket with Archer and Tom Cannon in the saddle, and Fordham was looking on. The match was a very good one, that is to say, both horses were fit and well, and on form there was nothing to choose between them; they started and raced together side by side, and Fordham watched as the pair approached the place where he stood, not far from the winning post. 'Sit still, Tom, my boy; sit still;' a friend who stood by him heard him mutter to himself in a low tone that was just audible. 'Sit still,—that's it! that's it! No! not just yet—

sit still—not yet! No—steady—*Now! Now! Now!*' The 'Now!' came out with startling suddenness, Fordham bringing his right fist into his left palm as he cried out; and at the precise moment that he uttered the syllable, Cannon, who had been waiting with the utmost patience, made his effort, and by a vigorous piece of riding got his horse past the post a short head in front of the other.

The striking part of this little story consists in the fact that to Fordham, standing by the rails and watching with the keen and critical eye of an unrivalled expert, and to Cannon on the horse's back, it was equally evident when, to the tick of a second, the effort had to be made; and no one who has any acquaintance with the niceties of the art can need to be told that if that second had been missed or anticipated the race would have been lost instead of won. The anecdote shows that in the mystery of race riding there is a vast deal of subtlety and skill, though indeed it is hardly necessary to insist upon this point when one reflects what a large number of boys are employed in English training stables and how exceedingly few of them gain any reputation as jockeys. All of them acquire more or less of the elementary knowledge that is requisite for race riding; they are accustomed to ride every day at exercise, if they show any aptitude the chances are that they will be put up in trials to begin with, and finally in public. They know the huge prizes open to success in their business, appreciative eyes are constantly watching them, they have many incentives and many opportunities to distinguish themselves; and yet competent jockeys are extremely hard to find, and the members of the scanty front rank can year after year be almost counted on the fingers of one hand. That no written instructions can make a jockey must be freely conceded; but it may be interesting and not without practical value to examine into some of the attributes and essentials of jockeyship.

The perfect jockey is partly born and partly made. If he have not aptitude and certain natural gifts he will never ride successfully; but having these, practice, experience, and careful

observation are indispensable. As regards the natural gifts, courage and dash cannot be gained by precept and must be inherent; so to a great extent must patience; and, to come to more exclusive details of the art, knowledge of pace is a thing which many riders can never acquire. It is a common occurrence on a training ground to hear a boy who has been riding for a long time told to come on at a steady canter, and to see him galloping at almost racing pace, or to hear an order for a half-speed gallop, and presently to note the trainer angrily waving his arm to induce the boy, who is approaching at a very quiet hack canter, to quicken his pace. At exercise on Newmarket Heath or the home downs these failures accurately to carry out orders are not perhaps of much importance; but matters are very different when the riders wear silk and the flag has fallen. It is, however, an almost everyday occurrence to hear an owner or trainer exclaiming in discomfited tone, 'Why does not the boy come along as he was told to do?' on the one hand, or on the other, 'Why doesn't he take a pull? He was told to come along steadily—he can never last home at that pace!' The chances are that the jockey is doing his very best to carry out the instructions he has received, but he does not really know at what pace he is going.

To what extent the result of a race depends on riding in strict obedience to orders is scarcely to be made comprehensible to the casual observer. A case in point occurred a short time before the writing of this chapter. An indifferent jockey who has, however, been lucky enough to win important races, either because he had a good stone in hand, or because he was meeting only riders as bad as himself, was put up to ride.

'Now mind you wait with this horse. Don't be in a hurry,' the owner said, knowing the jockey's lack of patience and youthful eagerness to get 'home.'

The jockey replied that he would do exactly as he was told, and implied that to 'sit and suffer'—to resist the impulse to begin a finish too soon—was really his strong point.

'That's right,' was the reply. 'The horse has a fine turn of

speed, but does not stay; so lay back till you get into the straight, and then if you come with one run you are sure to beat the others for speed.'

The rider said that he understood perfectly, and cantered off to the post. The flag fell; he was off first and led the field for a considerable distance, was always up with the leader, came to the front again as soon as the straight was reached, and was gradually worn down in the run home and beaten a neck. It was unmistakably shown that had this horse been properly ridden he would have won with considerable ease, and the accuracy of the opinion was confirmed a week later, when the two animals that had been first and second met again under similar conditions of weight and distance, the second in the previous race being this time ridden judiciously, beating his former conqueror with much ease by a couple of lengths. The jockey in question lacked coolness, and was not a judge of pace; had he been a judge he might very conceivably have led the field and yet have waited, for there is such a thing as 'waiting in front,' though exceedingly few riders have the art to accomplish it.

Speaking very broadly, it may be said that the two chief essentials for a jockey are head and hands; the former is a very comprehensive term implying many qualities inherent and acquired, the latter is almost entirely a natural gift. Hands control and encourage the horse, the control being almost entirely independent of strength. The race horse, high couraged and in the plenitude of health and spirits, is, as a rule, peculiarly inclined to show dislike to restraint; but race horses never ran away with George Fordham (a mare called Lucy Sutton did indeed take him for an unintended gallop one day, but the occurrence was so exceptional that the word 'never' is scarcely inaccurate), who was far from a strong man, and rode the light weight of 7 st. 10 lb. to the end of his life; they do not run away with Tom Cannon, nor indeed with other riders who possess 'hands,' and it is at the same time particularly to be observed that such jockeys are never to be seen leaning back in their

saddles, pulling at their horses' heads and sawing at their mouths. Such a sight is common enough when inferior riders are up ; the real master of his art by some mysterious means governs his horse without apparent exertion, though if a rider without hands were substituted, instead of going at a steady canter the horse would soon be ungovernable ; with 'hands' on the reins he stretches out his head as if playing with the bit,

Pulling at their horses' heads and sawing at their mouths.

and bends to a touch ; put an unskilled or ungifted rider into the saddle and the play seems to become earnest, the horse will tear at the reins, fight with his jockey and very often get the better of him. This undoubted fact that a man who is small and weak succeeds without the least apparent effort in holding a horse which could not be held by a rider who is heavy and strong, is a sufficient proof of the existence of

hands and no less of their value; for by struggling to have his own way the horse takes a great deal out of himself, and the result is felt when the final struggle comes at the end of a race and the jockeys sit down to finish. Occasionally the perfect horseman will confess that his mount 'lays hold a bit,' though to the observer this is scarcely apparent, and it almost seems indeed as if the animal might be controlled with a silken thread.

'Head' is a more complex subject, as will be understood when it is remembered that there are varying circumstances in almost every race that is run, and head means not only capacity to note these circumstances, but without a moment's hesitation to see what is the right thing to do. The jockey who deliberates is lost; there is no time for deliberation in the course of the struggle. He must know just what his own horse is doing and what all the other horses are doing likewise. The faculty is of course rare, but some few riders possess it in a marvellous degree. The author well remembers a race on the five furlong course at Sandown a few years ago, in which Archer showed how extraordinary was his gift in this direction. He was riding a very speedy but uncertain animal called Southampton, in a field of eleven starters. Scarcely more than half the distance had been covered when Archer leaned forward and patted his horse's neck. 'He had won his race,' the famous jockey remarked afterwards when some casual comment was made on his action, and it struck the writer as a wonderful thing that while yet so far from the post, in the dash and turmoil of the struggle, one look round should have revealed the whole state of the case and enabled Archer to see that he was safe. At the moment the onlooker would probably have imagined that two or three other horses were 'in it,' and would certainly have failed to perceive any assurance that nothing could happen in the remaining quarter of a mile that had still to be covered; but a glance revealed the condition of affairs to the jockey's keen and experienced eye.

We will not dwell here on certain technical necessities which

are important—are indeed of the very utmost importance—in their way. The question of bitting the horse is one that must be considered rather by the trainer than the rider. On this head it will be sufficient to remark, that if a tolerably severe bit does not seem enough to hold a horse with, the chances are that an improvement will be effected by one rather less severe in preference to one rather more. Some time since a horse with a reputation for running away arrived at a popular training stable with a large assortment of bits all ingeniously cruel; and the first morning at exercise on the downs the horse proved how thoroughly his character as a runaway was merited. The plan suggested—making his bits easier—was put into practice, and in the course of a few days the animal, with a plain snaffle in his mouth, took his place in the string and never showed a symptom of insubordination. There are a good many cases during every season in which races are lost because saddles slip, and though a race-horse is seldom turned out with a breastplate like a hunter, and some horses are so shaped as to render the slipping always probable, the risk can be to a great extent obviated by care, the necessity of exercising which need not be emphasised.

Another frequent source of disqualification is the carrying of wrong weight, a peculiarly irritating mischance. When the race has been so far won that the struggle is over, one by one opponents have been worn down, the final effort has been made, the last rival beaten, the post passed and the number hoisted, it is annoying in the extreme to be disqualified for a technical reason at the scale, a reason which, so far as human perception can go, could in very many cases have had no possible influence on the result; though, on the other hand, it must be admitted that no one can precisely tell what the effect of an omitted few pounds of weight might have been. This again is chiefly the trainer's business, but the jockey will do well if he think the matter out for himself, look at the conditions of the race, calculate penalties and allowances, and quietly see if his own estimate agrees with that of the trainer, who will tell

him what he has to carry. Another thing that owner or trainer will impress upon the jockey is the way in which the horse is to be ridden, and to these instructions the utmost attention must be paid. A certain amount of discretion is of course to be employed, because no one can foresee the events of a race. Thus if the trainer says, 'Lay well up with the leader,' supposing that some animal will make a decent pace, it may chance that a boy's horse will get out of hand, and in such a case our jockey would not race with the runaway. It might on the other hand be advisable in a very slow run race to go to the front earlier than the period indicated by the orders. 'Why don't they go along?' is not seldom the distressful cry of the owner of some good stayer in a long distance race when the field are muddling about, and he knows that if they simply canter something will beat him for speed in the last two or three furlongs. To make running is known to be as a rule to a horse's detriment. He goes with more ease and freedom if he has 'something to bring him along,' but the question often arises whether the rider should not go to the front in order to make use of a horse's fine staying powers, and it is therefore essential that the jockey should be a judge of pace and should act upon his judgment.

In recent races for the Goodwood Stakes it has twice happened—or so at least there is excellent reason to suppose—that a false run race has led to a false result. In one case a mare that was a fine stayer was kept back behind an animal that was making the running at a slow canter. When half the distance was covered the mare's owner put down his race-glasses, and in a tone of resignation observed that his chance, which had been of the best, was hopelessly destroyed. In the other case the mare deputed to make the running did so in irreproachable style, but a favourite, that ought to have won without difficulty, laid far out of his ground till it was too late to get up, made a tardy effort, and was beaten a neck, the owner of the winner, never for a moment believing he had a hundred to one chance, having backed the second to win a good stake.

To tell this story quite accurately it should be added that the favourite was an animal with a curious temper, and having failed to get through at the corner would not try afterwards. A jockey who is a consummate judge may see that the leaders are going too fast, and will accordingly come back to him, but it needs rare perception to tell to a certainty that this must inevitably be so. There have been cases also in which the rush to get up at last has been so far successful that the horse has won, but with disastrous consequences, for the desperate effort has ruined the winner.

In a short distance—a five furlong—race of course much depends on how the horses get off, and a secret of success here is in being really ready to start. On this head some remarks of F. Archer may judiciously be quoted, for his practice was in accordance with his theory, and to have headed the list of winning jockeys for twelve seasons with an average of one win in less than three races gives him the best of all possible rights to be heard with attention. In discussing the question of 'getting off' Archer said, in reference to a current statement that he frequently contrived to steal a couple of lengths, 'I do not mean to say that I don't do my best to get away when the flag falls, but it isn't getting away first so much as how you get away—how you set your horse going, I mean—that makes all the difference. You can't set a horse going directly if you have tight hold of his head. You often see a jockey at the post in a five furlong race pulling at his horse, as nervous as he can be, watching the starter. The flag falls and he lets go of the reins, but his horse isn't ready to slip off at his best pace. I've always got my horse ready to go, and then when we do start I'm at full speed at once.' A brother jockey, the late H. Constable, Archer specially commended for getting well away, so that he was 'always galloping at once.' In a foot race the competitors do not stand erect with flaccid muscles till the signal is given; they make ready to go without losing the fraction of a second, and wide as are the differences between biped and quadruped the master horseman will have his horse ready to dash away in

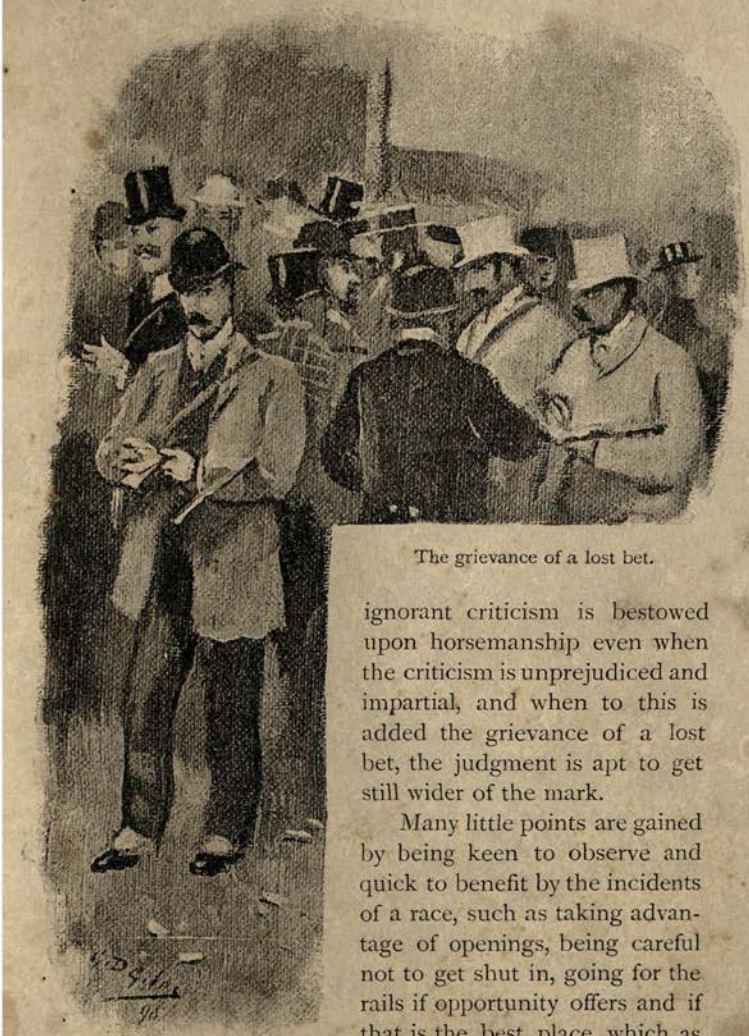
somewhat similar fashion. There is little or no time to retrieve errors and rectify the results of carelessness in a race on a five furlong course, and seeing how few are the inches which make all the difference between defeat and victory, it is obvious that the slightest advantage gained or lost may decide the event.

As the horse must be ready to start, so he must be pulled together, 'steadied,' or 'balanced,' for a particular effort. Suddenly to apply whip or spur to a horse that is beginning to tire is certain to have the effect of making him sprawl. It was held to be one of the peculiar merits of the late George Fordham that he never asked a horse for an effort until he had so prepared the animal that he was ready to make it, and the result of Fordham's final 'steady' has pulled many races out of the fire and snatched them from riders who had fondly supposed that the victory was as good as won.

How to make the rush is one thing, when to make it is another. An illustration of what is meant may be quoted. Not long since one of the few real masters of the whole art and mystery of jockeyship waited till he thought the moment had arrived, and after just steadying his horse flashed past the judge's box so nearly level with another horse that it was impossible to see which had won; but he did not quite 'get up' and was beaten a neck. It is a very common, indeed, almost a general thing, to abuse the rider of the second—especially is this done by those who have lost their money—and there was the usual grumbling over the result.

'If your jockey had only come a moment sooner!' a backer who had lost his bet said mournfully to the owner of the second, an exceptionally good judge of horses and riders. 'You were only beaten a bare neck!'

'If my jockey had come a moment sooner, instead of being beaten a neck I should have been beaten half a length,' was the reply; and the grumbler found that this was the opinion of others as well as of the beaten jockey, a rider whose verdict in such a case might be most implicitly depended upon. Much



The grievance of a lost bet.

ignorant criticism is bestowed upon horsemanship even when the criticism is unprejudiced and impartial, and when to this is added the grievance of a lost bet, the judgment is apt to get still wider of the mark.

Many little points are gained by being keen to observe and quick to benefit by the incidents of a race, such as taking advantage of openings, being careful not to get shut in, going for the rails if opportunity offers and if that is the best place, which as a rule it probably is, seeing that

on the rails is likely to be the shortest way round ; and if a jockey does not thoroughly know the course he is going to ride on, or if, knowing it, the weather or anything else has affected the going, he should carefully walk it before the race. At Goodwood in 1888, for instance, the extraordinary amount of heavy rain which fell had converted portions of the course into quagmire, some places were worse than others, and the horse that galloped on comparatively sound going derived great benefit from his rider's judicious selection of the ground. At Goodwood the turf is usually hard, as indeed it is elsewhere at the latter end of July or the beginning of August, and probably few jockeys took the pains to examine ground so well known, but those who did certainly profited by their forethought. The tradition that Fordham always tried for the sheep track at the Cambridgeshire Hill is well founded. 'It was easier going on that track if I could get there comfortably, I used to think,' he once remarked to the present writer. By such apparent trifles the results of great events may be influenced.

But it is in the finish that the power and skill of a great horseman are chiefly manifested, and the incapacity of the indifferent jockey is most apparent, although perhaps too little consideration is bestowed upon the fact that it is by judicious riding in the earlier stages of the race that the jockey finds himself well placed when the moment arrives for him to sit down in the saddle and make his effort. His attitude in the first part of the race is almost too well known to need comment. The idea is to take all possible weight off the horse's back, and for this reason the jockey rises in his stirrups, bearing his weight partly upon them and partly upon his knees, which firmly grip the saddle, while his hands are well down on the horse's withers, and so he speeds along, taking care not to shift his position, for that would interfere with his horse's action, keeping perfectly still so far as his body is concerned, but without rigidity ; the hands and arms of course adapt themselves to the horse's stride.

Some few exceptionally lazy horses will run for a long way

under the whip ; but this is the exception, and as a rule the jockey does not find it necessary to sit down and finish till the post is tolerably near at hand. On this point George Fordham was properly emphatic. Speaking of the common want of patience by which so many races are thrown away—it is curious to think how different the volume of 'Races Past' would be if all the jockeys had been Fordhams, Cannons, and Archers—he said : 'The boys whip a horse a mile from home. Sometimes, as we've been going in a race, I've seen them begin and I've said to them, "How the deuce do you expect to get him home if you're whipping him now?"' Such lads would have an infinitely better chance if they had no whips at all, for at all periods of the race the horse chiefly wants the support he derives from his jockey's hands, and to let the animal's head loose, as boys almost invariably do when they begin to flog, is to make defeat practically certain.

The writer was amused at a little incident that happened one day in the Birdcage at Newmarket. An old trainer of wide knowledge and experience had a horse in a handicap with a very light weight. The little lad who was to ride emerged from the weighing-room in colours, with a big whip in his hand and a pair of well polished spurs on his small boots ; and the trainer regarded him critically.

'I don't think I should ride him with spurs,' he thoughtfully remarked. 'N—o, my boy, I think you'd better take them off, perhaps.'

The lad glanced down at his boots rather regretfully, but of course turned round, re-entered the room, and soon appeared with unarmed heels.

'Yes, that's better ; I'm sure that's much better,' the trainer observed encouragingly. "Now give me your whip, and you'll do capitally.'

The boy, with a very reluctant look at it, handed up his whip. He had perhaps pictured himself riding a desperate finish and just beating Archer a short head amid the admiring cheers of the crowd ; but there was nothing for it but obedi-

ence ; he was put up, rode his horse home manfully with his hands, and did in fact win a race in which with whip and spurs he would very likely have been beaten.

To finish, the jockey sits firmly down in the saddle, feet drawn back, and he 'goes with his horse' as much as he can. When he finds that, being in front, another animal is holding him as they near the post, or that, being behind, the leaders show no signs of coming back to him, so that it behoves him to make his effort in order to get on terms with them, the moment for the finish has come ; but it is most necessary that he should exercise the great gift of patience, and particularly that he should see to what extent his horse will respond when ridden with the hands before the whip, by the employment of which so many races are weekly thrown away, is called into requisition. It is no doubt natural that the boys should be in a hurry to reach the judge's box, but here the proverb 'More haste less speed' frequently applies. An anecdote which that sound and excellent horseman, John Osborne, tells of his early days is here appropriate. "One of the first lessons I had I got from Flatman,' Osborne says. 'I was a lad riding a horse called Black Doctor, and, like all the lads, I was in too great a hurry to get home—that's the general fault. I knew that I was on a good horse, and when we got to the distance I began to use my whip. Flatman was on a horse called Bee Hunter, just a neck behind me when I began to ride ; but though mine shot ahead for the moment, Flatman came on steadily behind, and I only just got

home, and glad I was to get there! After we had weighed Flatman clapped me on the back and said, "Don't you be in such a hurry, youngster. Never whip your horse when you are in front. I very nearly did you that time!"'

Patience is the golden rule. Whips and spurs must always be last resources, and they are very mischievous implements in inexpert hands and on indiscreet heels. A couple of sharp strokes in the last fifty yards, or a thrust of the spurs, may make a difference of half a length, and so change defeat into victory in a severely contested race; but the whip should never be got out till the horse has distinctly and unmistakably failed to respond when ridden with the hands, and as for spurs, it is the boast of Tom Cannon, an unsurpassed master of his craft, that in a hundred animals he has ridden in a hard finish not three are found after the race with spur marks on them. Archer in his later days frequently rode with blunt rowels, though it must be added that these are capable of inflicting great punishment.

It has been already insisted on that the final effort must never be made until the horse is prepared to make it, until, that is to say, the animal has been duly 'steadied,' and it may here be further observed that to 'steady' a horse is not, of course, to pull it out of its stride; the action indeed is a somewhat delicate one, for it may easily be overdone by coarse and clumsy hands, but its efficacy when properly accomplised is remarkable. The observant race-goer will often see, while one after another the jockeys' whips are raised, the really artistic rider is steadying his horse and patiently delaying his effort. He is, as the phrase goes, 'nursing' his horse till his instinct tells him that the moment has come when the rush must be made, by which time the whips are doing more harm than good, and the horse that has been steadied will reward his rider's patience.

The way in which races are lost and won has perhaps never been more happily illustrated than in a sketch from life of a once familiar incident described in a former volume of this Library,[1] and the description is so completely to the present

[1] *Racing*, p. 79

point and purpose, that it is impossible to forbear quoting it here. It must be understood that a race is being run and the critical moment is approaching. 'Fordham throws a keen glance to right and left, then . . . thinking that these two boys have got more left in them than he quite fancies, he sets his shoulders higher than ever, a convulsive movement agitates his elbows, while from exultant layers rises *crescendo* a yell of "The field, a hundred!" . . . For the hundredth time the old ruse has succeeded; the two stable lads, thinking they have the great horseman in difficulties, plunge simultaneously into the fantastic ecstasies of a flogging finish, which settles their horses in the next dozen strides; with the semblance of a shake Fordham shoots out, and canters home the easiest of winners by two lengths.' The boys, it will be seen, were in too great a hurry to get home; to employ another familiar phrase, 'they got up their whips and stopped their horses.' But supposing that they had preserved the patience and discretion which are so rarely found? Assuming that they had avoided the 'fantastic ecstasies,' kept hold of their horses' heads, 'sat and suffered' for a few seconds and then ridden home with their hands? Fordham might or might not have won, but there would certainly have been no cantering home the easiest of winners by two lengths.

'Be not too tame neither,' might be said to the jockey as to the actor, for the student in taking to heart what has been written in praise of patience might very possibly lose the race from lack of energy. A strong finish is a most valuable acquirement, and we not seldom see that there is such a thing as 'leaving it too late'; but lack of patience is by far the commonest fault.

Taking liberties of any sort is to be severely deprecated. At the Goodwood meeting of 1888 two most important races were thrown away, for example, in one instance by carelessness and in the other by something worse. In the latter case a jockey had practically won; his extraordinarily speedy animal was leading so far at the distance that several of the other riders stopped their horses, supposing that pursuit was hopeless; but

the jockey on the leader turned round to grin derisively at his followers ; his horse swerved, he could not get it straight, grew flurried, and was beaten by a mare that, had the race been decently ridden, would have been the best part of a dozen lengths behind. In the other instance the race was lost, as scores of races are lost every year, because the jockey thought that he was winning easily, and indeed that he had won, the consequence being that he stopped riding, and was caught and beaten. It is very pretty no doubt to see a great jockey win by a short head, so that it is impossible to tell what he has in hand, and to win by a great many unnecessary lengths is a useless exertion ; the very best riders are nevertheless occasionally beaten, on horses that ought to have won with the utmost ease, because they 'draw it too fine.' It is a dangerous experiment, for a stumble in the last few strides, a swerve, or some trifling mishap, may lead to defeat.

The desirability of tenderness and consideration in riding young horses is another point which must be specially emphasised. It is sad to think how many two-year-olds have been spoilt for racing purposes by the cruel and at the same time futile use of whip and spur. One point upon which all competent critics of the turf agree, is that Tom Cannon is incomparable as a rider of two-year-olds, and his strength lies in the fact that he is before all else tender and encouraging. 'I should as soon think of hitting a child,' is his remark, meaning of course when the young animal is free from vice or mischief which might need punishment or warning. It is very rarely that Cannon even takes up and flourishes his whip, and it is wonderful how kindly young horses respond when he calls on them for an effort. A two-year-old has a good deal to learn before he can show to advantage in a race. Unless due attention is paid to his education he is almost certain to 'run green' when he first appears in public, and to hit him when he needs encouragement and fails from lack of confidence is of course to give him an irrepressible antipathy to racing. Roguish horses, animals that will not try, are remarkably common, and as a very general

rule roguishness is the natural consequence of bad treatment. It is painful to see a horse trembling with fear when the saddle is being put on his back, and this is a sight which should never be seen. George Fordham was in most cordial agreement with the theory of gentleness and kindness to young horses. 'If they have not been taught their business it's very certain you can't teach them on a racecourse,' the great jockey said. 'Poor little brutes! They look at you sometimes, if they can't go the pace, to see if you are going to hit them—turn their heads and look at you, they do, expecting the whip. They are outpaced, they can't go any faster, and they dread that they are going to catch it.'

Tom Cannon's words on the subject are too pertinent and graphic to be omitted. 'That unfortunate whip loses such a lot of races for the boys,' he says, 'and more especially on young horses. No one knows what a number of two-year-olds are ruined by the whip and the spurs boys are always using. It's cruel, and besides it does no good at all. See a two-year-old come out on the course and go down to the post, listening and looking about him. He ran last week, and he was hided, and he was out the day before yesterday, and here he is once more, and he knows that he's got to run and to be hided again. What's the consequence? He is too nervous to put out his full powers; and then when he goes back to his stable, timorous and trembling, he won't eat, and what's worse he won't drink; and so he goes off when he never had a chance of coming on. As I sit in my light saddle I can feel their hearts against my legs, beat! beat! beat! bump! bump! bump! Then when a careless or clumsy boy is on them they get a bad start after all, and out comes that blessed whip, and so they go whipping and bumping all over the course.' A great jockey's description of how he won a famous classical event on a horse whose chance was esteemed so little that he was allowed to start at twenty-five to one, may be mentioned as illustrating the perfect possession of the head and hands. The favourite started at four to one on, and there was another animal that was supposed to have an

outside chance. These two were leading about a quarter of a mile from home, and the jockey of the ultimate winner, about a length and a half behind, pulled back another half length. 'They had three little races all to themselves a long way from the post,' he explained afterwards, 'so when we got near home and I saw they were going to have another, I thought I would join in.' Patience was rewarded.

On the occasion that these wise words were spoken to the present writer, Tom Cannon had something to say of other periods of the struggle, one remark being, 'If you can't hold a horse with a gentle pull, try a gentler still; it's just like trout fishing, you want to be as delicate as that; and as for the whip, the great thing is to see if one or two strokes will not do it in the last three strides.'

We feel that in this chapter only the fringe of the subject has been touched; but perhaps enough has been said to show that race riding is a very much more intricate and difficult art than the careless observer would suppose.

Early days.

CHAPTER VII

THE COLONIAL HORSE

BY THE EARL OF ONSLOW, G.C.M.G. (Governor of New Zealand).

THERE are few more interesting studies than that of the results of the transplantation of English men and women to the rich and virgin acres of Australasia, and of the untrammelled growth in that genial climate of English institutions.

Of these none has taken deeper root than the national love for horseflesh and horseracing; and if the 'proper study of mankind is man,' surely the next study should be that of man's noblest animal, 'the horse.'

For generations we have systematically snubbed, thwarted, and refused to assist our countrymen in their efforts to transplant our manners and customs, sports and pastimes, to every unoccupied corner of the habitable globe. But now that, not by favour, but in spite of a long line of rulers at the Colonial Office, without practical experience of colonial feelings and aspirations, they promise to become the overshadowing branch of the Imperial tree, our attitude towards them has quite altered. Indifference, neglect, and the suspicion of looking on our colonies as incumbrances have disappeared. It has become the fashion to evince the liveliest interest in them and their institutions, to be almost fulsome in their praise; and lest any of us should be set down as an ignoramus in the small talk of Society, we have pulled out our atlases to see where on earth they are.

In this state of growing public opinion in England it is well not to omit from a nineteenth-century treatise on the pursuit of sports some account of its development amongst Englishmen on the other side of the world, and especially in those islands, our exact antipodes, which are the nearest counterpart to Great Britain, in situation, climate, institutions, and surroundings, of any country in existence.

'It is certain that the introduction of horses into Australia was simultaneous with its colonisation, for Captain Philip, on his way out with the fleet that brought the first instalment of convicts and colonists in 1788, shipped a stallion, three mares, and three colts at the Cape of Good Hope. The earliest races were held by the officers of the 73rd Regiment in 1810 at Sydney, and by 1844 the number of horses had so increased that regular shipments began to take place to India. The horses brought with the first fleet do not appear to have been thoroughbred. The thoroughbred horse in these colonies owes its origin to English racehorses imported from home. The first record of the importation of these is in the opening years of the century, when a horse called Rockingham or Young Rockingham was brought from the Cape.

This horse was said to be by Rockingham, by Highflyer. Old Hector, by Trentham out of Gohannas, dam, bred by Lord Egremont, was brought from India in 1806, and was shortly followed by Bay Camerton—by Camerton out of Valtonia and The Baron, by Milo out of a dam by Waxy; while the earliest record of a thoroughbred mare in Australia is in 1825, when Mr. Icely imported a mare called Manto, by Soothsayer out of one of the sisters to Lynceus.

Thoroughbred mares and stallions (says the compiler of the New Zealand Stud-book) were first imported to Australia more than fifty years before a stud-book was published in any of the southern colonies, and as these went to the studs of gentlemen living many hundreds of miles apart in a thinly peopled country, and who kept no records (or if kept they never were published) of the foals which they bred, nearly all particulars of imported blood are now lost,

except that of horses kept as stallions, and of these even the names of some are now totally forgotten.

The first volume of the New South Wales Stud-book, while giving the names and pedigrees of a few celebrated old imported mares, furnishes no account whatever of the foals which they bred; but at intervals in its pages we meet with these unsatisfactory expressions: 'out of an imported thoroughbred mare,' or 'granddam, an imported thoroughbred mare;' statements too vague to be accepted as evidence of purity of blood.

Hunting in Australasia.

An extensive sale of thoroughbred stock took place on the death of Mr. C. Smith, of New South Wales, in 1845, and to the catalogue published at that sale we are indebted for much of the information which has enabled the compilers of Australasian stud-books to trace the blood of the earlier racehorses. In Tasmania a stud-book existed in 1847, but it was not printed, and the manuscript copies were naturally few in number.

The first regular stud-book was published in New South Wales in 1859, and a similar publication appeared about the same time in Victoria, while it was not till 1862 that any similar publication was issued in New Zealand. The materials at hand for the compilation of these publications were scanty and not

trustworthy, some of them being derived from sale catalogues, in which owners or their grooms assumed the existence of blood in the stock offered for sale which it would not have been difficult to prove apocryphal.

In addition it was a general custom to allow thoroughbred stallions to roam and breed at will, almost wild, on the extensive runs of Australia, thus creating a confusion of pedigree which the stream of time has found it impossible to separate. Nor can the entries in the earlier stud-books be implicitly relied on. The compiler of the New Zealand Stud-book refuses to accord this confidence to any prior to the one published in New South Wales as recently as 1882.

At the date of the first New Zealand Stud-book there were only twenty-five mares in that colony whose descent was unimpeachable, and only one hundred in the parent colony and in Victoria. Since then their number has become legion, and the stud-book of each colony is now a thick octavo volume.

I have not at hand the materials necessary to give a detailed account of the development of the thoroughbred horse in Australia, nor am I sufficiently certain that such a treatise would repay perusal or be in consonance with the purpose of these chapters.

New Zealand bred horses have won most of the principal races in Australia in recent years, and some considered quite second rate in the island colony have won valuable stakes on the neighbouring continent, such as the Winter Handicap at Hennington, won by a horse which had done nothing better than win the Provincial Handicap at Dunedin; again, a horse called Paddy, who never could win more than one stake worth eighty sovereigns in New Zealand, immediately won 300 sovereigns at Sydney and other races worth 300*l.* and 100*l.* each.

For this reason I am entitled to consider that the race-horses of the southern colony are fairly typical of the group; indeed, it would be easy to argue that the more temperate and moister climate of the islands is so favourable to the breeding and rearing of stock, that horses which have been bred under

these advantages may compare favourably with the animals raised in the warmer and drier lands of the continent.

Of the forty-six stallions which I have been able to trace as imported from England into New Zealand only eleven can be called decided successes as sires of winning racehorses. They are (besides Musket, who has founded so famous a race of stayers), Riddleworth, by Emilius out of Bee-in-a-bonnet, imported 1843; Ravensworth, by Touchstone out of Fairfane, imported 1865; The Peer, by Melbourne out of Cinni Felli, imported 1859 (this last, though never successful on the English turf, was once favourite for the Two Thousand); Traducer, by The Libel out of Arethusa, imported 1862; Albany, by Thormanby out of Grisella, imported 1874; Anteros, by Loiterer out of Adresta, imported 1876, who, in addition to his racing stock, produced a large number of excellent harness and saddle horses.

Apremont, who combines the blood of Gladiateur and Touchstone, being by Mortemer out of Araucaria, was foaled in France, where he suffered from an epidemic disease which left him unsound in his wind. This complaint has troubled him very little in New Zealand, where he seems steadily to get the better of it. Most of his stock, however, are afflicted with bad tempers. It may, indeed, be said in passing that affections of the wind are so rare in Australia and New Zealand as to be almost unknown on the turf there. The disease exists in so modified a form, and is lessening annually in severity to such an extent, that it is expected in a few generations it will disappear altogether.

Cadogan, by Cremorne out of Chance, was imported in 1881; Leolinus, by Caterer out of Tasmania, imported 1878; and Pacific, by Flatcatcher out of Disagreeable, imported 1858. Of the rest, sixteen may be said to have done fairly well, and the remaining nineteen to have been failures. It should be observed that, though the sons of many of these have themselves failed to achieve success in racing, they have begotten stock which in their turn have won good stakes for their owners.

Of those which I have already named, Apremont, Leolinus, and Albany are still at the stud, and in addition the imported stallions—Captivator, by Caractacus out of Miss Hawthorn; Ingomar (who once won the Grand National hurdle race at Croydon) by Uncas out of Wild Deer; King Cole, by King Tom out of Qui Vive; Vasco de Gama, by Beadsman out of Salamanca, who is own brother to Pero Gomez; Gladiator, by Gladiateur out of Nuncia; St. Leger, by Doncaster out of Atlantis; and Castor, by Zealot out of a dam by Sterling out of Leda. The last-named horse arrived in New Zealand last year (1890). Leolinus is a big upstanding horse, and his cross-bred stock would make weight-carrying hunters or chargers.

It may be said generally, respecting the imported stallions, that those which turned out successes have proved a good source of profit to their owners, and there can be little doubt that, whatever stallions are to be imported into the colonies to get winning racehorses, should be carefully selected by good judges furnished with ample means; though, if blood, form, and shape be studied, some inexpensive but valuable sires of harness horses and hunters might very advantageously be shipped to Australia.

The New Zealand Stud Company have shown results exceeding those of any other breeding confederation in the Pacific, mainly owing to their lucky possession of Musket and repurchase of his son Nordenfelt. In 1887 this company sold at Sylvia Park thirty-three yearlings, which realised a total of 10,039*l.*, an average of 304*l.* Of these, twenty-two were Musket's, which fetched together 9,098*l.* 5*s.*, of which one out of Onyx brought 1,010*l.*, one out of Sylvia 1,100*l.*, almost the highest price ever realised by a yearling in the colonies; inferior only indeed to an own brother, also by Musket out of Sylvia, afterwards named Martini-Henry, which was sold at seven months for 1,250 guineas.

In 1886 the company repurchased Musket's son Nordenfelt, whom they had sold for 1,200*l.* to Mr. White, that gentleman accepting 2,000*l.* for him.

The Nordenfelt yearlings fetched last year 4,415 guineas, an average of 339½ each. The cost of running this establishment is about 200*l.* a month, the staff consisting of a superintendent, a groom and assistant to take charge of the stallions, one groom to look after the brood mares, and one groom with an assistant for the care of the yearlings. The company's estate is laid out in grass paddocks, on which they maintain sixty brood mares and five stallions, and dispose annually of from forty-five or fifty yearlings.

Some of the mares from which the company's stock are bred were bought in 1880, at the break-up sale of the Middle Park Stud Company, by Sir Hercules Robinson, a former governor and part-owner of racehorses in New Zealand, and others were purchased from Mr. G. G. Stead, one of the largest individual importers of thoroughbred stock in the colonies.

The company unfortunately got into difficulties, and it was feared would have to be broken up. Colonel Carey, R.A. (who has made a special study of horse-breeding in different parts of Australia, to whom I am indebted for many valuable notes), and a few other gentlemen now propose to raise the sum of 15,000*l.* by the creation of 150 paid-up shares of 100*l.* each. The statement of expenditure and income appended to the prospectus shows that last year there was a balance of 2,000*l.* in favour of the latter item, and there seems a very reasonable prospect of this sum being largely increased. The raising of the 15,000*l.* necessary to take over the stud should not be a work of very great trouble, and it is earnestly to be desired that a breeding establishment which has been so successful and situated in a climate so eminently suited to the raising of thoroughbred stock may continue to maintain the reputation which New Zealand has achieved in the racing annals of the Pacific.

The most successful stud on the neighbouring continent is that of the recently deceased Mr. White, who, with a laudable desire of trying whether any comparison could be formed between English and Australian horses on a more trustworthy

basis than that of a mere time test over courses of the same length, but of different configuration and differently affected by climate, soil, and state of the ground, sent over two colts to compete in the English Derby of 1890. Kirkham's performance cannot be said to be encouraging, and it is greatly to be regretted that what Australians venture to consider the idiotic rule which makes an owner's nominations void after his death prevents Mr. White's horses from appearing in other races for which he had entered them. Inasmuch as the horses which he had entered for the Derby of 1891 were, when sent over, the pick of his yearling stock, he expected greater things of them than of either Kirkham or Narellan.

In the antipodes the success of Mr. White's stud at Kirkham has been phenomenal, for during the last twelve years he twice won the two great races, the Victorian Derby and the Melbourne Cup, in 1887, with Chester, and in 1883 with Martini-Henry. Six times he won the Victorian Derby and four times the Derby of New South Wales. He owned sixty-six winning horses, with which he won 252 races, of the value in stakes of 121,738*l.*; 137 of these races were won for him by one jockey, J. Hales. His most successful horse was Abercorn, by Chester out of Cinnamon, who won 12,000*l.* in stakes, and beat the record against time in Australia by accomplishing a mile and a quarter in two minutes and seven and a quarter seconds over the Flemington course.

It should be added that Mr. White was a native-born Australian, and that he entertained a strong belief in the advantage of breeding from his mares every alternate year. He was a firm believer in the policy of importing mares from England, and practised it to a large extent.

Of the thoroughbred stallions imported into Australia, the most successful stock-getter has been the recently deceased Musket, who was by Touchstone out of a mare by West Australian out of Brown Bess. Musket was bred by Lord Glasgow in 1867, and passed with the rest of his stud to General Peel and Mr. George Payne on Lord Glasgow's death.

By his lordship's will it was directed that none of the stud should be sold ; those that were sufficiently forward were tried, and the bad ones doomed to the pistol. It is said that Musket was one of these, but that Chaloner, believing there was more in Musket than the horse showed, persuaded the owner to spare his life. He won the Ascot Stakes and Alexandra Plate, and was the sire of Petronel. At the break-up of Mr. Payne's stud he was hired for his life by Mr. Thomas Russell for 550*l.* and shipped to New Zealand, where in his first year he got Martini-Henry out of Sylvia by Fisherman out of Juliet, who won the two great Australasian races, the Melbourne Derby and the Melbourne Cup ; he also got Maxim, Trenton, Nordenfelt, Carbine, and Tirailleur, all winners of the chief events on the Australasian turf. The mares which he has got give every promise of becoming first-class matrons, for their stock is very promising. He died of rupture of the kidneys in 1885. In the season 1889–90 he headed the list of winning sires in New Zealand, his stock having won 9,522*l.*

Who has not wished that he might begin life afresh with the experience he now possesses? Young Australia is not far from being in this fortunate position. She began life with the experience of eight centuries and a clean sheet on which to work out her destiny. When her towns were in their earliest infancy she 'reserved' sites which were considered the most suitable for racecourses, the consequence being that no considerable town is without one, modelled as far as circumstances will permit on the Flemington racecourse, near Melbourne—a course, without any sort of doubt, the best laid out both by nature and by man of any in the world.

Flemington is the modern Coliseum. Its amphitheatre of hills, terraced like a Rhenish vineyard, rise behind and around the grand stand, enabling everybody to see the whole of every race. There is no business opening at Flemington for the gentleman who at English race-meetings walks about with a form on his head to enable short people for a few pence to see over the heads of tall people in front of them.

It is in keeping with the fitness of things in a democratic country that nature should have so made provision that the 'sovereign people' may equally with their Governor see the race from start to finish, and all for half-a-crown, or, if a man chooses to go on the flat land inside the course, he need pay nothing at all. These are Flemington's natural advantages; now a few words as to those which man has added, and let me commend them to the Stewards of Ascot, Sandown, Kempton, Leicester, and all meetings where the increasing revenue from gate-money enables increased provision to be annually made for the public comfort.

First, as to access to the course. Besides all other ways there is, as may be supposed, a railway. The platform of the station will allow six trains capable of accommodating 4,000 people to be drawn up at the same time, while the station-yard will admit train accommodation for 10,000 people. The railway tickets, which can be purchased some time before starting, also admit to the several stands. There are five meetings in the year, two of which are of one day only. The added money amounts to 44,000*l.*, and the stakes and forfeits to 16,000*l.*, making 60,000*l.* to run for. Since the foundation of the club in 1864, 356,000*l.* have been given away.

This club, unlike our Jockey Club, is fully recognised by law and established by Act of Parliament, with power to make bye-laws, which must be approved by the Governor in council. It consists of 12,000 members, and the committee of the club elect five stewards, who control the meetings. The club revenue exceeds 88,000*l.*

The course is a pear-shaped oval, one and a half mile round. There is also a six furlongs straight run.

The steeplechase course is rather more than a mile and a half, and consists of the following jumps :—

	Feet	Inches
Post and rail fence	4	0
Post and rail fence	4	2
Post and rail fence	4	2
Stone wall	4	4

	Feet	Inches
Post and rail	4	0
Post and rail	4	1
Post and rail	3	10

These are taken twice, the remainder once only.

Post and rail	4	4
Post and rail	4	4
Close paling fence	4	3
Stone wall	4	2
Log fence	4	0

Each furlong is marked with a white post. All races can be seen from beginning to finish from the lawn or the stand. The starting-posts are connected by electric wire with a starting-bell in the paddock and a chronograph for timing the race at the back of the judge's box. The assistant timekeeper goes with the starter and touches the electric button when the horses start; this sounds the bell and starts the chronograph. Electric 'scratching' boards are placed in different parts of the ground, and are worked from the central scratching-office. All horses go out with saddlecloths bearing numbers in red on a white ground, corresponding to the horse's number on the card, enabling strangers quickly to identify them. The weighing-room, stewards'-stand, stewards'-room, members'-room, and jockeys'-room are in one building. From this there is a subway for jockeys to the saddling paddock. In the jockeys'-room are lockers, scales, shower-baths, &c.

A hospital fitted with every appliance is situated in the saddling paddock, a surgeon and dresser are paid by the club, and there are also honorary surgeons.

When one looks at the formidable nature of the fences in the steeplechase course, one appreciates the forethought of the stewards in providing an ambulance waggon to go round a smaller ring inside the steeplechase ring and accompany the race. The moment a jockey is hurt he is carried to a spring mattress and driven to the hospital in the paddock, and there carefully attended to. Whenever the necessity compels the infliction of a fine on a jockey, the amount is carried to a sepa-

rate fund. Out of this fund every jockey hurt or incapacitated in the colony of Victoria is supported till he is again fit for work.

There are four grand stands, capable of accommodating 18,000 people. Under the stands are ample luncheon-rooms, splendidly fitted drawing-rooms for ladies, press and telegraph accommodation, and a suite of rooms for the governor's private use. The catering is done under control of the club : all wines and cigars being first approved by the committee ; the whole of the cooking is done by a system of high steam pressure, so as to avoid fires in the wooden stands.

A firm of carriers undertake the transport of luncheon hampers to any part of the lawn or hill and their safe return to Melbourne in the evening, while the glass and china may be hired on the spot. Ice and milk carts drive about the paddock supplying these articles, while boiling water for making tea is provided without charge by the club. For the summer meeting the programmes are printed on silk fans for ladies' use. The 'Ring' is carefully looked after by the club, and the odds may not be called in front of the stands. No man is allowed to carry on the business of public betting or bookmaking without the previous permission of, and registration by, the club. If he wishes to bet in the paddock, he must pay an annual fee of 25*l.* ; or, if he confines himself to the hill behind, ten guineas is the charge. Each man, like the driver of a London hackney carriage, has to wear and produce his name and badge of registration.

The club makes provision on race-days for stabling 500 carriage horses in separate stalls. Nor are their attentions confined to the club property alone, for before each day's racing the watering-carts of the neighbouring municipalities are put into requisition to well water the four dusty miles of road leading from Melbourne to the course. Throughout the year the course is in use by some of the four hundred horses which are trained on the four tan, cinder, sand, or sand and tan training tracks provided by the club.

Thus it will be seen that it would indeed be difficult to make

any suggestion to the Flemington stewards for the improvement of their ground, or to increase the comforts of the 130,000 people who come together to witness the Melbourne Cup.

No one travelling through these colonies can fail to be struck with the number of racecourses. However small the village, it must have a school and a racecourse, generally a public-house

The totalisator.

and often a church. In New Zealand, with a population of little over half a million (about that of Liverpool), there were, during the season 1889–90, 298 days' racing for nearly 84,000*l.* of added money.

At the New Zealand meetings there are no bellowing bookmakers. The fraternity have been driven out of the field by the totalisator.

The totalisator made its first appearance in France, under the name of the 'Pari-mutuel,' and its object is automatically to register, and to offer, the precise odds according to the relative amount of public favour and support accorded to each of the competitors in a race. The use of the totalisator at New Zealand race meetings was authorised by an Act of Parliament whose principal object was to put down gambling-houses, public sweepstakes and betting advertisements, and to substitute this machine where permission for its use has been obtained from the Colonial Secretary. If the resident magistrate of the principal town of the district reports favourably on the application of any racing club to use the totalisator, the Colonial Secretary may give permission for the use of not more than three of the machines under management of some competent person appointed by the club, but on the following conditions only :—

1. The programme of the race meeting for which the totalisator is requested must have been approved by the Committee of the Metropolitan Jockey Club of the district.

2. The use of the totalisator will not be allowed to any club at more than five meetings in the year.

3. Nor to any club holding more than three meetings in the year, unless an average of at least 500*l.* per diem in stakes is given.

4. Nor to any club holding three meetings in the year, unless an average of at least 400*l.* per diem in stakes is given.

5. Nor to any club holding two meetings in the year, unless an average of at least 200*l.* per diem in stakes is given.

6. Nor to any club holding one meeting in the year, unless a sum of not less than 100*l.* per diem in stakes is given.

Those who are best qualified to speak declare that the totalisator has been a valuable institution in the promotion of New Zealand sport. It has been the means of adding something like 50,000*l.* a year to the amount given in stakes. Before it was legalised and brought into operation a race for 100*l.* of added money was considered a good stake, now 500*l.* is not uncommon ; the smaller races were often for sums not exceeding 25*l.*, now they run about 70*l.* or 80*l.*

It may easily be imagined that, in a country where there are

not very many wealthy men, such an addition to the sums which may be placed to the credit side of the racing account is, for those who do not look to increase (or diminish) their balances by betting, a great incentive to breed and run horses, as well as to incur expenditure in procuring the best blood from home.

In a small and not over wealthy community betting in very large sums was never possible. The leviathan bookmakers of New Zealand would be unable to face the loss of a few hundreds on settling-days; consequently racing has never been looked upon as a sport at which a fortune could be made, and the extinction of the bookmaker is not greatly regretted, even by the plunger.

The objection offered to the totalisator is the same as that which has been advanced against the public-house, or the tables at Monte Carlo—namely, that its publicity and conspicuousness tempt men to gamble who would otherwise not fall into temptation. It is said that ladies and lads club their shillings together to buy a ticket in the totalisator, and that the familiarity of the operation divests the bettor of any suspicion of immorality in the eyes of his or her fellows.

But, on the other hand, those who, with the Bishop of Peterborough, hold that gambling for such small sums as the speculator can well afford has nothing immoral in it, will be inclined to think that the fact that a man must have a golden sovereign, that no cheque or I O U will avail, and that there can be no entering into an engagement which he may not be able to fulfil, are advantages which preponderate over the drawbacks.

To these considerations must be added the fact that it is no longer worth anybody's while to 'square' a jockey or trainer beforehand, since it is impossible, till the race has started, to know what price may be obtained against any horse. But no plan has yet been devised which will compel a man when he runs a horse always to run him to win. Even with the totalisator there is sometimes in-and-out running of such a kind as can only be attributed to the owner's desire to 'get a machine.'

In August 1890 the Victoria Racing Club passed a resolution 'that steps be taken to have the totalisator legalised, subject to its administration under the bye-laws of the club.' Thus there is every probability that ere long the totalisator will be added to the attractions of Flemington. If so, it is difficult to predict to what amount the added money in the hands of the club for distribution may reach. The innovation was opposed by but one member—a judge in the Bankruptcy Court—and it was humorously suggested that his opposition could only be dictated by a fear of diminished business in his court.

Briefly the operation is as follows : An investor desirous of calculating his chances has but to stand in front of the machine and observe the bold number in the gable at the top, whence he will learn the total number of sovereigns in the till. He next looks at the number of sovereigns recorded over the number of the horse which he wishes to back, and if he is a fairly rapid arithmetician he can tell what the odds at that moment are; though, of course, subsequent investments may totally change the proportions; or as we say, the price may shorten, or may improve. We will suppose, for example, that there are 1,097 sovereigns in the till, and 390 are on the favourite, Carbine. It is easily calculated that, deducting the 10 per cent. (two shillings) of which the 'Bank' mulcts each sovereign that comes into the till, there remains 987*l.* 6*s.* out of the 1,097*l.* invested to be divided among the owners of the 390 winning tickets; that is to say, each one will receive what is called a 'dividend' of 2*l.* 10*s.* 6*d.* (the Bank does not take any account of fractions of a sixpence), being his invested sovereign and 1*l.* 10*s.* 6*d.* winnings. The odds against Carbine, therefore, were a shade over six to four, which may be taken to be the true position in which he stood in public estimation compared with his competitors. It is possible under this system to back the winner and yet lose money! As, for example, if there are 1,000 sovereigns in the till, 950 of which are on the winner, it is obvious that, after the 10 per cent. (100*l.* has been deducted as the Bank's commission there will only

remain 900 sovereigns to divide among 950 winning tickets. It is a rule of the totalisator that if no one has backed the winner the money is returned less the 10 per cent.

The *modus operandi* for the investor is as simple as that in vogue on English racecourses with those ready-money gentlemen who advertise that 'they will be found at the same old place with the same old red hats and green umbrellas,' with the advantage that those who work under the totalisator are always there when wanted, and always solvent, which is not the case with those who work under the hats and umbrellas. All that you have to do is to pay in your sovereigns, and for each one take away a ticket bearing the name of the race and the number of the horse you wish to back.

During the season 1889–90 over 573,000*l.* passed through New Zealand totalisators in 224 days' racing. The largest dividend ever paid was on a horse called Crunning at Hawke's Bay, when the lucky investors of one sovereign secured a dividend of 306*l.*

The totalisator is worked by agreements between the club and the proprietors of the machine, the usual arrangement being for the racing club to give permission to the owners of the totalisator to use it on paying a royalty of $8\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. to the club and retaining the other $1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of the 10 which they are entitled to levy on the money passing through their hands. The cost of a machine for 20 horses is 375*l.*

In order further to facilitate what I may term innocuous gambling, the race cards, which in the antipodes take the form of little books, have in addition to the usual list of runners with weights and colours and the conditions of the race, a second list of runners with their numbers, each name being separated by perforation, so that it can be readily torn out, folded up, and put into a hat for a sweepstakes; while printed on the back of the list of runners is a memorandum form, on which to fill in the value of the sweepstakes and the horse drawn by each contributor, blanks being left for the names of those who draw the three placed horses.

AUSTRALIAN CUP.

TO START AT QUARTER TO FOUR.

A Handicap Sweepstakes of 20 sovs. each, 10 ft., or 5 sovs. only if declared, with 1,000 added. For 3 yrs. old and upwards. The handicap weight of the winner of the V.R.C. St. Leger, 1890, to be not less than 8st., and the winner of any handicap flat race of the value of 100 sovs., after declaration of weight, to carry 7 lb. extra; of 500 sovs. or upwards, 14 lb. extra. The second horse to receive 200 and the third 100 sovs. out of the stake. (45 Subs.)

4 *Two miles and a quarter.*

		yrs.	*st.*	*lb.*
1	Mr. J. Cripps' b h BRAVO ... ... *Blue, gold spots and cap*	6	9	5
2	,, W. Gannon's br h MELOS ... ... *Maroon and cream stripes*	4	9	2
3	,, J. Wilson's (jun.) br h LONSDALE ... ... *Brown, white cap*	4	8	12
4	Hon. D. S. Wallace's b h OAKLEIGH ... ... *Black, white sleeves, scarlet cap*	a	8	12
5	,, D. S. Wallace's bl h ENFILADE ... ... *Black, white sleeves, scarlet cap*	5	8	8
6	,, J. White's ch c DREADNOUGHT ... ... *Blue, white sleeves, blue and white cap*	3	8	6
7	,, J. White's b c SINGAPORE ... ... *Blue, white sleeves, blue and white cap*	3	8	3
8	,, J. White's br g RUDOLPH ... ... *Blue, white sleeves, blue and white cap*	3	8	0
9	Mr. E. Keys ns. br c SIR WILLIAM ... ... *Brown, gold sleeves and cap*	3	7	11
10	,, G. C. Stead's g c SCOTS GREY ... ... *Yellow, black cap*	3	7	10
11	,, J. Wilson's ch f CHINTZ ... ... *Black, white cap*	3	7	9
12	,, S. G. Cook's br h JEBUSITE ... ... *Maroon, maroon and silver cap*	5	7	9
13	,, W. Sayer ns. b or br c DUNKELD ... ... *Violet, red cap*	3	7	8
14	,, W. H. Kent's b c FERNANDO ... ... *Red, black cap*	3	7	8
15	,, T. Sampson's b m MAGGIE ... (including 7lb penalty) *Brown, white sleeves and cap*	4	7	5
16	,, J. Turnbull's br h TANTALLON ... ... *Cream, blue sleeves and cap*	5	7	0
17	,, J. Wilson's ch f SWING ... ... *Black, white cap*	3	7	0
18	,, J. D. McDougall's br g THE SLAVE ... ... *Red, red and black sleeves, black cap*	5	7	0
19	,, C. T. Roberts' br m BONNIE SPEC ... ... *Maroon, black cap*	4	6	13
20	,, H. Oxenham's ch g HANDOVER ... ... *Violet and gold stripes, violet cap*	6	6	10
21	,, S. Miller's b m ILEX ... ... *Red, red and white sleeves and cap*	4	6	7

Time.....Min.....Sec.

AUSTRALIAN CUP SWEEPSTAKES.

1.—BRAVO

2.—MELOS

3.—LONSDALE

4.—OAKLEIGH

5.—ENFILADE

6.—DREADNOUGHT

7.—SINGAPORE

8.—RUDOLPH

9.—SIR WILLIAM

10.—SCOTS GREY

11.—CHINTZ

12.—JEBUSITE

13.—DUNKELD

14.—FERNANDO

15.—MAGGIE

16.—TANTALLON

17.—SWING

18.—THE SLAVE

19.—BONNIE SPEC

20.—HANDOVER

21.—ILEX

The earliest importation of Arab blood appears to have been a horse called Hector, who in 1820 was advertised as a pure Persian standing in Sydney. In 1823 Sir Thomas Brisbane imported an Arab stallion named Satellite at considerable cost from Bombay.

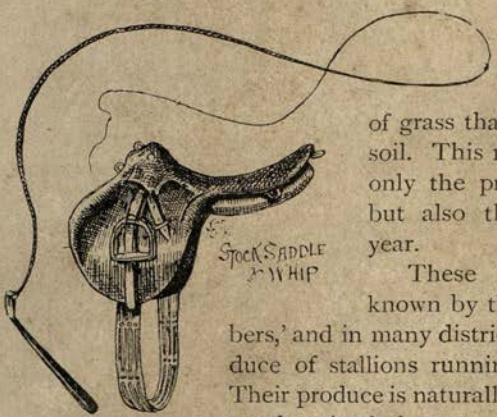
This horse was used by the New South Wales Government to breed horses for their police force. Though a small animal, he was very shapely, and his produce were considered without rivals in the colony for endurance and weight-carrying power. About five Arabs have been imported into New Zealand, one by Sir Gracroft Wilson, in 1854, and the last, called Arab Child, in 1875. These, so far as I am aware, were not put to any special description of mare, but simply the ordinary breeding or hackney mare, and the activity, spirit, and powers of endurance of these horses were very remarkable.

They were perfect hackneys, well built, and though not generally very high, were capable of getting through any reasonable amount of work in the day, and seemingly never tired.

In the earlier days of horse-breeding in Australia, about 1850 to 1855, a good deal of Arab blood was introduced from India. The descendants of these importations were extremely hardy horses, and they used frequently to be ridden a hundred miles in the day without shoes, being often without a drop of water, and they never had by any chance anything else to eat but grass. This class used to be bought on the breeders' runs for about 3*l.* a head, and were worth on an average about 5*l.* in the Sydney market. Many of these horses were bred on the Hunter River, and were rather light and very active hardy horses, standing about 15 hds. 2 in., very few going beyond this height. Large 'mobs' of this class were driven overland from New South Wales to Melbourne, which took about a month, and there were great risks during the drive of their straying at night time. Some of them were therefore hobbled every night, and a man was always kept on the watch to keep them together and to see which way the

herd was heading. The average journey made in a day was twenty-five to thirty miles, the cost of the operation did not exceed 10*s.* a head, and when sold in Melbourne they realised from 15*l.* to 20*l.* apiece.

Unfortunately, Australia receives but slight benefit from the rain-clouds of the north-west monsoon, or westerly winds of the temperate zone. When the pasturage is plentiful, in what are termed good seasons, breeding is carried on with profit, but in dry portions of the year, or after continued drought, the results are serious and oftentimes disastrous. The mares and their produce are then obliged to roam over vast tracts of country, seeking a precarious existence on the dried-up roots of grass that remain above the soil. This materially affects not only the present young stock, but also that of the coming year.



These horses are locally known by the name of 'scrubbers,' and in many districts they are the produce of stallions running wild with mares. Their produce is naturally a wretchedly small weedy animal, they are often sold at auction for a few shillings, and if their new owners do not look very sharp after them they are apt to break away and join their old companions in the bush.

When it is desired to capture and break in the semi-wild animals that scour through the scrub and over the plains of Australian runs, the owner of the run gets together all his hands, supplements them by such of his neighbours as are known to be first-class horsemen (and what young Australian is not?), provides them with horses trained to twist and turn at every slight motion of the rider's wrist, horses which, like a perfect

polo pony, or that of the American cowboy, will follow the object of pursuit almost without the guidance of their riders.

They scour the dusky plains, circling round and round each little knot of horses, and driving them towards others, till the 'mob' forms like a snowball. Every time a horse offers to leave the mob one of the horsemen rushes for him, and with the crack from the silken end of his thonged whip, which sounds like the cracking of some forest tree, turns him shivering and trembling in every limb back to the crowd.

At last the mob is large enough to bring into the homestead; gradually they are guided towards paddocks where the fences are high enough to forbid the possibility of escape by jumping over them. The unwonted sight of small enclosures strikes the leaders with panic; they gallop a few yards forwards, and then, sticking their forelegs in the dust, stop dead short and try to rush back the way they came. The stockwhips circle in the air over their heads, cracking like independent rifle firing. It is evident there is no chance of escape; the men shout and swear and halloo, and the quivering mass dashes into the close and well-fenced yard. With a rush they charge the opposite side of the 'corral,' some with their heads and chests, some with their flanks, all with the full force of their untamed strength; but the rails are made of strong Australian timber, not sawn but split, and the animals, recoiling from it, huddle together in the farthest corner, away from the dreaded men and their terrifying whips. These yards resemble an English village pound, but with a higher and stronger fence. They are of different sizes, the one into which the mob has been driven is larger than the others; gates open from it into the smaller ones; one of these is next opened and a few horses are allowed to pass through it, upon which it is slammed-to in the faces of the rest of the mob seeking to follow their leaders. Across the top of the fence of this smaller yard a plank is placed, which may remind those who have seen the stockyards of Chicago of the plank running along the tops of the pens adjoining the slaughter-houses, where all day long and every day the minister of death walks

up and down and never ceases to deliver his fatal blows to the patient beasts below him.

The highly strung nervous horse suffers far more than the heavier bullock, nor does the pole-axe come to end his misery. Instead, a noose is let down by the man on the plank, which is presently slipped dexterously over his head, while with the other end of the rope the stockman takes a turn round the post. The unfortunate beast, now finding himself actually in the hands of his tormentors, struggles with almost supernatural strength, till one would think the post must snap and the neck be dislocated; but at last the horse falls insensible and exhausted. Instantly two or three men spring upon him as he falls to the ground, his legs are hobbled, and when he recovers he finds himself powerless.

For such work as this it is needless to say that well-trained horses and firm-seated riders are essential. Western American cowboys, Mexican vaqueros, and Australian stockmen rival each other in the possession of both of these; their horses will hunt cattle and wild horses like collie-dogs, without it being necessary for the rider even to hold the reins in his hands.

Those who saw the manner in which Buffalo Bill and his men sat their buck-jumping 'cayooses' at Earl's Court will not need to be assured that men used to such work in any country acquire a remarkable fixity of tenure of their saddles. There are many who consider this method of catching what are in fact the wild horses of Australia needlessly cruel and brutal; but it must be borne in mind that before the horse falls to the ground the brain has been deprived of its supply of oxygen, and a result similar to the use of anæsthetics is thereby obtained. Where horses are cheap and labour dear we must not expect that men will be found ready to incur expense in order to save horses from some fear and a little knocking about.

It must not be supposed that every time there is a 'round up' of wild horses on a run the results are attended with success. It not infrequently happens that just as the 'mob' has been

A 'ROUND UP'

successfully gathered together, and is being cajoled, terrified, and urged to approach the yards, some inanimate object, such as a sheepskin or a sack, will startle them, or perhaps a fluttering fowl or squeaking pig, alarmed by the unwonted sounds of charging cavalry, will cross in front of the driven horses, and so alarm them that no amount of whip-cracking or shouting, nor the most fearful oaths that blasphemy can invent, will stop the terrified animals from rushing back amongst their pursuers, breaking through the ranks and regaining their liberty on the plains. To attempt to begin the work again the same day would be hopeless ; the steaming flanks, drooping heads, and bobbing tails of the stockmen's mounts too plainly show that no more can be got out of them till they have rested.

At one time the number of these animals became so great, and consumed so much valuable grass which might have served for cattle or sheep, that they were destroyed by the hundred where it was not found practicable to catch them in the manner I have described. Even when so caught they would at that time often fetch only a few shillings.

Mr. Saunders says of them :—

> They do to export, where they get more broken on the voyage to India, or to sell by auction, and are not infrequently bought by those who keep horses for some cruel destructive work, trusting to fatigue to quiet them. They are harnessed to four-horse coaches without any further breaking in, and form the far-travelling, ill-used, jibbing horses that are everywhere to be seen drawing the public conveyances of Australia. The poor things have never been taught to walk a step in harness, and are afraid to do so. It is no uncommon thing to see an Australian coach delayed five minutes, or even a quarter of an hour, after changing horses, before any two of the nervous, untaught, timid, ill-used brutes can be made to rush in one direction long enough to start the coach on level ground, a piece of ignorance for which they are belaboured and galloped the whole stage by the infuriated coachman, most of the passengers declaring that the 'obstinate brutes richly deserve it.'

At the time of the gold discoveries in Victoria the prices of horses went up by leaps and bounds throughout Australia.

The coaches between Melbourne and the gold-fields were then really well horsed, and a high price was given for well-broken strong horses ; but with the falling off in the gold production and the extension of railways the demand for, as well as the profit on, such horses fell off.

When the Victorian gold-fields were at the zenith of their prosperity, New South Wales, which had been pre-eminent in breeding horses, was rapidly depleted of its best stock, not only of harness horses but of breeding mares also.

Horse-shipping.

During the last sixteen years, while the population of New South Wales has increased at the rate of four and a quarter per cent. per annum, the number of horses in the colony has not increased by more than one per cent. Speaking roughly, there are a million and a half of horses in Australasia to two millions in the United Kingdom ; but of this large number the exportation beyond the confines of Australasia is comparatively small. An average of between four and five thousand is now

the contribution which Australia makes to our Indian horse supply, and of these by far the largest number is shipped from Victoria (in 1888, 4,300); but as the principal horse-shipping business is in the hands of a Victorian firm, there is reason to believe that a good proportion of these are bred across the border of New South Wales.

Five or six hundred horses go from New Zealand annually.

Speaking at a meeting of the Agricultural Society of New South Wales in 1873, Sir Hercules Robinson, then governor of the colony, and no mean judge of horseflesh, to whose services to the New Zealand turf I have alluded, said :—

> The racehorse of the colony struck him, when he came here, as being very deficient both in size and power; but on looking into the question he found that as regarded speed, steadiness, and capacity for running distance and carrying weight, they would compare favourably with the best class of English racehorses. The mean average speed of the English Derby up to 1862 was, he found, 2 minutes and 53½ seconds, while that of the Sydney Derby was 2 minutes and 48 seconds, and here the horses carried 5 lbs. more than they did in England. Since 1862, the weights have been revised, and, like the distances, were the same in each case. The mean speed also was exactly the same—namely, 2 minutes and 48 seconds. But there was this difference, that the Sydney horses, though legally three years old, were in fact not more than two years and nine or ten months when they ran for the Derby, whereas the English horses were generally three years and four months old. The comparison was thus greatly to the advantage of the colonial thoroughbred; and if it were necessary to add any further criterion he might take the last race between Reprieve and Dagworth, when the distance of three miles was run in 5 minutes and 57½ seconds, the race resulting in a dead heat. The deciding heat was then run in 5 minutes 56 seconds, or 1½ second less—an example of strength, speed, and endurance of which he scarcely remembered to have known a parallel.
>
> The only animals which they were deficient in were those which he might style fancy animals—horses which were produced under exceptional conditions and at a very considerable cost, and of which the demand, at all events at remunerative prices, was, he believed, extremely limited. The animals which he referred to were

well-bred, fast-going, weight-carrying hunters, horses which would carry fourteen stone at a great pace and over difficult country with perfect success. . . . So also with regard to clever weight-carrying hacks, which would canter at the rate of twelve or fourteen miles an hour. At home they would command 100*l.*, but he doubted whether they would bring more than 50*l.* in New South Wales, or if any number could even be sold at that price.

The price of horses in New Zealand and Australia does not seem to have varied greatly in the past forty years. In 1850, Captain Apperley, who was the head of an establishment in New South Wales organised by the East India Company to select and break 'Walers,' fixed 20*l.* as a sort of maximum for useful horses for Indian military service. At the same date a contemporary writer speaks of having seen an enormous number of horses sold by auction at from 2*l.* to 10*l.*, and heard breeders say they were satisfied with 5*l.* a head all round, and of having himself paid not more than 25*l.* as the highest price for his own excellent saddle and driving horses.

The circumstances have only changed to this extent—that whereas at the time of Captain Apperley's mission the very great majority of the population were settlers on the land, farmers who lived without any show or pretence ; no wealthy class of town residents, able or anxious to make any display in their 'turn-out,' existed—a class which was but just coming into existence at the time Sir Hercules Robinson delivered his address to the Agricultural Society in New South Wales. Now, in the chief towns of Australia, there is an extensive area of what in England we should term 'villadom,' and nowhere is it more remarkable than in Melbourne. Approaching that city by rail the traveller is apt to fall into the error which I have often noted in the case of foreigners arriving in London, to pack up his books and papers on the first sight of the suburbs, and then to sit on the edge of his seat, hat on head and umbrella in hand, for a full half-hour, momentarily expecting the train to pull up at the terminus.

There exists, therefore, at the present day a market for a

really good class of horse ; but that market is still and for some time must be a limited one. Those whose means enable them to insist on having the best animals that money will buy pay prices equal to those which could be obtained in England. Those who are in affluent circumstances, yet have no desire for show, content themselves with a good useful animal, but are not prepared to go beyond the market price, which, in consequence, as I have said, of its comparatively limited capacity, is much below the level of that which rules in England.

There are horses (of a kind) still to be had throughout Australasia for a sovereign or even less ; 4*l.* or 5*l.* will buy an animal that has four legs and will go, go even for a good many years ; what wonder then that all classes ride? It is literally only 'the beggar' that has not yet been 'put on horseback,' and it would certainly not be want of national riding pluck that would stop him from riding to the d——l or anywhere else.

For 15*l.* or 20*l.* you can procure a really serviceable hack or carriage horse, and you can add some degree of showiness to his utility by shortening his tail, combing his mane, clipping his coat and putting him in a stable on oats. It will probably be found, however, on removing his coat that he bears a most disgusting and disfiguring scar in some conspicuous part of his body.

This is his brand. When first inflicted it covered a space perhaps not bigger than a crown-piece, but as the foal grew the mark grew also, till now it half covers his quarter or his shoulder. The best thing to do under the circumstances is to drive him in double harness and accustom him to go on that side of the pole which is next to his cicatriced limb. A really good, well-shaped horse, fifteen-three or sixteen hands high, with plenty of substance and yet not 'carty,' will at three or four years old in the New Zealand breeder's hands not command more than 25*l.* to 35*l.* ; for something really out of the common in appearance 45*l.* to 50*l.* To these prices may be added, in Australia, another 10*l.* when the horses are within reach of the cities of Melbourne or Sydney.

There are, as I have said, occasions when a wealthy man may be looking out for a good pair of matched carriage horses, a weight-carrying cob, or a good hunter up to fifteen stone and upwards; when such an opportunity offers the man who has the necessary article will be able to make a good haul. Then 200 guineas may be got for a well-matched pair; the highest price I have heard for a single horse is 120 guineas, or about the lowest that a London dealer asks for an animal he thinks a purchaser is likely to buy.

Horse-breeding, of all forms of stock raising, is the one into which the commercial element enters least. Every man, when he goes into the business, of course thinks and believes that he will make it pay, but in a very large proportion of cases the remuneration derived from horse-breeding must be looked for not in pounds, shillings, and pence alone, but in the interest and affection which young horseflesh begets in the mind of their owner and breeder. Hence it comes that in the colony where the leisured class is very small, and where every man is engaged in an endeavour to make money, it is only those in whom the Englishman's passion for the horse is exceptionally strong who will submit to the risk attendant on the business.

When these colonies were first settled and the native grasses were rich and abundant, they contained plenty of excellent sustenance for foals, the young horses rapidly increased in bone, substance, and stature on the nourishing provender of the virgin lands; but within a short time the superior commercial attractions of wool, shortly enhanced by remunerative prices for the frozen sheep, induced most horse-breeders to run sheep with their horses. The natural consequence followed: the close-biting Merinoes and Lincolns devoured all the most succulent and nourishing of the grasses, and the foals that came over the ground after them were compelled to be content with the leavings. As a result, instead of growing rapidly the foals made little progress and were stunted and weedy.

Those breeders who will afford to keep paddocks entirely for horses, or can get access to the back-lying, unsettled lime-

stone districts of which there are still large areas in the hands of the Maories, can produce a strong serviceable animal; but the common horse of the country is fast degenerating into a weedy little animal, which may be called the hobbledehoy of the equine species, something between a horse and a pony.

That horses of a superior class were commonly produced thirty or forty years ago than now is certain, for the 'Walers' then sent to India and Ceylon were quite up to the necessary standard.

Horse-breeders in New South Wales have chiefly devoted their attention with great success to two classes of horse only—racehorses and heavy draught horses; but the roadster, the carriage horse, the cavalry horse, and the weight-carrying hunter have met with little care.

It is in Victoria that breeders seem to have thought it worth while to devote themselves solely to the production of such animals. Those who have done so appear to find the best cross to be a thoroughbred horse of sufficient height and quality put either to a Cleveland mare or a good upstanding three-fourths-bred mare, the former producing greater bulk and strength, and the latter more quality and activity.

Others, again, breed horses likely to suit the Indian market by having recourse to an active, well-built draught stallion with a half or three-fourths-bred mare.

In 1873 the Indian Government offered by public notice to buy in three years 2,850 horses between four and seven years of age, giving preference to mares, at a maximum price of 500 rupees for cavalry and 600 rupees for artillery horses. They also offered good prizes for sets of six brood mares the property of one importer, and for stallions, with the right of pre-emption at the exhibitor's price fixed before the judging. They announced that special value would be attached to good measurement of girth and leg, and to blood combined with power. This step was the result of a Committee of Inquiry on the Government studs, which up to then had been maintained in India, and which pronounced that system to have been a failure.

Officers from time to time visit Australia to report on the character of horses which are being bred. The last visit appears to have been in 1886, when it was laid down that these horses should be 'sound, four to five years old, of any colour, with good shoulders, deep in the girth, thick through the heart, good feet and legs, good backs, loins well ribbed up, and a deep well-turned rib.'

The Government still advertises in Australia for horses from time to time at the standard rate of 600 rupees, but are now inclined to prefer smaller, clean-legged horses with good body and shoulders.

It is to be regretted that, in the interests of Australia at least, and probably in that of England also, there should at the present time be no successor to the office held by Captain Apperley under the East India Company. The breeders complain bitterly of the uncertain nature of the market for Indian remounts. One gentleman who once took a large consignment of horses of about sixteen hands in height was informed by the officer to whom was entrusted the duty of purchasing remounts, that he considered sixteen hands too high for cavalry purposes and for horsing guns. The shipper resolved in future to mend his ways, and the following year he took over a shipment of horses none of which exceeded 15 hds. 3 in. in height; but meanwhile the purchasing officer had been changed, and his successor entertained a different opinion, holding that horses under sixteen hands in height were not fitted for military purposes; and for the second time the unfortunate shipper had to dispose of his cargo by auction to the highest bidder. But, in spite of this discouragement, some thousands find their way annually to Indian markets.

One of the largest breeders of horses in New Zealand complains that he has sent four shipments to Calcutta, and the result has been a loss on the whole. If whole cargoes could be sold at the regulation price, or even 75 per cent., horse-breeding would pay; whereas the Indian Government rarely take more than 50 per cent., no matter how suitable the horses

may be. Two years ago they sent their printed circular letters to all the shippers, stating the numbers that would be required for that year; they also wrote confirming it. Some months after, when the shippers had chartered vessels and had got most of their horses ready, they wrote to say that the price would be reduced 6*l.* per horse, and this in the face of the continued depreciation of the rupee.

The horses of the police force and battery of volunteer artillery at Brisbane represent a useful kind of animal. These horses are mostly bred on the plateau of the Darling plains, and in the vicinity of Toowoomba, in Queensland. Good horses are sold at Brisbane, but on account of the still undeveloped export trade scarcely realise paying prices.

Farther to the north, and in the interior of the colony, numbers of a small type of bush horse run on the arid plains that constitute so considerable a portion of Queensland; but this class is disappearing to make way for a better kind, which is to supply Rockhampton and the increasing population of the Mount Morgan gold district. When the northern railway system reaches the Gulf of Carpentaria, not only will large tracts of fertile land be opened for grazing, but the great advantage of a shorter and safer sea-route for the exportation of horses to India *via* Singapore will be gained, and the colony will then be in a position to compete successfully with Victoria in the trade.

Two Royal Artillery officers travel about the colony purchasing horses for the Queensland artillery batteries at prices averaging 12*l.* to 15*l.*; they make model gun teams, and several of them have been photographed for the benefit of officers seeking Indian remounts as the type which the authorities there should aim at procuring for the Imperial army.

Horses in Tasmania enjoy advantages very similar to those which the insular position and temperate climate of New Zealand afford.

The general aspect of the country, especially on the line of railway between Launceston and Hobart, is more English than any other part of Australasia. The homesteads and small

towns recall to mind the scenery of the midland counties. The climate of Tasmania is equable ; there are no extremes of heat and cold, neither are there hot winds, such as there are in Australia, to burn up the pastures ; whilst the mountainous configuration of the country, with its surroundings of sea, has a tendency to keep the air cool and agreeable. The land is of great fertility, and is well suited for agriculture. The greater portion of the island is, however, still covered with vast forests, which have to be cleared before the land is available for pasture or cultivation. The horses are mostly bred for agricultural work. In that class they are excellent, and, being fed on oats, develop in size and strength above those of Australia. Some breeders send their produce to the sale-yards in Melbourne, whence some doubtless find their way to India.

Young horses bred in a 'bush' country take to jumping as young ducks take to water. In New Zealand, to transform a hundred acres of the densest forest imaginable, evergreen, matted and tangled with every sort of binder creeper and parasite, and in every depression of which is a thick wet growth of moss and giant ferns, is not an encouraging-looking task. All has to be cut down, and when as dry as may be, to be fired in innumerable places. Some of it burns ; that which is either too stout or too wet to burn lies where it has fallen till it rots, but between the logs a sweet grass soon springs up from a soil luxuriating in unaccustomed sunlight and dryness. A foal dropped among these logs has to use his hind legs as soon as he can stand, to follow his dam ; and it is no matter of wonder, therefore, that every horse bred under such circumstances has the makings of a hunter, especially if, as is commonly the case, he has an hereditary disposition that way.

It is fortunate for a sport-loving community that young untried horses should be so cheap and their keep equally inexpensive. A few pounds will buy any good-looking youngster without antecedents or reputation, and, like the shilling razors which many men swear by, out of half-a-dozen you can generally find one good one. In New South Wales and Victoria, where

the character of the country admits of hunting, there are packs of foxhounds which afford good sport to those who enjoy a gallop over a stiff country. The Melbourne hounds hunt the stag or draw the scrub coverts for wild dogs or kangaroo, but in most countries the scarcity of 'the necessary animal' obliges sportsmen to content themselves with a drag, which is trailed by a well-mounted horseman, who leads his field over a succession of stiff posts and rails or flying jumps. The hounds travel over the pasture-fields at a great pace; it requires a man to be well mounted to keep with the pack. An ordinary animal would be altogether out of place in such company.

To use his hind legs.

Most of the horses ridden by farmers and stock-drivers may fairly be classed as hunters, for a gallop with the greyhounds or a chase after a kangaroo often terminates the day's work at up-country stations. From these causes there is no lack of horses capable of carrying men to hounds, but whether it is the effect of the climate or the result of light breeding, there are comparatively few that might be considered valuable as weight-carriers.

In Victoria red deer have been imported from home, and have provided some excellent runs for the drag-hounds. Here is an account of an exciting scene which took place last season :—

The stag (which had been imported from Lord Derby's herd at Knowsley), finding that he could not shake off the hounds, turned to the left towards the Saltwater River, and rushing down a precipitous and stony approach to the river, he instantly took soil in very deep water, with the pack clustering round him. It was extremely difficult for horses to get to where the stag took soil, but by careful leading Mr. Alfred Watson, who was acting master, and the whips got to the river, which was flooded and running a torrent, and here was witnessed one of the most gallant and daring exploits I have ever seen.

Finding that the stag refused to leave the water, and that the hounds could not be whipped off, Mr. Alfred Watson deliberately forced his horse into the rushing torrent, where he instantly sank, and, on coming to the surface, the horse and rider were swept down the current, rendering it necessary for Mr. Watson to part company with his steed and to swim for his life, encumbered as he was with his hunting-boots and heavy clothing. However, he got out at one side of the river, while the horse landed on the opposite side.

One would suppose that such an experience would have been sufficient to cool the courage of any man, but Mr. Watson had no sooner reached the bank of the river than he divested himself of the heavy portion of his dress, took hold of a rope, swam out through the raging torrent, roped the stag, and drove off the hounds, but the current was so strong that he could not hold on by the rope, and was forced to drop it and leave the water. However, his courage and intrepidity were the means of securing the animal, for a little later on the rope was reached from the bank, and the stag was landed and placed in the van.

Hunting in Australia began in the days when English troops and English officers were quartered there with very little occupation and plenty of leisure. The dingo or wild dog of Australia, like his congener the jackal of India, made an excellent substitute for the English fox. Here is an account of a run early in the fifties of this century:—

Mr. FitzRoy's hounds had a brilliant run on Saturday last, the 5th of June. The fixture was Vineyard, the seat of H. Macarthur, Esq.; the hour 5 A.M. On being thrown into cover, the hounds almost immediately unkenneled a fine dingo, which made off at a good pace along the north bank of the river towards Kissing Point.

Owing to the dryness of the ground the scent was not very good, but after a slight check the pack hit it off again on the swampy land near the river, carrying it breast high through Mrs. Bowerman's grounds, and across alternate scrub and cleared land till they reached the cross road to Pennant Hill Wharf. Here renard, hard pressed, turned his head northward, and skirting the road gave the field—most of whom had lost ground in the dense bush—an opportunity to retrieve leeway by racing up this woodland lane. Close at his brush the pack pushed him across the Paramatta road and through a long rough dingle, without giving him a moment's breathing time, into a large grass paddock of forty or fifty acres, thinly dotted with acacia bushes, the horsemen charging several stiffish flights of rails crossing the country at right angles with the dingle, until dingo, hounds, and field together reached the paddock above mentioned, in the middle of which the pack fairly coursed up to him and pulled him down, not a single hound having lost his place. A party of farming people who were working in a field hard by, hearing the whoo-whoop! joined in the ceremony of breaking up, and appeared highly delighted at this realisation in Australia of the good old field sports of the mother country.

This capital run occupied twenty-six minutes; the pace in the low grounds was very fast, and the fences were of a less impracticable nature than is usual in this country. At one point a field of British fox-hunters found themselves in the somewhat uncommon predicament of thrusting through a dense scrub of burnt wattle-bushes about the height of hop-poles, to the great disfigurement of white leathers, and at another, charging at full cry over hedges of lemon and through alleys of orange trees laden with fruit.

As the worthy master trotted home through Paramatta with a white tagged brush peeping out of his pocket, the dingo's head hanging from the whipper-in's saddle, and the hounds following with blood-smeared muzzles, an old fellow, who looked like a retired earthstopper from the old country, exclaimed, 'Well, d—— me, but this looks like work.'

New Zealand hunting began in the primitive manner familiar to schoolboys, with the inauguration of paper hunts by the officers quartered in the colony during the Maori wars. Hares were shortly after imported and multiplied at a rapid rate; they were followed by three couple of harriers brought by the doctor of one of the trading ships, who happened to be of

sporting instincts, and in 1874 a regular pack was formed. There are now eleven packs of hounds in New Zealand, but since the white man on his arrival found no four-footed creature other than a small rat, and the sheep farmers stoutly resist the introduction of any flesh-eating animal (except stoats), it is necessary to have recourse to the timid hare. These hares are stout, straight goers; with a good scent and no checks they usually give a run of from twenty to thirty minutes, during which time they go six miles, but twice last year (1890) the Ashburton hounds had runs of forty minutes, with hardly a check, and as near as could be calculated got over twelve miles of country. These hares when killed were very fine; neither ringed, but went straight away with a good galloping scent; their weight was estimated at fully 12 lb. Hares shot in this district average 10 lb. in weight, and many weigh up to 12, 12½, and even 13 lb. Quite the most noticeable feature in New Zealand hunting is the wire fencing, and the manner in which the sport is carried on despite this supposed insurmountable obstacle.

In all new countries the barbed wire, which is increasingly coming into use in England, is found to be at once the cheapest and most effectual fence against horned stock. In New Zealand it is used from one end to the other of the colony; for though in the bush-covered districts, where the timber has had to be felled, burnt, and cleared, it has been found inexpensive to utilise part of it for fencing, on the Canterbury plains, where there is no bush, wire is by far the most commonly employed.

It is precisely in this wire district that hunting chiefly flourishes. Many of the settlers are the younger sons of English country gentlemen, and one pack is hunted by an ardent sportsman, the son and heir of a well-known owner of racehorses in England. The country, moreover, is for the most part flat, and the terrible hills and gullies which characterise New Zealand scenery are absent from the district round Canterbury.

The account given in the local paper of the wind-up of the Ashburton hunt for the season of 1890 is couched in the following businesslike terms :—

The concluding meet for the season of the Ashburton hounds was held at Elgin on Saturday, when there was a fairly numerous field. A hare was found in a paddock near the bridge, and the field were treated to a fifteen minutes' run over stiff wire country, when the hounds threw up their heads. After a little delay they got on the scent again, but the first fence,[1] one of high barbed wire, was only negotiated by four of the field. This run lasted about twenty-two minutes, puss being killed in a paddock near the bridge. Plenty of jumping was had, fences being numerous, and some of them very stiff. One of them, a straggly fence with a ditch on one side, accounted for no less than five spills, none of which, fortunately, were serious. The hounds were then taken to one of Mr. Butterick's paddocks, on the plains. A hare was soon found, which gave a run of exactly fifty minutes, through a bare wire country, being ultimately run into on a tussock road, most of the field having followed straight. This concluded the hunting season of 1890, the average of kills for which is exactly one for each meet.

The season was not a very good one, the ground having been very dry from want of rain. The best run was seven miles straight without a check over the stiffest wire country. There were a good many empty saddles, but for twenty minutes hounds were racing. On another day the Ashburton hounds had a three-quarters of an hour's gallop with a kill, not very fast but over a country every fence of which was of wire, or had wire in it, some a foot or so above the gorse hedge, and yet there was not a single fall. One gentleman who rides sixteen stone was always with hounds and first in at the death.

It is a pleasure to see with what excellent judgment and nerve many of the young men ride to hounds. You see no crowding and close following one on another, as experience teaches that the worst falls are caused by wire that has been pulled out a little way by a horse ahead of one, and leaving a loop for one to jump into. Most of the hedges are of gorse, and blind, so that there really is more danger of bad falls here than

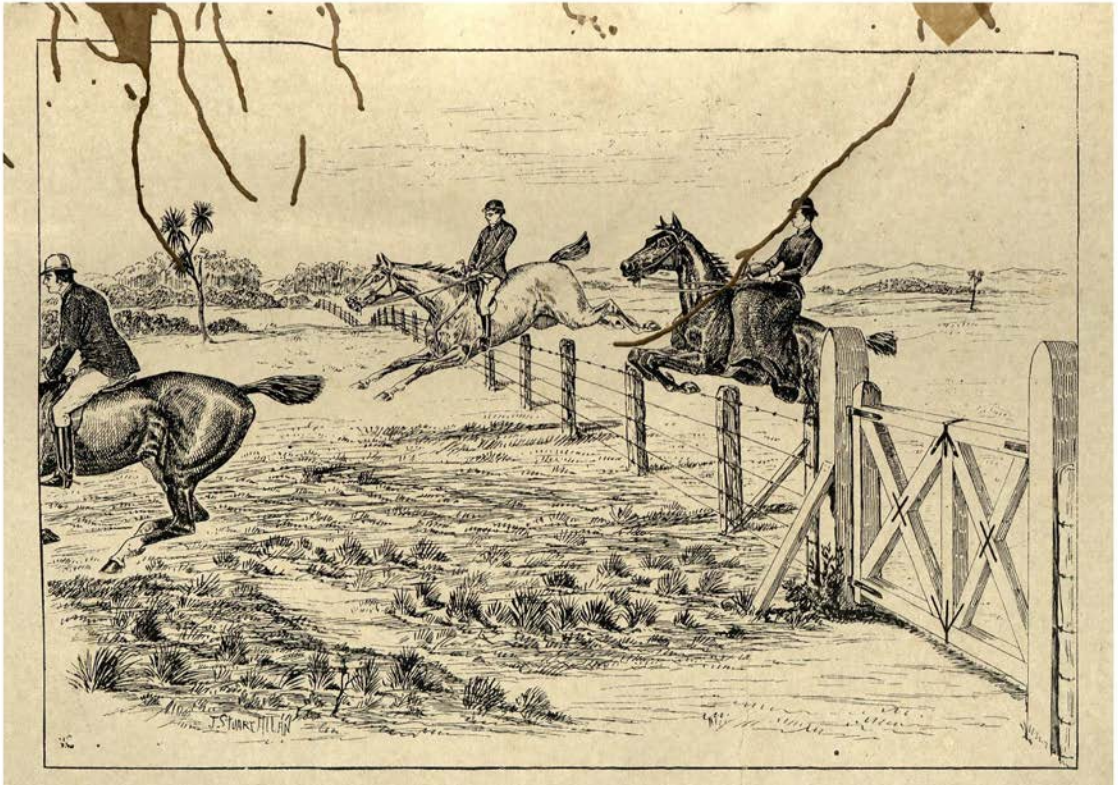
[1] I have had this fence measured and find it was over five feet.—O.

in England, where after Christmas you can generally see both sides of a fence.

The Master of the Ashburton Hounds says : 'I have twice jumped into water-races and once into a gravel pit, fortunately without much damage on either occasion, but with wire you usually see where you are going to land, so that, for my own part, I greatly prefer the wire fences to the great overgrown uncut gorse hedges, ten and twelve feet high, that you have to charge through, without the least idea of what you are landing into, which are the principal fences in the centre of the north island. Even at the end of a run, when horses get pumped, though they may be careless over timber, they never take any liberties with wire, always clearing it. A horse seems to have a natural dread of getting into wire ; they will often baulk at it, but when they do jump they do their best to get over. A man has to ride carefully, of course, never rushing or flurrying horses, so that they can give their whole attention to what they are doing.'

It is always advisable to lunge horses over wire for the first few times ; it makes them more independent and careful, and if they get a fall they damage themselves only, and probably much less, with no weight on their backs, than would have been the case with a rider up. One precaution taken in New Zealand is to shoe hunters with tips only, let in flush with the hoof at the heel ; there have been one or two nasty tangles and falls by the wire catching in the caulking of the ordinary shoe.

Let those croakers who prophesy that the increasing use of wire for fencing in England is the doom of fox-hunting, and that it will soon be as much a sport of the past as wolf-hunting, take heart of grace from the experience of the Master of Hounds whom I have already quoted, who has publicly given it as his opinion that wire fencing alone makes it possible to continue hunting in a country where every farmer's first consideration is his pocket, and where a democratic public opinion would resent any attempt of the few to enjoy sport at the expense of the many.



A HUNTING JUMP IN NEW ZEALAND

It was some time before hunting-men in New Zealand became convinced that the danger of jumping wire was not greater than that of attempting any other stiff fence. In the early days of Canterbury hunting it was looked upon as madness to put your horse at an open wire fence, though sometimes a wire running through a gorse fence, if low enough down, was disregarded. Then it was necessary to choose carefully the line of country, and to run a drag over a line where nothing but post-and-rail, hedge, bank or ditch could stop a horse. In the Wellington district at the present day, where, owing to the mountainous nature of the country, hunting has not been able to flourish, what little is done is over a carefully selected line where the top bars of the fences are removed. Advantage is taken of the propinquity of a race stand, or the neighbourhood of a railway line, from which the townspeople can see the whole course, or, better still, accompany the 'hunt' in a special train.

When the Canterbury men first began hunting, though the wire fences were cut or avoided, riders had more falls than they have had in any one day since. The first division made a gap, and then all that could galloped through it, till a good-sized gig might have accompanied the tail-end of the field. The farmers were at first good-natured, but soon began to grumble; so one or two of the bolder spirits resolved to train their horses to jump wire. These gentlemen soon showed that horses could be ridden over wire just as safely as they had previously negotiated the post and rails. Their horses were considered prodigies of cleverness, but the master avers that during the last few seasons these paragons would never have been alone, however high the wire. During the last two seasons *M.* has more than covered the amount of damage done to fences. During the same period, though he has never once let hounds get away from him, the Master of the Ashburton pack has had but one fall over wire. He says:—

> We think very little of ordinary wire, but the barbed and double barbed—a fence with barbed wire each side of a bank, sometimes six feet apart and four feet high—take a good lot of jumping.

So one would imagine !

It is part of the duties of the gentleman who has for several years acted as Secretary to this hunt to see that no 'gap-making' goes on.

Fortunately (says the Master) most of our fences have wire in them, but when that is not there, to prevent the horses walking through fences, a thick-set, determined figure (that of Mr. Secretary) may be seen at any weak place hunting-crop in hand, and it would need something bolder than a gap-hunter to crawl through or damage that particular spot. No gates are left open and no stock interfered with when he is about, and many unfortunates have had to thank him for catching their lost mounts.

Before wire fencing became universal, horses were not trained to jump 'big ;' the result was constant breaking down of post-and-rail fences, and consequent escape of cattle and horses from the enclosures. The colonial settler, who certainly has not emigrated for any purpose other than to make money by farming, would ill brook these dilapidations, and the cost of the damages, not only for broken fences, but for crops eaten, trodden down, and destroyed, and for running great distances to recover escaped stock and horses, was too great for a young and not very numerous hunt to afford.

Now all the horses that are broken as hunters have their earliest schooling over wire, and take to it as easily as to post and rails.

Small horses, well bred, seem to take to wire jumping with most success. Sometimes such a horse will jump the first wire fence it sees as cleverly and carefully as any subsequent one.

The Touchstone blood is the strain which seems to run through the best jumpers in New Zealand, though some first-rate performers have been got by one of the Prickwillows, the well-known Norfolk strain of trotters. One of these was so good that a gentleman who had hunted a pack in New Zealand bought the horse and took him home, but he unfortunately did not survive the voyage.

Hunters trained to jump wire and post-and-rail fences are difficult to keep in any field or paddock, as every enclosure, large and small, is termed at the antipodes.

To restrain what is locally termed a 'breachy' horse it is not an uncommon practice to put a surcingle round the animal; one end of a rope is passed between the fore-legs, under the surcingle, and tied to the other part of the rope outside of one foreleg, while the other end is knotted round the neck of the horse. The rope is drawn just short enough to restrain the horse from raising the head higher than the withers. It does not interfere with grazing or drinking, but keeps the head so low that the horse will not try to jump a fence.

There are many hunters who would show a man all that was to be seen of every run in New Zealand, and over any country in which hunting is at all possible, but I have not heard of any which for constant reliable fencing excels a little horse called The Flea. One of its most remarkable performances was over one of the least inviting in-and-out doubles that was ever ridden at. On the near side a low bank of sods, topped by four strands of wire, with a ditch on both sides; the landing was a drop into a green lane, not more than a chain wide, having a 'barb' fence of seven wires on the other side. There was no time to hesitate, and The Flea's reputation was at stake. To have ridden fast at the bank and wire would have meant a crash against the opposite fence, if not landing right into it. Carefully steadying The Flea, her rider, a lady, gave her her head as she came under the fence, and just clearing the ditch on the lane side, she was able to pull The Flea together before taking the post and wire on the other side, and had the satisfaction of finding herself alone with the pack now skimming like a flock of pied seagulls across the grass paddock on the other side of the lane.

Looking over her shoulder The Flea's rider saw the hard-riding New Zealanders crane at the double and turn to find some easier egress, all save one, a professional roughrider schooling a young steeplechaser. This man, seeing a lady

safely over crammed his horse at the bank and wire, clearing it in good style, but only to crash in the next stride like a colliding steamer into the post and rail. His horse could not rise at the second fence, and it was some time before his bruises and his shaking would permit of his getting to hounds. When at length he rejoined his field, and was able to congratulate the young lady on her safety, she replied with quiet concern for his welfare: 'You mustn't follow me, or you may have an accident, for you must remember mine is an exceptional horse.'

The Flea.

The Australian racing-men are certainly of opinion that they can afford to give their horses a higher trial between the flags over a steeplechase course than we are accustomed to put them to at home. At none of the leading meetings are there any natural fences, all are specially made up for the purpose. I give the height and particulars of the fences over a four-mile course in which the runners have to take the first six fences three times, and the remaining four twice, making twenty fences in all.

First, a brush furze fence 5 ft. 6 in. to 5 ft. 10 in.; next, a

ditch with a bank having two rails on the top 3 ft. 8 in., and then another flight of rails brushed with broom, making a double ; the next jump is a wide ditch, with a bank about 3 ft. 8 in. high, followed by a sod bank about 3 ft. 6 in., with a wide ditch on the take-off side, and then a brushed hurdle 3 ft. 6 in. in height ; to this succeeds a double, of which the first fence is made of a four-foot brushed hurdle, and is followed by a flight of hurdles. The next is a very awkward place, consisting of a bank topped with furze, having a two-railed fence sloping up

Crash in the next stride.

the bank from a ditch, rising six inches to a foot above the bank, and brushed with furze ; the ditch on the take-off side is very wide ; and finally a 3 ft. 9 in. bank, very broad, with a wide ditch beyond it.

Mr. Saunders, one of the members of the New Zealand 'House of Commons,' from whose admirable book, 'Our Horses,' I am indebted for much of my information, relates a story of the manner in which he satisfied his curiosity as to the way in which a particularly docile, useful, all-round animal, named Grace Darling, which he hired from the Maories, was

broken, and how he resolved to go to the 'pah' or village whence the mare that elicited so much admiration was brought. He says :—

In reply to our inquiries they told us that they knew very little about horses, that they had no stable, no yard, no whip, no straps, no breaking tackle of any kind, but they would show us next morning how they caught and broke in Grace Darling.

The chief then gave orders to the women to dress a little native flax, and to plait two very thick strong mats of undressed flax, the use of which in horse-breaking we could not understand at all. The women went to work very cheerfully, and were evidently much amused at the curiosity of the 'whity man' as to the use of such mats for horse-breaking, and in bursts of laughter seemed to enjoy the thought of what we were to be shown in the morning.

The next morning the herd of about fifty horses were driven into an adjoining paddock, and all but two were turned out of the paddock through a gate and across the river. One of the two that had been kept back at the river gate was an old quiet thing that was easily caught, the other appeared a wild unhandled colt. The herd of horses ran up the river on the north side, and the old horse was ridden up inside the paddock at nearly the same pace on the south side, followed, of course, by the colt. Near the house they were let out of a gateway, and went near the river, opposite to where the herd had been stopped. The women and children now surrounded the old and young horse. The ground became softer as they neared the river, and we thought that both horses would get swamped. The boy got off the old horse and led him to where a woman was standing with the strong thick mats. It was a strip of bulrush swamp, which is always soft at the bottom. The woman laid down the mats and shifted them to the front of the horse as he walked alternately on each. Attracted by his companions in full sight on the other side of the river, and deceived by the success of the old horse on his flying bridge of mats, the colt took the same direction, when his legs disappeared in the swamp, and all further progress for him was rendered impossible.

Rarey's plan is nothing to this. There were no legs swinging about to hurt any one ; the colt could not batter his head on the ground ; the very babies could jump on his back with perfect safety, and they were not slow to avail themselves of the opportunity. Their little naked feet danced along him from mane to tail; the women sat

on him; the men got astride him, and put a little log under his tail, and handled his head and ears. When all had had something to do with him, and a great deal to say to him, the chief produced a very ugly-looking overcoat, made of rough shaggy flax, and took it to the colt's head. He first rubbed his head and body all over with it, then beat or dusted him with it. The women shook their dresses in his face and put their hands over his eyes. The chief opened his mouth and put his hands in it, and sat on his neck.

Two men were now put to dig a road for the colt to get out, and others to fetch brushwood. Whilst they did this, the chief put a

The very babies could jump on his back.

piece of long, strong flax fibre into the colt's mouth and tied it loosely round the lower jaw. Another piece was put over his head and tied to the mouth piece, so as to form a complete bridle. A long line of the raw flax leaf was tied to the loop round the jaw, for lunging line.

As soon as a few feet of the soft black earth was removed from the front of the colt, and brushwood and clay substituted, the old horse was brought up to the river end of the road with a naked boy on him, and the colt driven after him, the chief holding the flax line. The boy took the old horse into a deep quiet part of the river

and brought him round again. The colt followed, getting a complete wash, which he much needed. They were then taken down the river bed to the gate, where the horses had been first separated, and entered the paddock, after which the old horse was taken away.

The colt was now half led and half lunged, and was kept moving, not with a whip, but with a tree called a 'gin-tree,' which grows twenty feet long without a branch, and not much more than an inch in diameter at the butt, with thick narrow leaves at the end more than a foot long.

This was first shaken at him, then put on him, then under him, then between his hind legs, and when he would no longer take any notice of it, a short stick was used in the same way, and then the hands.

The old flax overcoat or cape was again produced and was used in the same way that it had been in the swamp, after which nothing seemed to alarm the colt. A saddle was put on, as easily as on an old horse, the old ugly cape was fastened to it, then a number of other soft materials, and finally one of the barefooted boys that had danced upon him in the swamp. No attempt was made to throw anything off, and we were obliged to confess that we had never seen a wild horse broken so thoroughly and so well in so short a time, and that without a scratch or a single whip mark.

The same sensible treatment was followed up. All the tribe had something to do with the colt. Small branches were tied to his tail, and then larger ones that dragged on the ground, until it was impossible to frighten him with anything, and we saw at once why Grace Darling had hauled the logs so quietly.

Another common practice of the Maories is to ride an old horse into a river and lead an unbroken colt after him. As soon as they get into the middle of the river, or say up to the girths, they jump on to the back of the colt, who is unable to get his head down in order to buck, on account of the water. This method is best adapted to summer weather and Maori costume.

Horses in New Zealand are specially trained to ford rivers. There was a few years ago a noted old horse who could be relied on to convey a man across the Buller River in the highest flood, and who, when released on the other side, would quietly

walk back to the stream of his own accord and swim home again. Mr. Saunders says :—

In many parts of New Zealand horses are kept by the Government for the express purpose of taking travellers across rivers in which fords will often change every week, and it is beautiful to see how bold, and yet how sagaciously cautious such horses often become. 'If you have got the sense to let the old horse alone he will take you over all right' is the marching order usually given to the traveller mounted on one of these horses, to cross a river in which no man and no boat could live, and in a country where more colonists have been drowned in fresh water than in any other part of the world. Too rapid and too full of timber and rocks for any boat, too benumbingly cold for the best swimmer and the best human lungs in the world to live in them a quarter of an hour, these rivers, flooded with snow water, can often only be crossed by a very powerful, surefooted, courageous horse, that knows where to swim and where to walk, or by one that has a rider on his back that can show him and consult him by turns.

Those who have horses for sale, as a rule can afford neither the time to break them thoroughly themselves nor the expense of employing others to do so; the consequence is, that few horses are good hacks or have perfect manners. As a rule, they have tender mouths, but being ridden in plain snaffle bits will stand having their mouths pulled about to an extraordinary extent. Several horses which I have ridden hung on their bits, or pulled in a snaffle, but when ridden in a double hunting bridle showed that they possessed naturally delicate mouths, and were perfectly light in hand. It is too common for those who break horses to be rather desirous of showing their undoubted skill in backing and sitting a restive horse than in turning out a well-broken quiet animal. Many a buck-jumper would never have learnt the habit had he been carefully trained to carry a saddle before he was mounted.

Often the horse is taken up one day and mounted the next, thus producing an inveterate buck-jumper, whose evil propensities will return after each time he is turned out to grass.

Colonists ride very short, and either leave a horse with a

loose head or ride with their hands close up to the bit on either side, an attitude which is certainly not graceful, but in which they seem able to maintain an exceptionally firm seat. This firmness of seat is the great aim which they have in view; if a horse falls, instead of falling clear of him, without, if possible, letting go of the reins, a colonial rider endeavours to part company only at the last possible moment. The knee-pads of the colonial saddle are an assistance in attaining this object, besides affording support when descending a steep hill. But many experienced riders are discarding the knee-pads in favour of saddles made after the English pattern.

Of cart-horses the Clydesdale is the most popular breed in Australasia, and it is probable that the number in New Zealand does not fall far short of that in Scotland itself. At a small country show held in a very fertile district, inhabited principally by Scotchmen, I have seen in the cart-horse classes over sixty entries, of which forty-four were mares or fillies, seven geldings and ten stallions, the whole being a collection which few country shows in Scotland could have approached.

For the last thirty years the New Zealand farmer has been breeding draught-horses of a superior quality. At that time a number of Shire horses were imported. These have been constantly crossed with the Clydesdale with excellent results, and though there are a certain number of pure Clydesdales, the bulk of the so-called Clydesdales in the colony have some of the Shire strain in them.

The causes which combine to give a tendency to weediness among the horses of Australia seem to operate to some extent in the draught-horses also. After a few generations there is a tendency in that warm dry climate for cart-horses to get lighter, with less hair on their legs, and finer.

Some of the pure-bred Clydesdales are quite equal to those which may be seen in Scotland. Yet the prices which they command are trifling compared with those which would be obtained at home. The very best are bred from horses which have been noted prize-winners in England, but will not fetch

more than 350*l.*, where at home they would easily command 1,000*l.*, and the same proportion holds good for young stock.

Three-year-old strong, active cart-horses, which would be well bought in England for 60*l.* to 70*l.*, do not in New Zealand fetch more than 20*l.* to 30*l.*

The transplanted cart-horse seems to acquire the strength to do heavy work at a great rate and without receiving anything like the care which we bestow upon them at home. The authority which I have previously quoted states that

> On a large farm, on which twelve thousand acres are cultivated, in the south of New Zealand, these horses work in teams of six, drawing a treble furrow plough, and turning over five acres of good wheat land, six inches deep, in eight hours. The lands are more than a mile long, and the pace so fast that men cannot be got to walk behind the horses. This is met by a simple contrivance of a little one-wheeled carriage, fixed behind the plough, in such a position that a man can ride within reach of his steering handle. The teams start at 8 A.M., and leave the field at 5 P.M., getting a feed from nosebags and water from buckets between twelve and one. No whips are used or carried; the slowest horses are put behind, where they may be touched with the reins, but that is rarely necessary, and there are far more complaints of the horses being too fast than too slow. Each horse in the winter gets eighteen pounds of oats and fourteen pounds of cut straw a day, with a pick of rough grass on Sundays, or any convenient opportunity. First-class oats on the farm are only worth about one shilling and fourpence a bushel. During the coldest and wettest months of winter the horses are worked within reach of a stable, but during the greater part of the year they are turned out in rugs made of canvas lined with felt, in which they do quite as well, if not better.

In considering the relative excellence of the horses of the two countries it is impossible to express any decided opinion as to the relative speed of English and Australian racehorses. The test of time would be utterly misleading. The race-courses in Australia are mostly flat, there is no Tattenham Corner, no hill in the race for the Victorian Derby. On English courses a race is frequently run 'through the dirt' in very

heavy ground, often in heavy rain, sometimes in a snowstorm. At Flemington the going is always 'on the top of the ground,' and that difference alone is quite sufficient to account for the few seconds' difference in the average time between the English and Victorian Derbies.

Between the average time of the Epsom Derby and the Derby in New South Wales for the past ten years there is a difference only of the smallest fraction, the English is nearly 2 min. 45½ secs., while the average of ten Flemington Derbies is two seconds better, or 2 min. 43½ secs.

Until some Australian crack has measured speed with English horses in some of our big races, or an Australian youngster, having achieved success on the English turf, returns to run in his native land, or until an English sportsman, attracted by the value of some totalisator-aided stake and the prospect of a good sale in Australia, sends out a horse who would be accurately handicapped with the English cracks of the day, we shall have no 'line' through which to judge. It appears to me that, considering the far greater number of horses in training, the wide range of blood which every owner of a brood mare in England has to select from, and the large sums of money there lavished on all the accessories of a training establishment, it is reasonable to suppose that the Australian animal has not yet acquired superiority over his English compeer.

In Australia, as in England, there is a tendency to curtail the length of races; nevertheless, on the average, the length of colonial courses is greater than at home. It is probable that the *forte* of the Australian racehorse lies in his staying powers. I have been particularly struck with the general leg soundness of colonial horses; not only an absence of curbs and spavins, but a freedom from 'bursal enlargements' which usually figure so conspicuously on an English veterinary surgeon's certificate. I attribute this entirely to the great number of days and nights in the year during which the colonial horse is turned out; even those who habitually keep harness-horses in a stable make a point of giving them a run during part of the year.

Many horses in training, especially steeplechasers, are daily turned out for a couple of hours in a field where the grass has been closely cropped down. Trainers have great faith in the efficacy of this practice to freshen up the legs of their horses. Even hunters in regular work on the days when they are not hunted are commonly allowed to run in a paddock with a fawn rug covered by one of the common canvas rugs of the colony. Though clipped or singed, no ill effect seems to result from the practice, provided the horse has his regular feeds of corn given to him. It is certainly not to the treatment which the common hack of the country receives when in use that this freedom from unsoundness is to be ascribed, for the canter or 'lope' is the invariable pace for an Australian hack, and it is always a case of ' 'ammer, 'ammer, 'ammer, 'ammer on the 'ard 'igh road,' and in the mountainous parts of the country some of the roads are iron in their hardness.

When considering the difference between colonial hack and harness horses, and those used for similar purposes in England, great allowance must be made for the appearance and condition of the former.

The extreme scarcity and dearness of labour make it necessary that the farmer should himself do what grooming and tending is necessary; mares and foals are allowed to roam in the fields all the winter without the shelter to which we accustom them, even in the warmer European latitudes, and the feed they receive is entirely the grass they can pick up in the paddocks. In the north island of New Zealand, owing to the warm winter and frequent summer rain, this fortunately grows all the year round. The result is to produce an animal hardy though not showy, to escape the unsoundness of wind and blemish of broken knees so often found in English horses, though, on the other hand, a result of the use of barb wire is to mark for life many a young horse with ugly scars and scratches.

All the disadvantages, both in breeding and rearing, from which the foal suffers in Australia but escapes in England, could equally be avoided in Australia by a mere expenditure

of money and labour. The materials are to hand ; it is but a question of what the marketable article will bring to determine how much shall be spent on its production. The racehorse, upon the breeding and preparation of which expense is not spared, strikes a new-comer from England as equal in condition, and generally larger in frame, than those he left on the racecourses of Newmarket, Epsom, and Ascot, while he is impressed with the higher trial to which they are subjected in running long distances at an early age, and in travelling over steeplechase courses where the manufactured fences are more formidable than those provided in England.

In the hunting-field he finds that the barbed wire and split logs compel horses to jump bolder and bigger than at home, while he is struck by the number and class of the population who never think of going out except on horseback. He misses only in the capitals of Australia the smart pairs of stepping carriage-horses, to which his eye is accustomed in Piccadilly, the Champs Elysées, and the Prater ; but, on the other hand, he remarks how general is the average excellence of the horses in hansom cabs and public conveyances.

The conclusion which he must inevitably arrive at is that the Australian soil and climate are capable of producing from the parent stock any class of horse, for which such a demand may exist as will make its production and preparation for market a remunerative undertaking.

CHAPTER VIII

EARLY HISTORY OF HORSEMANSHIP

By E. L. Anderson

THE FIRST RIDERS—THE BIT

Until quite recently we have been taught to believe that Western Asia was the first home of the horse, and that the animal was probably domesticated by the Shemitic tribes who poured into the Euphrates valley at the beginning of those times when our knowledge of history has its source. Late discoveries, however, show us that at a period long anterior to the earliest records of Shumir and Accad horses were known to mankind in various parts of Europe. Naturalists have described these animals as forming three races: *Equus fossilis*, *Equus speleus*, *Equus caballus*. The latter is the true horse of our times, the others appear to have differed very slightly, if at all, except in size, from the true horse, and they may have been prototypes, or varieties, or simply smaller examples of the true horse. Be this as it may, the remains of the horse of our times are found with those of the extinct mammals of the quaternary period; and, as far as I can discover, our horse has an antiquity as great as that of any existing quadruped.

The primitive man who dwelt in rock-shelters and caves, and who is supposed to have flourished in that division of the world's history called the 'reindeer period,' certainly used the horse for food. In the caves of the Dordogne in France, in Switzerland, and in other countries, great quantities of the bones

of the horse—chiefly of the race called *Equus speleus*, but sometimes those of *Equus caballus*—have been found, under circumstances which prove that they were placed there long before the times of which we have any historical knowledge, and that their presence was due to a primitive race of men of whom we know little.

In the Swiss lake dwellings the bones of the horse are rarely found under circumstances that suggest a date earlier than the bronze age, but during and after the bronze age the true horse was well known to the ancient Swiss.

It is in the caves of the Dordogne that we find the earliest representations of the horse, scratched upon the surface of the rock, or carved upon pieces of horn and bone ; and these rude sketches often show much skill in the prehistoric artists.

Between the times of the cave-dwellers of the Dordogne and the earliest accepted fixed date (3800 B.C.) of the appearance of the horse in history thousands of years must have passed ; and it does not seem to me that it is probable that during these ages, when a constant though slow improvement was going on in the social condition of the peoples of Middle Europe, no effort was made to domesticate an animal so well known as the horse.

When the horse makes its appearance in the valley of the Euphrates the wheeled-chariot had come into use, for Sargon I., king of Agadé, whose records are ascribed to about 3,800 years before our era, was rolled along in a bronze chariot. How many centuries had passed from the time the horse was first put to service before the perfect chariot was developed?

It is true that the ox might have been employed in the evolution of the wheeled vehicle, but the ox is too slow for war or chase, and the man who first dared to measure his strength against the horse was a warrior and a hunter, and probably agriculture received little or no attention for ages after man began the domestication of animals. I do not lay any stress upon the point 'that horses must first have been used for riding, because roads would be necessary for wheeled vehicles ;' for if the horse had been first domesticated in Western Asia, the vast plains of

that region made roads unnecessary, and we know that the Assyrians and the Babylonians did not wait for roads upon which to take their chariots. I have other reasons, which I will explain later, for believing that the horse was first used for riding.

The Egyptians undoubtedly received the horse from their Shemitic conquerors, the Hyksos, or shepherd kings. The earliest known representation of the horse in Egypt is of the eighteenth dynasty, a *tessera* now in the British Museum, representing a chariot with two horses, completely harnessed, and ascribed to the reign of Amenhotep I. The first mention of the horse upon the monuments is made in the inscriptions of Thothmes I., his successor, who captured a chariot and two horses in a Mesopotamian campaign, and gives a lasting record of the glorious event. In Genesis xlvii. 17, we read that Joseph, who served a Hyksos king, 'gave them bread in exchange for horses.' After the reign of Thothmes I. the horse frequently appears upon the monuments of Egypt.

Although we are assured that the people of Western Asia had employed the horse long before its use was known to the Egyptians, we have not yet found any very early representations of the horse upon the monuments of the Euphrates valley. The earliest figure of the horse upon the Assyrian remains belongs probably to the ninth century before our era. But, as I have said, the records of king Sargon, and other proofs, show us that the horse had long been used in Asia before it was known in Egypt.

The probabilities, so far as we have any evidences, are that the Egyptians received the horse from their Shemitic conquerors; these latter received it from those warlike tribes which, for want of a better name, we must call the early Aryans; these last-named having received the gift, through the lake-dwellers of Switzerland and a long line of unknown and unknowable donors, from the cave-dwellers of Central Europe.

Had the primitive man of Central Europe not been active, hardy, and energetic, he could not have maintained life under

the difficult circumstances in which he was placed. We are told by De Quatrefages that the cave-dwellers of the Dordogne were of a race '*belle et intelligente*,' so that as early as the quaternary period we find a people having a knowledge of the horse, and able no doubt to subjugate it. Can we not, with no very great stretch of fancy, picture one of these strong and hardy men vaulting upon the back of a captured horse, and, with the aptitude for dominating animals that must have been developed by his mode of life, taming the wild will of the steed by a will wilder and more determined than its own? The knowledge of the strength and fleetness of the horse must have suggested to such a man the possibility of bringing this speed and strength into his service; and we cannot believe that such an idea should long lie dormant, or that it remained for the Shemitic races of the Euphrates valley, who looked upon the horse as a mere beast for draught, to bring into subjection an animal whose capabilities for nobler purposes had been known for thousands of years.

The bit, as we understand that instrument, could not have made its appearance until the 'age of bronze.' When the horse is first shown upon the Egyptian monuments, the bit, the bridle, the harness, and the chariot are complete—the bit usually shown upon the Egyptian remains, and the same thing may be said of the pictures upon the Assyrian monuments, having a plain mouthpiece with cheek-pieces. The early horsemen undoubtedly employed a halter of raw hide, or a thong of that material passed through the mouth, to direct and control their steeds.

For many ages the bit was, I think, a plain bar, or perhaps later a snaffle. We shall find no evidences of any change in the form until we come to consider the horsemanship of the inventive Greeks.

The bridles of the early horsemen of Egypt and of Asia were highly ornamented, with tassels, crests, and embroideries; and the furniture generally was rich and elaborate.

The saddle, as we understand it, was not known to the

Egyptian, the Assyrian, or the Persian. A cloth, often fringed and otherwise decorated, was fastened by a girth to give the rider a seat. The size of this cloth varies; in some cases it covers the body of the horse, and sometimes it is large enough only to serve its actual purpose. But no particular fashion appears to belong to any particular era. Skins of wild beasts were sometimes used for saddles, and the Asiatics appear to have sometimes protected their horses by a kind of leathern armour.

The Egyptians cut the mane of the horse, but the peoples of Asia permitted the mane to grow at length, though both it and the tail were often confined in bands.

The stirrup was not known to any of those whom we designate as the ancients, nor was the spur used by those of whom we have been speaking. The wand and the thonged whip were used to stimulate their steeds.

The Jews employed the horse but little until the time of Solomon, when that king, having married the daughter of one of the Pharaohs, received from Egypt a great number of horses.

THE GREEKS—THE SPUR

The horse was probably introduced into Greece by the warlike tribes upon its northern border, for we first hear of the Thessalians excelling in horsemanship, and they were for a long time the best horsemen among the Greeks.

The Colophians[1] formed a body of cavalry that proved invincible; their assistance was eagerly sought in war, and they carried victory to the arms of their allies.

After the Messenian wars the Spartans[2] recognised the importance of a mounted force, and had their youth instructed in the art of horsemanship by competent teachers (Eniocharatai).

The Athenians were slow to adopt cavalry. Previously to the Persian invasion of Greece[3] the number of horse soldiers belonging to the Athenians was but ninety-six; but this body

[1] Potter. [2] *Ibid.* [3] Smith, *Clas. Dict.*

was soon increased to three hundred, and shortly after Athens supported twelve hundred heavy cavalry and an equal number of mounted archers. The horse of the heavy cavalry wore armour.

Horsemanship was held in high esteem among the Greeks, and to surpass in the exercise was considered praiseworthy and honourable. At the four sacred games horse races occupied a distinguished position; and we are told that, when the gods were competitors at the first Pythian solemnity, Pollux gained the prize in riding, for, on those short courses with their many turns, skill and address upon the part of the rider, rather than the fleetness of the steeds, gave the victory. These races were contested by riders mounted upon single horses, or by those who riding one horse led another to spring upon as the goal was reached. Chariot races were introduced in the XXV. Olympiad, and horse races, according to Guhl and Koner, in the XXXIII. Olympiad. Cicero[1] says, referring to a victor in boxing, that in his day the prize at the Olympic games was considered 'greater and more glorious than a triumph would be held at Rome.'

Not only was the successful aspirant for honours in the sacred games held worthy of the highest commendations, but he gave glory to his family and even to the city of his birth by his exploits.

As we have said, the credit of victory in the races at the sacred festivals was given to the rider for his tact and judgment, and the superiority of the animal he rode was not necessarily established: and although these exhibitions undoubtedly influenced the selection and the breeding of horses, for in many cases the better strains were mentioned, their first effect was to cultivate the courage and expertness of the horseman.

The Athenians elevated horsemanship to an art. Xenophon wrote a work upon the subject, founded on the treatise of Simo. Nothing further than this is known of the latter, but we have that of Xenophon, and when we consider it in connection with

[1] *Orat. pro Flacco*, xiii.

the representations of horsemen in the Greek sculpture, we must place the Greeks among the best riders of any age.

I think that those critics are in error who understand that by his instructions ('but with parted legs chiefly the upright position is to be kept') [1] Xenophon meant that the rider should take the extreme 'fork' seat; for not only would such a position be very insecure upon the simple saddles of the Greeks, but it is inconsistent with the graceful and firm positions exhibited by the marbles. From the sculptures and from Xenophon's description of the seat considered proper in his time,[2] I take it that the position of the Greek on horseback was the same as that now considered the best—the body upright, and the inside of the thighs taking as many points of contact with the horse as possible, while the legs, from the knee down, hang free. In his work upon cavalry [3] the Greek author gives instructions that seem to be incompatible with the seat upon the fork.

With this view of the seat Xenophon's system of horsemanship is perfectly consistent with the methods of the best modern writers, and in many cases it is recalled in reading Baucher's excellent work, particularly in the instructions for the grasp of the thighs and the natural bearing of the lower leg,[4] and in all that refers to the hand.

From the description that Xenophon gives of the bits in use at his time, I think that we must arrive at the conclusion that they had mouth-pieces made of flat links. Two bits were employed. The less severe one had a smooth chain mouth-piece [5] of varying width, depending upon the power required, that by the leverage of the branches forced the mouth open, and so compelled the horse to yield his jaw and give up all opposition to the hand. But this mouth-piece lay flat upon the tongue, and was easy to the horse when not operated upon by

[1] *Horsemanship*, chap. vii. sect. 5.
[2] Xenophon was born about 46 years after Pheidias.
[3] *Hipparchus*, chap. iii. sect. 14.
[4] '*Horsemanship*, chap. vii. sect. 6. [5] *Ibid.* chap. x. sect. 7.

the branches. This bit was sometimes furnished with pendants from the mouth-piece to distract the attention of the horse from the branches, which he would otherwise attempt to seize with his teeth. A chain passed under the jaws from the cheeks of this bit, to which was attached a leading-rein. The bit I have attempted to describe would be very smooth and easy to the horse if the rider's hand were light; but with long branches the leverage must have been very great, and the instrument a powerful one.

The second bit, placed lower in the mouth, was made of links, more or less roughened,[1] to have the effect of a saw-snaffle.

Other bits are recognised by Xenophon, but these were undoubtedly invented by the Greeks. Nothing similar to either, so far as I can discover, had ever been described or represented, and from the minute details given by this author, which are not, however, perfectly clear to us, they were probably of recent origin.

I cannot recall an instance in the sculptures of Egypt or of Western Asia where the horses bear themselves as if collected by the rider's heels. Whoever invented the spur, its use is first declared to us by the Greeks. It is not necessary that Xenophon should explain to us that the spur is to be applied 'to keep the hind-quarters from lagging,'[2] for the action and position of all the horses upon the Greek monuments assure us that they were trained with the spur.

What modern writer has given better advice, or in more succinct terms, for the standing leap than is to be found in chapter viii. section 7, of this early work upon horsemanship?—'to lean forward and give the horse his head as he rises for the leap, and to lean back and support him as he alights.' He recognises, too, the importance of a light hand; and the horse, according to his precepts, must not be permitted to hang upon the bit. When the headstrong steed attempts to

[1] *Horsemanship*, chap. x. sect. 8. [2] *Ibid.* chap. viii. section 5.

force the hand, the severe bit must be brought into play, 'in order that when the horse bears against it he may be hurt by its roughness, and consequently let it go; but when he finds it exchanged for the other he may be gratified with its smoothness, and whatever he has been trained to perform with the severe bit, he may also do with the light one. . . . But it is possible to vary the severe bit in every way, by relaxing or increasing the tension.'

In the lever bit of Xenophon we have the prototype of the gag-bit of the East, and the curb-bit of Europe. The bits upon the Sarmatian horses in Trajan's column (first century) appear to be on the principle of the lever, as do those upon the mosaic in the British Museum found at Pompeii, and ascribed to the fourth century B.C. The representations of the horse upon the Byzantine column of Theodosius (fifth century) suggest the use of the curb-bit; and there can be but little doubt that the curb-bit, as we now have it, was employed by the Normans in the eleventh century, as is shown in the Bayeux tapestries. The first time the upper arms of the curb-bit, a proof of the existence of the curb-chain, appear, is in an Italian fresco painting of the fourteenth century; and the first representation of the curb-chain itself, so far as I can discover, is in a drawing by Burckman (1473–1529). In the sixteenth century there was a great variety of curb-bits.

From the sculptures and remaining drawings of ancient times, it seems that the arms of the levers were gradually lengthened until they reached the exaggerated size shown in the Italian frescoes of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries of our era; they then decrease to the present dimensions.

For saddles the Greeks used cloths, pieces of felt, or the skins of wild beasts, securely girthed to give a firm seat. Stirrups were unknown, and the usual custom was to vault upon the back of the horse, the left hand of the rider grasping a lock of the mane near the horse's ears, the right hand near the withers. The mounted soldier used the spear, held in his right hand, as a leaping pole in mounting; the left hand grasping a

lock of the mane to assist in securing the seat. Old and infirm persons were assisted upon their horses by menials who bent down to make a mounting-block of their bodies 'in the Persian fashion;' and sometimes, for those who had not the agility to vault into the saddle, the horses were taught to kneel. We find that it was the duty of certain officers to see that stones were placed along the highways to give the riders aid in mounting.

It appears from the sculptures that the Greeks were accustomed to cut the manes of their horses, but Xenophon decries the practice, and says that the mane and tail should be combed out and allowed to grow.

The Greeks were in the habit of taking all sorts of leaps,[1] 'across ditches, over walls, upon and from banks.' That the rider should be able to pass over all kinds of ground, wild beasts were hunted by horsemen;[2] and to give firm seats and to teach the ready control of the horse, warlike games were played.

We have only to read the various movements suggested for the cavalry and for single riders to see how highly trained were the horses, how skilful were the riders in the days of Xenophon. The circles in the gallop; the rapid courses and the sudden halts and sharp turns; the collected state necessary for the demi-pesade, all give evidence of a high state of the equestrian art.[3]

The Greeks were ideal horsemen. Light, active, hardy, and courageous, they were eminently fitted for the exercise in which they excelled. A touch upon the neck of the horse, an easy spring from the ground, and the rider was in the saddle, with a hand skilled to guide, and a will to control the headlong course. Here was no shortening of stirrup-leathers, no fumbling with straps and buckles, no struggle to reach a stiff and awkward seat that required the brace of rigid hands.

In a time two thousand three hundred years before this our day of perfect things, we find the horse trained to the state of

[1] *Horsemanship*, chap. iii. sect. 7. [2] *Ibid.* chap. viii. sect. 10.

[3] *Hipparchus*, of Xenophon, written in the early part of the 4th century B.C.

the best modern examples; a bit, mild to the horse amenable to its guidance, which can govern the headstrong steed by its severity; the spur, and a knowledge of its best uses.

We find a strong and secure seat without the intervention of stirrups, and a grace of bearing that makes us question the advantages of any such aids to the horseman.

THE ROMANS—THE SADDLE

Although it was not until long after the formation of a body of horsemen by Romulus that the *Equites* were recognised as a distinct order in the State, the mounted men, under various titles, were always held in honour.

Adams says that it is uncertain when the Equestrian order was established, but he thinks that it was before the expulsion of the kings. 'After this all those who served on horseback were not properly called *Equites* or knights, but such only as were chosen into the equestrian order.'[1]

The Romans learned the art of horsemanship from the Greeks, and we find the Latin writers ascribing to their teachers the credit of subjugating the horse and of inventing the bridle and the chariot.

We may doubt whether the Romans were ever better or bolder riders than the Greeks, but they appear to have carried the art of schooling horses to a high degree of perfection. 'Modern writers assert, though I have been unable to find their authorities in the classics, that a place for exercising horses, called *gestatio*, was set apart. In villas it was generally contiguous to the garden, and laid out in the form of a circus.[2] In bad weather, we are told, the porticoes were used for the manège. Pliny (Epistles, I. 3; II. 17; and V. 6) mentions the *gestatio*, but does not inform us for what purpose it was intended. The derivation of the word might suggest that it was given to a place for riding; but it also, no doubt, was used to

[1] Adams' *Roman Antiquities*, p. 26. [2] *Ibid*, p. 441.

distinguish an enclosed spot, where the luxurious Romans were carried in litters to enjoy the air. To support his statement regarding the porticoes, Adams refers to Ovid (Art. Amor. I. 67) and Cicero (Dom. 44), but neither of those writers intimates that the porticoes were used by horsemen. I think it more probable that the large hippodrome (Pliny, Epistle V. 6) was intended for pleasure riding, as well as for racing, as its name implies.[1]

As in the public games of Greece so in those of the Romans the horsemen played a prominent part.[2] The riders would mount their barebacked steeds and run the course standing upright. Sitting upon the naked horses they would at full gallop pick up objects from the ground. One class of riders, known as *desultores*, would leap from one horse to another at speed.

In the time of Cæsar the youths of the noblest families used to practise these feats.

The horses of the Romans were taught the ambling pace (*tolutaris*), as those luxurious people could not endure the roughness of the trot; and Fossbrooke[3] describes several movements that correspond with the *piaffer* and the *passage* of the modern manège.

The Romans took great pride in the beauty and decoration of their steeds. Gold and jewels, rich and gay colours, ornamented the saddles, the collars, and the other trappings that were employed to set off the graces of the animals they rode. And we are told (Pliny, Ep. IX. 6) that in the races a popular colour worn by a rider dictated to the mob the selection of a favourite from among the competitors.

While it is probable that the saddle-tree was used for pack-animals from a very early date, we have no proof of the fact. The earliest evidence of the existence of the saddle-tree is in the time of Theodosius (408–450 A.D.), when the weight

[1] Since the above was written a friend has called my attention to the fact that in Smith's *Classical Dictionary* (v. 'Hortus') this theory is given.

[2] Fossbrooke's *Antiq.* ii. 725.

[3] *Ibid.* ii. 726.

of saddles for post-horses is prescribed,[1] and the first representation is upon the Theodosian column, where, according to Montfaucon and others, the tree appeared with a high pummel and an equally exaggerated cantel.

Many writers have stated that the saddle-tree was described by Zonaras as having been in use in the year 340 A.D., when Constantine was killed by a fall from his horse. But there is nothing in Zonaras to justify the belief that the saddle-tree was indicated. The author[2] uses the words ἐκπεπτὼς τῆς ἕδρας. The word ἕδρα occurs twice in Xenophon's work on riding (chap. v. sect. 5, and chap. xii. sect. 9), and means, primarily, a sitting place, the back of the horse where the rider sits. Although the word after Xenophon's time was used for the saddle, either with or without a tree—and at the time Zonaras wrote his history (later than the year 1118 A.D., to which date he brings it down) it signified a *complete saddle*—it was the proper term for the historian to use in writing of any age; and we must still look upon the Theodosian code and column as the first proofs that we have of the existence of the saddle-tree.

The author of the article upon 'the horse' in the eighth edition of the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, says: 'Vegetius, who wrote on the veterinary art nearly 400 years B.C., speaks of the saddle-tree.' I have found the passage of Vegetius referred to, and give the words of that author.[3] 'Primum igitur ut pinguia sint jumenta, tam in curulibus quam in sellaribus decet.' Doubtless the word *sella* was used for the saddle after the tree was in use, but it was likewise employed to designate the seat of the horseman long before the wooden tree was known. No one can tell when Publius Renatus flourished, and no authority pretends to assign him to any particular era. The first edition of *Ars Veterinaria* was issued at Basle in the year 1528 (Jo. Fabro.), and it is now the generally accepted opinion that it is

[1] The Theodosian Code was promulgated in 438.

[2] Zonaras, lib. viii. Paris, 1687; according to Beckmann, ii. 265.

[3] *Vegetii Renati Artis Veterinariæ* (Schneider, Lipsiæ. MDCCXCVIII.), Lib. IV. cap. vi.

the work of some inferior writer, who, at a period long after the building of the Theodosian column, took the name *Vegetius* because it had been rendered famous by the author of treatises upon military affairs.

But while there is no evidence that is sufficiently strong to support the belief in the existence of the saddle-tree for riding before the early part of the fifth century before our era, it seems then to have bloomed forth with such completeness that it is possible, as I have said, that it was the outgrowth of a similar frame work which had long been in use for holding packs upon beasts of burthen.

It is impossible to follow the different forms of the saddle-tree; for while the high pummel and cantel are still in use in some military services, I find, on reference to the drawings, that between the eleventh and the seventeenth centuries the pummel is sometimes found reduced to almost the size of the present hunting tree; and again the cantel is shorn of its proportions, while the bow is exaggerated. In a portrait of the race-horse 'Old Partner' (foaled in 1718), painted by Seymour, the tree is represented like that we now use for race-riding. From a picture by Cooper, and from Adams' remarks in his work on Equitation (1805), I think that the two flaps (or the skirt over the flap) were introduced in the latter part of the eighteenth century.

THE AGE OF ARMOUR—THE STIRRUP

Although it was not until after the time of Charlemagne that suits of complete armour were worn,[1] yet long before that era the arms and equipments of the knights had become so cumbrous that vaulting into the saddle, even with the aid of the lance, must have become a difficult if not an impossible feat.[2] The *scala*, to assist the rider in reaching the saddle, was the

[1] Boutell. *Arms and Armour*, pp. 96, 97.

[2] The ordinary 'panoply' of the ancients was, according to Plutarch, seventy pounds in weight, consisting of the greaves, cuirass, sword, shield, helmet, and spear. The horse soldiers were more lightly armed.

natural result of this increase of weights, after the tree had furnished it a *point d'appui*; and another, fastened upon the opposite side, to keep the balance of the rider, and to support, between the two, his burthened feet, was afterwards introduced.

Many writers upon the history of the horse insist that the earliest mention of the stirrup was made by Eustathius. They are so far wrong, in that the stirrup was not only described by several writers some centuries before that author flourished, but it is even represented in drawings of the eleventh century,[1] and in the well-known Bayeux tapestries, the latter having been worked nearly a hundred years before Eustathius wrote.

In a work ascribed to the Emperor Maurice in the sixth century, but published in 1664, the stirrup is spoken of.[2] The same words are used by the Emperor Leo VI. in two places in his Tactics,[3] supposed to have been written in the ninth century, but first printed in 1612. I have verified these quotations, and have also read the French translation of the passages from Leo's Tactics, made by M. Joly de Manzeray. In the second reference to Leo it will be found that the two stirrups were placed upon the left side, one at the pummel and the other at the cantel, to enable the rider to take upon the horse a disabled man. But the custom of having a stirrup upon each side must have been very shortly introduced, for Berjeau gives an example in a drawing of the same century.

Eustathius says, according to Beckmann, that in his time, 1160, stirrups were not in general use, and they were probably employed by only the knights and mounted soldiers.

From the time of William the Conqueror[4] all armed horsemen are represented with stirrups. At first with such long

[1] Berjeau's plates.

[2] *Mauricii Artis Militaris* ('Tactica Arriani'), p. 22. ἔχειν ἢ εἰς τὰς σέλλας σκάλας σίδηρας δύο.

[3] *Leonis Imp. Tactica* (Lugduni Batavorum, anno 1612), cap. vi. sect. 10. εἰς δε τὰς σέλλας δύο σκάλας σιδηρὰς, καὶ λωρόσακαν, and cap. xii. sect. 53.

[4] Bayeux Tapestries, 11th century. Painting of 12th century. Abbey of St. Denis. Window of Chartres Cathedral, 12th century. English MS. 13th century. Berjeau's Plates.

leathers that the toes of the riders can barely find support, but they soon appear at such a length that, as is too often the case in our day, the rider depends upon them in a great measure for the security of his position, and in the tournaments it was considered discreditable, as an indication that the seat had been in jeopardy, for a knight to lose his stirrup in the encounter.

Of these tournaments Fossbrooke says[1] that they were probably derived from the *Ludus Trojanus* mentioned by the Latin writers, and that, according to Du Cange, they were revived by Geoffrey de Preuli in 1066. Other writers assign their revival to a much earlier period, but it is difficult to say when the duels between the quarrelsome soldiery of the middle ages arrived at the dignity of the tournament. The English borrowed the sport from the French in the reign of Stephen.[2] The last tournament took place in France in 1560.[3]

Between the twelfth and the sixteenth centuries the tournament was the favourite pastime of the kings and nobles of Europe, and these passages at arms were participated in not only by the knights of the courts at which they were held, but by bold adventurers who, desirous of extending their reputation for skill and courage, traversed 'Christendom' to seek adversaries worthy of their lances.

In the days of chivalry the encounters between mounted men were confined to the lance, the sword, and the battle-axe, and we are asked to believe that in the time of these combats—when the horse had to exhibit as much intrepidity as his rider, rushing with eagerness against the lances, rendering calm and immediate obedience to the bit under the sword-strokes and the fearful blows of the lightning-bearing axe, when the rider, encumbered with armour, skilfully turned, advanced, withdrew, to fall with fatal blade upon a wary adversary—we are asked, I say, to believe that horsemanship was neglected.

[1] *Antiq.* ii. 509. [2] Lingard, ii. [3] Buckle, iii. 135.

MODERN HORSEMANSHIP—BAUCHER

It is the custom of writers upon horsemanship to assert that the art was not practised after the fall of the Roman Empire, until its revival by Pignatelli and others in Italy in the sixteenth century. But from the fact that the sports of the tournament required horses of the highest degree of training and riders of the greatest skill, I believe that horsemanship was never more flourishing than between the twelfth and sixteenth centuries, and the paintings and drawings of that period support this belief.

The reputation that Pignatelli left, however, assures us that he was a master of the art, and it is probable that he arranged the method that is the foundation of those now in use. Pignatelli wrote nothing upon the subject, and the first treatise that we have upon the manège is the *Gli Ordini il Cavalcare* (Naples, 1550) of Federigo Grisone, a contemporary of Pignatelli. Although Pliny is said to have written a work upon horsemanship, and we have a number of books upon cavalry tactics and the veterinary science, there is no treatise upon riding now existing that was composed between the eras of Xenophon and Grisone.[1] But, owing perhaps to the stimulation that printing gave about that time to all branches of literature, a number of authors were inspired by the Neapolitan, and there has been no end to the books since written upon the subject.

La Broue and Pluvinel, two Frenchmen, were pupils of Pignatelli at Naples. The former wrote the first work upon the manège that appeared in France. Pluvinel (born 1555), at the early age of seventeen, had gained the reputation of being the most accomplished horseman in Europe. He opened a riding academy in Paris under the patronage of Henry IV., and he was the instructor of Louis XIII., for whom he wrote

[1] Camerarius, in the work published in 1539, treated only of the draught-horse. Some authorities say that Grisone's book was published in 1552. I have never seen a copy of a date earlier than 1569.

his great work, 'The Royal Manège,' published in 1623, several years after the author's death.

Pluvinel visited Poland and Holland, and his work was translated into German, Portuguese, and other tongues; so that he may be considered to have had a strong influence in forming the schools of various countries.

The Germans have given much attention to horsemanship, and their methods, while not so thorough or so complete as those found in France, are excellent. Their most esteemed writer upon the art is Herr Plinzner, Equerry to the Emperor.

In England, Blundeville[1] published 'The Fower Chiefest Offices belonging to Horsemanshippe,' between 1565 and 1580.

Blundeville does not claim originality for his work, but confesses that it was 'paynefully collected out of a number of authours,' and it was, indeed, a translation from the Italian, chiefly from the treatise by Grisone; nor was this the only book of Blundeville's that owed its origin to Italy.

In 1593 appeared 'A Discourse of Horsemanship,' by Gervase Markham, which was also a translation from the Italian. This author was, according to Sir S. E. Brydges, 'a general compiler for the booksellers,' and it appears that he had little originality, but wrote upon a great variety of subjects, including agriculture, archery, horsemanship, &c., exhibiting as much versatility as certain 'standard' writers have shown in our day. Sir William Hope, in his translation (1696) of Sollisel's work (1691), intimates that neither Blundeville nor Markham was a practised horseman.

In 1639 Thomas de Gray issued his 'Compleat Horseman and Expert Farrier,'[2] under royal patronage. This work, founded upon that of Vegetius, shows us the veterinary art in a very

[1] *The Fower Chiefest Offices belonging to Horsemanshippe*, by Thomas Blundeville. Imprinted at London by William Seres (no date). Another edition appeared in 1597.

[2] *The Compleat Horseman and Expert Farrier*. Dedicated to his most Excellent Majestie. Nicholas Fussell, 1639.

low state, many of the operations being useless, while 'charms' are recommended for some diseases.

It was perhaps during his visit to Paris in 1645, that the Duke of Newcastle acquired a taste for the manège, for his work was written after he had left that city for a residence at Antwerp. 'La Méthode Nouvelle de dresser les Chevaux'[1] gave to its noble author the widest reputation ever enjoyed by any writer upon horsemanship, and although the system now appears to us severe and crude, it was for a long time considered the best and most original work extant. This treatise was composed in English, but was published in 1658 in French, having been translated into that language by a secretary under the author's direction.

The Earl of Pembroke, in 1761, issued a small manual of riding and training, designed for the use of the cavalry. Berenger's[2] work, 1754, for a long time the source of nearly all of our knowledge of the history of horsemanship, was principally from continental sources, but much credit is due to him for his labours, and I think, after having read his writings, that he must have been a practical horseman.

The next work of importance, with any pretence to originality, which appeared in England, was that of Adams in 1799. This seems to me one of the best books ever written upon the subject, but from the work itself I can hardly credit the writer's assertion that he is indebted to no other teacher than experience, for his treatise shows that he must have been thoroughly acquainted with the best French methods of the time.

No writer has ever had such influence upon horsemanship as that exercised by Baucher. Even in his native France, as elsewhere, his work is now discredited, and many faults are found in the system he invented. But, for all that, *Baucher's method is the foundation of all that is good in modern horsemanship.* His idea of obtaining control over the horse by culti-

[1] *La Méthode Nouvelle de dresser les Chevaux.* Antwerp, 1658.
[2] *History and Art of Horsemanship.*

vating the instinctive muscular actions that follow the application of the aids is the only true mode of controlling an animal which is stronger than its master. Had Baucher stopped short at this theory he had done well; but he carried his art too far for the masses, and there is no doubt that by his later theories, training was carried beyond the skill of the ordinary rider. All who desire to have a thorough knowledge of the art of horsemanship should make a study of Baucher, and experience will teach them where their skill and aptitude demand a halt. Of the more recent works published in France those of De Montigny are the most thorough and the best.

Except in the higher training of horses, the English are far and away the best horsemen in the world. It is because I believed this, and because I felt the importance of better methods of training than those now employed in this country, that I have so often ventured to address English horsemen upon the subject of thorough schooling. In breeding horses, in rearing, and in caring for them, in racing them and in riding them across country, the Englishman is easily first. No man can drive like an Englishman, and there is no man who understands and appreciates the animal better. But there is one form of the art in which he fails: that is in so suppling and uniting the horse that the animal is under immediate and certain control: he looks upon the spur simply as an instrument for inciting the horse to greater speed, and loses more than half of the control that one should have over the animal by neglecting that discipline of the rider's legs which is not only a power in itself but is of the greatest assistance to the hand. I have seen a continental trainer, whose seat and awkward movements would bring him into ridicule in the Row do more with a young horse in an hour than the best horseman I have seen in England could do in a week. I do not recommend 'High School' riding for general purposes, but every man who rides should know the principles of some good method, and he

should certainly know all the effects of the hand and of the heels, how to produce the different forms of collection of the forces of the horse, and the best modes of attacking the animal's resistances; such knowledge will not injuriously affect that natural aptitude for horsemanship that nearly every one believes is his inherent gift.

POLO

BY

J. MORAY BROWN

POLO

INTRODUCTORY

It is generally admitted that every sport has its utility. Angling teaches a man patience and self-control; hunting improves not only good horsemanship, but pluck and observation; whilst shooting inculcates quickness of hand and eye coupled with endurance and the power of bearing fatigue; football, cricket, rowing, rackets, tennis—all bring to the front and encourage qualities that are essentially manly; and perhaps no sport tends to combine all these lessons so much as polo; none makes a man more a man than this entrancing game, none fits him more for the sterner joys of war or enables him better to bear his part in the battle of life. Pluck, endurance, submission to discipline, good temper, calmness, judgment, quickness of observation, self-control, are all qualities as essential in a good polo player as in a good soldier; and last, but by no means least, there is no finer school in which to acquire the art of riding. It may be urged that the game is too expensive to be indulged in save by those endowed with long purses; but though a man may not be able to mount himself on a pony that would pass muster at Hurlingham, or that would be fit to compete in an inter-regimental tournament, yet without any great outlay he may not only have a deal of fun, but improve his health and his horsemanship materially by learning to

play polo. In fact, I know one enthusiast, who is the proud possessor of two diminutive Shelties which, when they are not being driven in a tandem, are called on to furnish mounts for their owner and a friend just to knock a ball about on !

Essentially the game of a horse-loving nation, such as we may now claim fairly to be, polo appeals irresistibly to our tastes, and year by year has not only obtained a firmer footing at home and in India, but has spread far and wide. There is something very attractive in the game : the mad ride, the mere pleasure of hitting the ball, the satisfaction of outwitting an adversary by superior horsemanship and strategy, are all factors that must appeal to the dullest and most lethargic temperament.

Then, too, polo comes at a season of the year when there is no hunting, and the horsey man who pines for a gallop and excitement with an object, finds in the game an outlet for his superfluous energies.

One word ere I conclude, out of place though it may seem in these introductory lines. I have endeavoured in writing a history of polo to steer clear of all information that may not be considered trustworthy. I have avoided all opinions and evidence that did not carry weight with them, and I have had the advantage of being assisted in my task by the most experienced players of the day, present and past, such as the Earl of Harrington, the Earl of Airlie, Mr. John Watson, Mr. F. B. Mildmay, M.P., Mr. T. S. Kennedy, the Messrs. Peat, Mr. E. D. Miller (17th Lancers), Colonel St. Quintin (8th Hussars), Captain C. D. Bruce (33rd D. W. Regiment), Captain 'Tip' Herbert, Major-General J. F. Sherer, Captain Walter Smythe (the popular polo manager at Hurlingham), and many others, to whom my warmest and most grateful acknowledgments are due. My researches in Oriental manuscripts, from which I have derived the information regarding the antiquity of the game, would have proved not only bewildering but impossible to any but an Oriental scholar, to which title I can lay no claim; and I should have failed signally had it not been for the kind aid given me by Mr. A. G. Ellis, of the British Museum, who threw all his

energies and ability into the task of assisting me. Lastly, I have to thank the editor of the 'Field' for his courteous permission to reprint several articles, relating to the game in Baltistan, Munnipore, and Japan, that have appeared from time to time in the columns of that paper. I have in every instance where my own experience was but slight gone to the best authority within my knowledge, and have sifted evidence and opinions to the best of my ability. How difficult such a task is no one who has not attempted it can realise, and I trust I may be pardoned for any shortcomings.

Let me now therefore plunge in *medias res*, and with what power I may, catch my pen short by the head and shove along, from 'find to finish.' True indeed are the words which Mr. H. C. Bentley aptly sings :—

For the daring turn and the skilful stroke
  The ever-quickening stride,
The ring of the stirrup, the clash of the stick,
  And the rush of the furious ride ;
The cheer when the ball through the goal is driven
  By the steady hand and eye,
Have a wild delight in themselves alone
  That can never grow old or die

CHAPTER I

THE ANTIQUITY OF POLO

GREAT BRITAIN'S connection with the East has made our empire what it is, and to the East we owe a debt of gratitude in more ways than one. We are indebted to it for many of our arts, sciences, and literature; the improved breed of our horses; and last, but not least, for the popular pastime of polo, which now may be said to rank high amongst our national games.

The origin of polo is indeed hard, nay, well-nigh impossible to determine with any strict degree of accuracy, shrouded as it is in the hoary mists of centuries. Still history, legendary and authentic, enables us to trace it pretty far back—in fact, far enough back for all practical purposes.

Probably the first mention of the game under the title of *chaugán* (for such was its Persian name) that is to be found in Eastern literature is in the 'Sháhnámah.' This poem was written by the Persian poet Firdusi, who was born near Tús, and who flourished towards the end of the tenth and beginning of the eleventh century. Composed for the amusement of the Sultan Mahmúd of Ghazni (who was celebrated as the destroyer of the Hindu temples in Northern India), it abounds in all the flowery language of Oriental rhetoric. Mahmúd's father, Subuktigín, the deposer of the old Hindu kings of Cabul, was born A.D. 967, and probably the game was learnt from his conquered foes. One of the characters in the 'Sháhnámah' is a certain Afrásiáb, an ancient and practically mythical Turkish king of Turán, or Scythia, who is said to have lived prior to the

time of the great Darius, and Afrásiáb had a son-in-law named Siáwusch, who is supposed to have lived about the year 600 B.C.

Firdusi gives a vivid description of a game between seven Iránian or Persian horsemen and seven Turks, in which Siáwusch astonishes Afrásiáb by the skill he displays. Mohl, in his translation,[1] says: 'Siáwusch monta un cheval frais, jeta la balle un peu en l'air avec la main, et la frappa si fort avec la raquette qu'il lui fit voir de près la lune. La balle disparut tant la raquette l'avait lancée haut!' It is to be feared that in these degenerate days even our best players at Hurlingham could hardly rival such a feat. The Persians seem to have lost their tempers in the game, however, and played somewhat roughly, for which they were rebuked by Siáwusch.

The accompanying illustration, taken from a rare old manuscript 'Sháhnámah' in the British Museum, represents an incident in the game. In the left-hand top corner will be noticed the King Afrásiáb, with his attendant umbrella-bearer, and the monarch is evidently very much interested. In the background is the band, doubtless discoursing dulcet strains and encouraging the players with martial music. The Prince Siáwusch, with the plume of royalty in his turban, a player who, from his hard hitting, must have been the 'Johnny Peat' of the day, is the uppermost horseman on the right of the picture, mounted on a bay horse, his opponent being on a curious orange and white coloured animal with a red mane and tail; whilst the King and the other players bestride black and blue horses: these latter are evidently intended to represent greys. The dresses of the riders and their saddle-cloths, reins, &c., are plentifully embroidered with gold, and are of very vivid colours. The goal-posts are also shown, and sticks must evidently have been as liable to break in those days as they are now, for a couple of attendants with spare sticks will be observed, though what they are doing in the middle of the ground it is

[1] *Le Livre des Rois.* Par J. Mohl.

difficult to say.[1] Some license, however, must be allowed to the Oriental artist, whose composition of his picture is somewhat quaint. The sticks seem in shape to greatly resemble those we now use, though with longer handles ; and the 'flowery mead' on which the game is taking place must have made the 'going' rather heavy from a polo point of view. Crude though the drawing is, yet it gives a good idea of the game and the horses used, for their small heads, tapering muzzles, rounded quarters on which the tail is set on high, thick girth, and general appearance evidently denote their Eastern parentage. In the original the whole picture is profusely illuminated in gold and the brightest of colours.

The prowess of a certain Gushtasp (the Hystaspes of classical history) is also extolled by Firdusi, who describes him as wielding the chaugán, or stick, with such effect 'that the ball could no longer be seen by any person on the *meidán*, or plain, as his blow had caused it to vanish amongst the clouds.'[2]

Truly there must have been giants in those days !

This work is, of course, merely legendary, but points to the early origin of the game, as Firdusi states that his information had been derived from earlier works, traditions, and literary fragments. Other Eastern writers of the ninth and tenth centuries allude to the game as having been practised in very early ages, and well known throughout the East.[3]

The historian Tabári, who lived about 914 A.D., relates how the Persian king Dárá, or Darius, who lived 525 B.C., wishing to

[1] In Munnipore when the Rajah plays, his spare-stick carriers are allowed on the ground, but this is the prerogative of royalty alone.

[2] *Le Livre des Rois.* Par J. Mohl.

[3] Ancient, however, as the epic of Firdusi undoubtedly is, yet Pehlavi writings, which are much older, allude to the game, especially the old fragments entitled 'Karnamak-i-Artakshir-i-Babakan,' which record some of the wonderous feats of the Sassanian kings, Ardashir, Shápur, and Hormzad. These fragments relate mainly to the sports in which the flower of Iranian chivalry were trained, and excellence and pre-eminence in which made a proficient in them a man of mark. Foremost amongst these was *chúgaan* (from which the more modern term *chaugán* was probably derived), described as a species of hockey on horseback, played with a ball and a concave staff or racket.

EARLY POLO

insult Alexander the Great (who had withheld his portion of tribute exacted by former Persian kings, and declared that he would resist the demand by force of arms), sent him a ball and chaugán-stick, as instruments of sport better suited to his youth and inexperience than warlike occupations. Alexander seems however, to have been equal to the occasion, for he replied 'that the ball was the earth and he (Alexander) was the stick,' implying his universal conquest.

Tabári also, in alluding to events in the eighth century (just before his own time), says that Harun Alraschid 'was still so little that, when on horseback, he could not reach to strike the ball with a chaugán.' The sticks evidently in those early days must have been very short—only some three feet long.

Shápur, better known as Sapor, whilst yet a child of suspected parentage, is said to have proved his descent from Artaxerxes by venturing alone through a crowd of players to gather the ball, which had rolled near the monarch's seat. In an illustrated MS. 'Sháhnámah' at the British Museum Shápur is depicted going on foot, with a chaugán-stick in his hand, to pick up the ball which is by the feet of the king's horse. Several other boys are shown, also with sticks in their hands, but all on foot.

Tabári, alluding to the accomplishments of Bahrám, or Varamus, tells us that he excelled in 'horsemanship, hunting, the use of the chaugán, and whatever else was useful or necessary for kings.' From the same writer it appears that there was an appropriate dress for the game, though it was hardly in accordance with our modern ideas of boots and breeches.

The celebrated Persian poet Nizami, who lived between 1126 and 1200 A.D., in an epic describes how the beautiful Shirin, wife of Khusrán Parviz (the Victorious), one of the Sassanian kings, who flourished 590 A.D., played chaugán with her lovely handmaidens against the king and his courtiers.

> On one side was the Moon and her stars,
> On the other the Shah and his firman-bearers.

Here is a hint for our sporting ladies of the present day, and especially for those who have lately been advocating through the press the advisability of women riding astride! We can only hope that the king and his courtiers were gallant enough to let the beauteous moon-faced Shirin and her minor constellations win the game.

In the 'Tárikhi-ál-Subuktigín,' written by Abulfazl-ul-Baihaki, who has been styled 'the Pepys of the East,' and who lived about 1030 A.D., the game is constantly alluded to, and we are told that when the Amir Masúd of Ghazni, the son of the great Mahmúd before referred to, released the venerable Khwájá Ahmad Hasan, and made him Wazir, or prime minister, he specially exempted him from supervising the arrangements connected with the game of chaugán, as well as all *convivialities*. This would rather point to the fact that the game was not considered very respectable, as it is classed with 'fighting, drinking, conviviality, &c.' The old Wazir seems to have regretted his master's partiality for the game and remonstrated with him thereon. Later on, too, we find him advising Ahmad Niáltigín, on his departure with an army into Hindustán, *not to allow his men to drink wine or play at chaugán*! What the old Khwájá's objection to a game so eminently fitted to improve his cavalry could have been it is difficult to say.

In the twelfth century we read of the Greek Emperor Manuel Comnenus enjoying the game on horseback with the Byzantine princes and nobles of his court. The wooden ball, however, seems to have been exchanged for one more soft, formed of stuffed leather, and the stick instead of having a hammer-like head terminated in a hoop, more resembling our racket. Cinnamus, the Byzantine historian, who must often have been a spectator of the game, as he accompanied the Emperor Manuel both in Europe and Asia, thus describes chaugán, and from him we may infer that proficiency in the game was considered no unworthy accomplishment of royalty. He says:—

A number of young men being divided into equal sides in a place measured out and made for the purpose, a ball about the

size of an apple, and made of leather, is thrown up into the air, and at it, as if contending for a prize, they all gallop as hard as they can. Each man has in his right hand a moderately long stick twisted into a hoop at the end, and across are stretched, like a net, a little distance apart, and crossing each other, many little strings. Each side, by outstripping the other, endeavours to drive the ball beyond the opposite goal, which has previously been set up, and this constitutes the victory. This is the game, then; a very doubtful and dangerous one, as he who would play it must be constantly lying flat on his horse, and bending himself on either side of his horse, and be turning his horse very sharply, and he must manage to ride so as to be skilled in moving his body and his horse in as many different ways as the ball is driven.

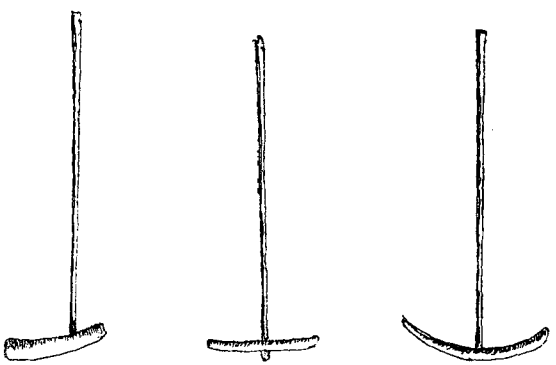
He goes on to describe a game 'in which when the Emperor was exercising himself hotly his horse fell altogether on the ground' (a regular 'purler' evidently), 'and he being thrown underneath had great difficulty in extricating himself.'

Sir William Ouseley in his 'Travels in the East,' published in 1810, devotes some space to a description of the game, and after mentioning that it was played through almost every reign of the Sassanian dynasty, and as much esteemed by the Mahommedan kings as by their fire-worshipping predecessors, he says :—

It was universally practised throughout Persia, and was a favourite recreation of kings and chiefs, and originally, I believe, considered as almost peculiar to illustrious personages. We learn, however, from a letter of Pietro della Valle, written at Cazvin in 1618, that Sháh Abbás (the monarch then reigning) exercised himself frequently in this royal sport, and sometimes invited those to participate in it who understood the game well, although not distinguished by exalted rank. Half a century later Chardin describes it as a popular amusement admitting of thirty or forty persons, forming two parties, to engage at once. The object of those who played was to drive through the goal with sticks having semicircular or straight transverse heads a ball made of light wood, which the contending parties—governed by certain prescribed laws, and striking only when at full gallop—endeavoured to bear off one from the other. Of this game there were several kinds, and I per-

ceive in the pictures of manuscripts executed two and four hundred years ago that the chaugáns, or sticks, are represented with heads of three slightly different shapes, as shown below.

Degraded into a pedestrian exercise, and under various forms and denominations, the game seems to have been widely diffused throughout Europe, and we may perhaps trace it in the cricket of England, the golf or gough of Scotland, and the hurling matches of Ireland. Pietro della Valle discovered it in the Florentine game *calcio*, and to me the original name chaugán appears but slightly disguised from the *chicane* of Languedoc, where the game is played, as in Persia, with a wooden ball and a club headed like a mallet or hammer. Du Cange, in his 'Dissertation,' viii., added to Joinville's 'Histoire de Saint Louis' (Paris : folio, 1668, p. 185 *et seq.*),



Persian Chaugán-sticks of the seventeenth century.

says of the *chicane, ou jeu de paume à cheval* : 'C'est un sujet qui n'est pas indigne de la curiosité, puisqu'il est connu de peu de personnes, et qu'il vous découvre une espèce de manège pratiqué particulièrement par les nouveaux Grecs, qui semble avoir été ignoré dans l'Occident.' Having mentioned some Byzantine historians who allude to it, he adds : 'Ce jeu est appelé par eux d'un terme barbare, *τζυκανιστήριον*, qui étoit aussi le nom du lieu qui servoit à ces exercices ; ce lieu étoit dans l'enclos du grand palais de Constantinople, près de l'appartement doré.'

Chaugán was one of the favourite pastimes of the great Emperor Akbar, who reigned between 1555 and 1605 A.D., and his chief chaugán ground was at a place called Ghariwálí, about

four miles from Agra, and subsequently at Nagarchin, also near Agra. In the 'Ain-i-Akbari,' written by the celebrated Abul Fazl-i-Allami, the Emperor's Prime Minister—and a work which minutely describes the Court of Akbar, its regulations, habits, and amusements as well as the system of government—chaugán is thus alluded to under the heading of 'Games':—

His Majesty, who is an excellent judge of mankind, uses these sports as a latent means of discovering their merits. The games are of various kinds, of which a few particulars shall be given.

Professor Blockmann, whose translation of the 'Ain-i-Akbari' is acknowledged to be unsurpassed, thus renders the text:—

The Game of Chaugán.

Superficial observers look upon this game as a mere amusement, and consider it mere play; but men of more exalted views see in it a means of learning promptitude and decision. It tests the value of a man, and strengthens the bonds of friendship. Strong men learn in playing this game the art of riding, and the animals learn to perform feats of agility and to obey the reins. Hence his Majesty is very fond of this game. Externally, the same adds to the splendour of his court; but, viewed from a higher point, it reveals concealed talents.

When his Majesty goes to the *maidán* (plain or open field) in order to play this game, he selects an opponent, and some active and clever players, who are only filled with one thought, viz. to show their skill against the opponents of his Majesty. From motives of kindness, his Majesty never *orders* any one to be a player, but chooses the pairs by the cast of the die. There are not more than ten players, but many more keep themselves in readiness. When one *ghari* (twenty-four minutes) has passed, two players take rest, and two others supply their place.

The game itself is played in two ways. The first way is to get hold of the ball with the crooked end of the chaugán-stick and move it slowly from the middle to the boundary pillars (*hál*, i.e. goal). This manner is called in Hindi *rol*. The other way consists in taking deliberate aim and forcibly hitting the ball with the chaugán-stick out of the middle; the [opposing] player then gallops after it quicker than the others and throws it back. This mode is called

béla, and may be performed in various ways. The player may either strike the ball with the stick in his right hand, and send it to the right forwards or backwards, or he may do so with his left hand, or he may send the ball in front of the horse to the right or to the left. The ball may be thrown in the same direction from behind the feet of the horse or from below its body, or the rider may spit it [*sic* lit., probably meaning 'may shove it,' with, as it were, a sort of 'cue-stroke'], when the ball is in front of the horse, or he may lift himself upon the croup [or crupper] and propel the ball between the feet of the animal.[1]

His Majesty is unrivalled for the skill which he shows in the various ways of hitting the ball; he often manages to strike the ball when in the air and astonishes all. When the ball is driven to a goal they beat a kettledrum, so that all who are far and near may hear it. In order to increase the excitement betting is allowed. The players win from each other, and he who brought the ball to the goal wins most. If a ball be caught in the air, and passes or is made to pass beyond the goal, the game is looked upon as drawn. At such times the players will engage in a regular fight[2] about the ball, and perform admirable feats of skill.

His Majesty also plays chaugán on dark nights, which caused much astonishment, even among clever players. The balls which are used at night are set on fire. For this purpose pálas wood (*Butea frondosa*) is used, which is very light and burns for a long time. For the sake of adding splendour to the games, which is necessary in worldly matters, his Majesty has knobs of gold and silver fixed to the top of the chaugán-sticks. If one of them breaks, any player that gets hold of the pieces may keep them.

It is impossible to describe the excellence of this game. Ignorant as I am, I can say but little about it.

The accompanying illustration depicts the Emperor Akbar and his courtiers playing the game, and by the attitudes of the men and the length of their sticks it is evident that they are indulging in the game known as 'rol,' or the dribbling game. The artist must have been a very conscientious Mohammedan, for he has followed strictly the precepts of the Korán, which

[1] This must evidently have been a back-hander, or a cross-hit under the horse's belly.

[2] *Vide* description of polo in Baltistan.

Polo in the sixteenth century : The Emperor Akbar playing with his courtiers.

forbids the drawing of features ; for it will be observed that the heads both of men and horses are left blank. Mahomet used to say that the angels would not enter a house in which there were such pictures, and that those who made them would be sentenced in the next world to find souls for those whom they had delineated, or be punished.

The poet Jámi, who lived 1414 A.D., thus alludes to the game in his 'Salámán and Absal':—

> All young in years and courage, bat in hand,
> Galloped afield, tossed down the golden ball,
> And chased so many crescent moons [1] a-full,
> And all alike intent upon the game.
> Salámán still would carry from them all
> The prize, and shouting 'Hál!' drive home the ball.

And again :—

> Welcome, prince of horsemen, welcome—
> Ride a-field and strike the ball.

The Persians' ideas of poetry are hardly consistent with ours. Still there is a deal of *go* in the words 'Hál! [2] drive home the ball!'

In Sir W. Ouseley's 'Travels,' there is a reproduction of a curious old drawing representing a game of chaugán. The goals are evidently stone pillars, and the sticks not unlike the sticks we use nowadays. The young prince is depicted in the act of receiving a stick from the hands of a bearded person on foot, 'who is supposed to be Háfiz, the poet.' The original text of the 'Salámán and Absal' was translated by the late Edward Fitzgerald.

Accidents seem to have been by no means uncommon in the game, for in the sixteenth century a king of Kashmir, Ali Khán Chak by name, is said to have died from the effects of an accident during a game of chaugán.

[1] A crescent moon is a favourite Eastern metaphor for a fine young man or woman.

[2] 'Now!' or it might have reference to the goal, which is called 'hál.'

That the game was well known and popular all over Central Asia and Thibet is evident, as the Emperor Báber, who lived 1494–1530 A.D., and was so celebrated as one of the most enlightened of Eastern monarchs, makes allusion to it in his memoirs. In mentioning the officers who served his father, Omar Sheikh Mirza, who ruled in Ferghana and Central Asia, and who was great-great-grandson of the Emperor Timour, or Tamerlane, he says :—

Another was Hassan Yâkûb Beg, who was frank, good-tempered, clever, and active. The following verses are his :—

'Return again, O Hūma,[1] for without the parrot down of thy cheek
The crow will assuredly carry off my bones.'

He was a man of courage, an excellent archer, and remarkable for his skill in playing the games of chaugán and leap-frog !

A queer medley of accomplishments, indeed. Fancy our prominent poloists of the present day being handed down to posterity with such characters. But we have no Bábers nowadays, alas ! so they must be content with comparative obscurity, except as polo players.

The Persian poet Mahmoud Arifi, who lived in the fifteenth century, amongst other effusions, wrote a poem called 'Goy-o-chaugán' (The Ball and the Bat). It is an allegory in which the ball and the bat are personified as types of mystic love, and all the images are borrowed from the favourite game. In fact, all ancient Persian literature abounds more or less with allusions to chaugán and metaphors drawn from the game, such as 'Man is a ball tossed into the field of existence, driven hither and thither by the chaugán-stick of destiny, wielded by the hand of Providence;' 'The heart of the lover is the ball, while the curling love-lock of his charmer is as the curved club that impels it,' and so on.

[1] The Hūma, or phœnix, was a bird much celebrated in Oriental poetry. It was supposed never to alight on the ground, and that every head that it overshadowed was destined one day to wear a crown.

In a quaint old book entitled 'The Adventures of the three Sherleys,' written by one George Manwaring, and descriptive of a voyage undertaken by Sir Anthony Sherley and his brothers to the Court of Shah Abbas, King of Persia, in 1599, in order to induce that monarch to unite with the Christian princes against the Turks, the following description of the game is given :—

> After the banquet was ended the King requested Sir Anthony to look through the window to behold their sports on horseback. Before the house there was a very fair place, to the quantity of some ten acres of ground, made very plain ; so the King went down, and when he had taken his horse the drums and trumpets sounded. There were twelve horsemen in all with the King ; so they divided themselves, six on the one side and six on the other, having in their hands long rods of wood about the bigness of a man's finger, and at one end of the rods a piece of wood nailed on like a hammer. After they were divided and turned face to face, there came one in the middle, and threw a ball between both the companies, and having goals made at either end of the plain, they began their sport, striking the ball with their rods from one to the other, in the fashion of our football play here in England ; and ever when the King had gotten the ball before him the drums and trumpets would play one alarum, and many times the King would come to Sir Anthony at the window and ask him how he did like the sport.

In Barton and Drake's 'Unexplored Syria,' the following note occurs regarding the Great Tamerlane :—

> The civil name of this mighty devastator is the Amir Taymúr, a corruption of Dimur (Lord Iron). The Persian Shiahs, who hated his orthodoxy, nicknamed him Taymúr-i-lang, i.e. Limping Taymúr, whence our Tamerlane. He is called El Wahsh (the wild beast) by the Damascans, because he rode his horse over the corpses of their ancestors, whilst his people played at chaugán, or hockey, with the heads of the slain.

A nice, lively occupation, but the balls (i.e. human heads) must have been rather difficult to propel, and must have taxed the power of Tamerlane's merry men to the utmost.

No doubt there was some truth in this alleged act of barbarism, which would be quite in keeping with the age—for the poet Háfiz, in a passage of his works, concludes with the devout wish,

May the heads of your enemies be your chaugán-balls.

Most of us are familiar with the story in the 'Arabian Nights' (the Twelfth Night), of the Grecian King and his physician Douban, who cured his ungrateful master of the leprosy by inserting sundry drugs into his chaugán-stick, so that when he got warm through exercise the medicine should be absorbed through the pores of his skin. In Jonathan Scott's edition of the 'Arabian Nights,' which was published in 1811, he translated the game as 'mall,' and in a note adds: 'In the East chaugán is played on horseback, as it was formerly in England, and what is now Pall Mall was the place used for this exercise.'

I can find no corroboration of this assertion, though, as Scott was in the Honourable East India Company's service before he became Oriental Professor at the ast EIndia and Royal Military Colleges, he ought to have known what he was writing about.

Strutt mentions a game which was played in the time of Charles II., with a stick and ball and iron hoop, at what is now Pall Mall, but it was played *on foot*. Pietro della Valle certainly calls the game of chaugán 'palla maglia,' and this may have been the origin of Scott's assertion.

There was a game called *knappan* played in Wales during the time of Queen Elizabeth with sticks and a wooden ball by men both on foot and mounted. It seems to have been a very rough-and-tumble sport, however, and to have afforded plenty of opportunities for free fights, being participated in by over a thousand people at once. In fact, it became so scandalous that it fell into disuse.

In all Persian literature the game is mentioned as chaugán, which is the Hindi for 'four-sided,' and if this is derived

through the Hindi from the Sanscrit, it would point to the existence of the game at the time of the Hindu kings of Cabul who were deposed by Subuktigín in the tenth century. It may be that the game thus derived its name from the fact of its being played in a four-sided plain or court. If Tabári may be considered an authority, and he uses the word chaugán for the stick as well as for the game itself, it must have had a distinctly Persian origin.

Johnson in his 'Dictionary' gives the word as Persian: 'Chaugán—a stick, with one end bent, used in a game at ball.' The game thus may have derived its name from the stick used in playing it.

Our own name for the game 'polo' is derived from the Thibetan word *pulu*, meaning a ball made from the knot of willow wood. In Ladakh and Thibet this wood is always used for the balls, as indeed it is for our balls at home. It is curious that no mention is made anywhere of the horses used in playing chaugán. If Arabs, they naturally would range from fourteen hands to fourteen hands three inches, but if Persian and Turcoman horses were employed, they must have been considerably larger.

Thus having traced the antiquity of the game, it will be as well to glance at it in its more modern aspect, and note its gradual development in India, England, and Ireland, where it has now taken a firm hold, and where year by year it is extending the area of its popularity.

CHAPTER II

POLO IN ENGLAND

IT may at first sight seem strange that a nation like the British, celebrated for its manly sports, should have imported one of its very best games from a country many thousands of miles distant; but the strides that polo has made of late years and the growing popularity in which it is now held are very apparent. There are infinitely more players than there were even half a dozen years ago, and not only is this a fact, but the prices of good ponies have increased enormously. Play, too, has reached a very much higher standard, and a man who aims now to be in the front rank has to be almost 'in training.' The reason for this we shall be able to trace if we follow its progress in this country and in India. Before doing so, however, let us glance back to the time when it first became known in England.

It is generally supposed that the origin of the game in England was due to a cavalry regiment lately returned from India; that they had seen the game there, and so brought the idea with them. This theory is, however, erroneous. It originated in a far more prosaic manner, and found its birthplace in the brain of sundry young subalterns of the 10th Hussars in 1869. This regiment was then quartered at Aldershot under canvas. After lunch one day, and wearying for some occupation wherewith to kill time and overcome the *ennui* of camp life, Messrs. St. Quintin, 'Chicken' Hartopp, and Chain were scanning the papers in the ante-room tent. There they read an account of the game as played by the

Munnipoorees. Quoth one, 'By Jove! it must be a goodish game. I vote we try it.' No sooner said than done. Their chargers were saddled, crooked sticks and a billiard ball got hold of, and they set to work—needless to say with no great results. Still, they were discriminating enough to see that though the game could hardly be played on big horses, yet when ponies were used it had great elements of excitement in it; so before long Mr. Chain was deputed to go over to Ireland and buy ponies, and soon returned with some seventeen of all sizes and shapes, and then play began in earnest. The 10th Hussars mentioned the subject to the 9th Lancers, then quartered at Hounslow, and they too entered into the spirit of the enterprise and likewise began to play, and these two regiments played the first *bonâ-fide* inter-regimental match in England on Hounslow Heath. There were eight a side, and though the ball was more often missed than hit, the game caused great merriment, and became firmly planted. So matters went on till June 1870 (by which time the Blues and the 1st Life Guards had also been bitten with the delights of polo), when a match was played in Richmond Park between the following teams :—

1st Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards.	*9th Lancers and 10th Hussars.*
Hon. T. Fitzwilliam.	Captain Hon. E. Willoughby.
Hon. H. C. Fitzwilliam.	Captain Chain.
Lord Rossmore.	Lord Valentia.
Hon. H. Boscawen.	Mr. Smith Dorrien.
Captain Dansey.	Mr. Hartopp.

This was won by the 1st Life Guards and Royal Horse Guards by four goals. In the same year the first inter-regimental match took place, and was fought out between the 9th Lancers and 10th Hussars, playing eight a side, on Hounslow Heath near the barracks, resulting in a victory for the 10th Hussars. These two regiments afterwards played at Woolwich, when the 9th won. At this early period of the game it was called 'hockey on horseback'; very small ponies were used,

under thirteen hands, and the game was played with ash hockey sticks and a cricket ball painted white. Play of course was very different in those early days from what it is at present. Hard hitting was unknown, and the game, which was played almost at a walk, consisted mainly of dribbling and scrimmaging. Neither were ponies trained to the pitch of perfection that they now are, and anything was thought good enough to play on. Though to the 10th Hussars belongs the honour of originating polo in England, the 9th Lancers were mainly instrumental in bringing it into prominent notice, for they took up the game *con amore* when the 10th went to India, and did much to further its popularity. In 1872 Captain F. Herbert, who had then just left the 9th Lancers, started the Monmouthshire Polo Club, and the game began to find its way into the provinces. Then the Polo Club was formed, and Lillie Bridge was the principal arena of contest. Many regiments took up the game; the Universities did the same; Hurlingham awoke to the fact that polo was becoming a popular amusement; the International Gun and Polo Club started operations at Brighton, and soon all chance of the game falling into obscurity was provided against. For a few years Lillie Bridge was the home of poloists, but about 1874 Hurlingham began to assert its sway on their affections, and so gradually Lillie Bridge was deserted, owing partly to the ground there being very small, only some two hundred yards long, and polo flourished at Hurlingham, where it has ever since increasingly prospered. Improvements soon began to be made, rules were drawn up, and instead of the somewhat indiscriminate mere knocking about of a ball, the game was put on a more scientific footing. So with 1876 a new era for polo may be said to have dawned.

Captain F. Herbert and Mr. Kenyon Stow were shining lights in those days, as they are still, and in time other good men and true came to the front, such as Mr. E. H. Baldock, Mr. Algernon Peyton, 11th Hussars; Mr. (now Captain) Wyndham Quin, 16th Lancers; Mr. W. Ince-Anderton,

Colonel Duncombe, Mr. Miller, &c., and a host of others, and polo grew and flourished apace, each year seeing it become more popular, while the numerous country clubs that sprang into existence often showed very creditable form.

Since those early days, however, marvellous changes have taken place in the method of playing. Teams which often consisted of eight a side have been reduced to four, the slow game has given way to one played at racing pace, hard hitting has been substituted for dribbling, different forms of balls and sticks have been introduced, and skill both in hitting and play has so advanced that it is now quite a scientific game. Of course the number of players being reduced to four a side has contributed in no slight degree to the present style of play, but more may perhaps be ascribed to the hard and accurate hitting introduced by the Messrs. Peat, who first came into notice in 1877, and who a couple of years later began to assume the prominent position in the polo world that they have held ever since. To them also belongs the honour, conjointly with Mr. John Watson, of having introduced the back-hand stroke. Then, too, the way in which ponies are trained has developed into an art, for a good pony will not only turn, twist, and dodge at its rider's will, but will follow the ball of its own accord, turning as if by instinct directly a back-hander is hit. By degrees cups began to be played for, and trouble was taken in forming and laying out good polo grounds. At Hurlingham and Ranelagh ranges of stabling capable of holding nearly one hundred ponies were erected, Royalty patronised the sport with its presence, and Saturday after Saturday crowds flocked down to Hurlingham and Ranelagh to witness the game.

In Ireland polo had taken root in congenial soil in the year 1872. Fostered and encouraged by such rare sportsmen as Mr. Horace Rochfort, Mr. Robert Watson, and others, the game rapidly advanced to a prominent position, while the 'horseyness' of the game and the 'scrimmage' so dear to the Milesian mind caused it to be extremely popular amongst the masses, who came 'in their thousands' to look on in the

Phœnix Park and pass their remarks on players and ponies—often perhaps in uncomplimentary language, but generally very much to the point. Numerous county clubs now exist in Ireland, and none are in a more flourishing condition than the West Meath Club, which has sent a team nearly every year to compete for the All Ireland Open Cup. Carlow and Kildare are also well to the front as polo counties.

About 1884 the larger stamp of pony began to be more used, though in earlier days there were some very nearly if not quite fourteen hands, notably, a grey belonging to Mr. Brocklehurst and a white belonging to Mr. Reginald Herbert, on which animals these gentlemen are depicted as playing, in Mr. Earl's picture.

Looking back at the changes that polo has undergone during the twenty odd years of its existence in Britain, it may be said that there have been three distinct phases or periods in the game, viz. the first period, when it was a comparatively slow, dribbling game, played on small ponies, of which the Messrs. Murrieta were the ablest exponents; the second period, when the numbers were limited to four a side, and owing mainly to the Messrs. Peat, it became a fast, galloping game, in which, except for the placing of a man back to guard the goal, there was no organisation of the sides, each of the three forward players playing much as he listed; and the third or present period, which, owing to Mr. John Watson, is quite a scientific game, each member of a team being assigned his position in the field, and having distinct duties attached to that position. It is therefore very apparent that now the excellence of a polo team is not so entirely a matter of individual ability (though that is of course of very primary importance), but that it depends on combination, and on a man not only knowing his place and duties, but sticking to them and playing for his side, and not for himself.

There is no doubt that when polo was first introduced into England it was looked upon generally as a purely and essentially military game, but public opinion altered, and as

civilian clubs started up in every direction, with very satisfactory results, it became evident that the sport, besides its individual attractions, encouraged and cultivated a very high class of horsemanship.

A few years ago a match was got up at Dieppe between an English and a French team, and though the latter included one or two Americans the spectators exhibited all that excitement for which the French are distinguished. The teams were composed as under :—

English.	*French.*
Mr. Reginald Herbert.	Duc de Guise.
Mr. Arthur Peat.	Vicomte de Janzy.
Mr. J. E. Peat.	M. de Brainquant.
Mr. W. Ince-Anderton.	Mr. Storer.
Mr. E. H. Baldock.	Mr. Ridgeway.

There was an enormous crowd present. The ground was kept by a regiment of infantry and enthusiasm ran high. Occasionally some gallant Gaul would rush in and pick up the ball when the game was going against his countrymen, while *sacrés ! parbleus !* and other French expletives flew about thickly, accompanied by much shouting and gesticulation. In spite of all, however, the English team won by the crushing majority of eleven goals to none !

A polo ground was subsequently started in Paris, but the sport never really flourished. Now, however, that Frenchmen have taken to football, they may recognise the merits of polo. In fact, a polo club which numbers thirty-five members has now been started in Paris, and they have a ground in the Bois de Boulogne, near the skating club and pigeon-shooting enclosure. The Hurlingham Rules are those in force, and Prince Murat is the President of the Committee.

By 1883 the game had found its way to the New World. In Mexico City men of all nationalities used to play—French, Germans, Belgians, &c.—and though the standard of merit was not high, the love of the game is present. The cow-

ponies, too, on which the game is played, though not fast, are wonderfully handy and quick at turning, more so than even some of our best polo ponies, a result arrived at by the bits in which these ponies are broken. The Mexican bit is a fearful jaw-breaking engine of torture, consisting of a curb bit with a large and broad port, having an iron ring attached to it that encircles the pony's lower jaw, and a single rein. The slightest touch of this is sufficient to bring a horse on to his haunches, and the consequence is that the mouth of an animal which has been broken in one of these bits is so sesitnive that subsequently you can turn and twist him where you will with a snaffle.

There is now a capital polo club called The South California Polo Club, who have their ground at Santa Monica, a watering-place about eighteen miles from Los Angelos. Here in this equable climate the game flourishes exceedingly, kept alive by settlers from the old country, and the impetus lately given to horse-breeding in the district has produced a class of pony from which in the future even English players may recruit their studs.

By 1886 the game had become so popular in the States that a Hurlingham team was invited to go over and try conclusions with a representative American team and play a series of matches, our Transatlantic cousins giving a challenge cup to be competed for. A Hurlingham team accordingly went over captained by Mr. John Watson. But the series of matches fell through, for England's team defeated the best that America could produce in two consecutive matches at Newport, and no other men would enter the lists against them. The Americans made a plucky fight ; they worked hard and hit well, but they had no system in their play. They were mounted on mustangs which, though capital polo ponies, were not endowed with the speed of those belonging to their adversaries. The ground at Newport, though very level and beautifully kept, is small, about 225 yards long by 130 broad, and surrounded by boards. The cup, which was called the America Cup, and which is

now (1890) at Hurlingham, was played for by the following teams :—

America.	*Hurlingham.*
Mr. T. Hitchcock (captain).	Mr. John Watson (captain).
Mr. W. K. Thorn.[1]	Hon. R. Lumley, 7th Hussars.
Mr. R. Belmont.	Captain Thomas Hone, 7th Hussars.
Mr. F. Keen.	Captain Malcolm Little, 9th Lancers.
Umpire.	*Umpire.*
Mr. E. Winthrop.	Captain the Hon. C. Lambton.

The system of combination practised by the English team and the superiority of their ponies enabled them to score an easy victory, and they brought the cup away with them, together with many pleasant recollections of the hospitality of their opponents.

In Africa polo has now found a home, and Cape Town, Natal, Pietermaritzburg, Johannesburg, and many other places can boast of their polo ground and club.

In Australia the game was started as long ago as 1876 by Captain (now Colonel) St. Quintin, 8th Hussars, his brother, and Mr. Ware at Warnnambool, and subsequently at Sydney, where the Governor, Sir Hercules Robinson, lent all the weight of his assistance towards making it popular. There is now a very good polo club in Adelaide, but somehow the game never quite 'took' in the Antipodes as it has at home, though it flourishes exceedingly both at Malta and Gibraltar.

JAPANESE POLO

Though differing widely from polo as we know it, and as it was played long ago in Asia, the Japanese game yet possesses a certain amount of interest owing to its antiquity. In Mr. Basil Hall Chamberlain's 'Classical Poetry of the Japanese' this notice occurs :—

[1] Mr. Thorn was the late popular Master of the Pau Foxhounds.

In the first moon of the fourth year of the period Zhiûki (A.D. 727) the nobles and courtiers had assembled in the fields of Kasuga, and were diverting themselves with a game of polo, when the sky was suddenly overcast and the rain poured down amid thunder and lightning, while the palace was left without guards and attendants. Thereupon the Mikado issued an edict confining the offenders to the guardhouse under strict prohibition of leaving its gates.

Then follows an ode composed evidently by one of the soldiery, labouring under a feeling of disappointment and vexation at being thus 'gated.' One verse appears to allude to the keenness with which the writer and his comrades looked forward to the game. It is perhaps worth quoting.

> All the court for this entrancing
> Hour had yearned—oh ! might it never end.
> Then upon our chargers prancing,
> Gaily side by side advancing,
> Through the fields our course we longed to bend.

Known by the name *dakiu*, literally 'strike the ball,' the game which found its way into Japan from China in the sixth century, according to antiquarians, still flourishes in the former country, and though some years ago, during the troublous times that accompanied the extinction of the feudal system, it languished and nearly died out, yet it has of late years been revived with great activity in all parts of the empire. The following account descriptive of the game appeared in the 'Times' a short time ago from the pen of a correspondent at Tokio :—

The arena is a flat grassed rectangle, 216 ft. long and 60 ft. wide, enclosed by railings, or, better, by low banks 3 ft. or 4 ft. high. At the far or goal end beneath an arch of evergreens is a wooden barrier or screen, 8 ft. high, 12 ft. wide, and draped with flags ; and in the middle of this screen, at a height of 5 ft. from the ground, is a circular hole, 1·2 ft. in diameter, which opens into a bag-net, falling into a basket behind the screen. Right and left of the screen are stretched two horizontal wires, each carrying a

row of large conspicuous scoring balls, usually from seven to ten in number. The wire on the right has red balls for the red side; that on the left, white balls for the white side. Behind are stationed two scorers, whose duty it is to attend to the scoring balls for either side, as well as to proclaim each point made in the game by loud strokes on a drum for the white side, and on a gong for the red side. In front of the barrier, at a distance of 18 ft., is a padded railing, 3 ft. high, stretching across the course and marking the limit up to which the players may approach the screen. At the opposite or starting end of the enclosure another railing, 18 ft. from that end, also stretches across the course; and behind it two heaps of balls are piled on the ground—one red, the other white, together with two smaller heaps—one of red balls hooped with white and the other of white balls hooped with black. An attendant tosses these balls as required into the arena for the riders, which, owing to the deduction of 18 ft. at each end (as above explained) measures 180 ft. by 60 ft. All the balls are made of paper with a cover of very small pebbles and bamboo fibre. Their diameter is 1·7 inch, and they weigh very nearly 1¼ oz. For playing the game each rider carries a light wand, called *kiu-tsui*, of tapering bamboo, only about ½ inch in diameter at the thick end and 3 ft. 8 in. long. To its extremity is bound a flat, narrow strip of bamboo, bent over so as to form a semicircle of 1·5-inch radius, the outer end of which is held in position by a silken stay passing obliquely down to the bamboo shaft, 2 inches from its head. The space is filled in with light open network, just loose enough to sink into a saucer-shaped hollow when weighted with the ball. Now for details of the game: On each side, red and white, there are an equal number of players—usually from six to eight—distinguished by the colour of their headdress, and the object of each side is to get a certain number of balls into the net at the goal. Seven is the ordinary number of plain balls for a side, and in that case seven scoring balls of either colour are strung out on the wires at the right and left of the screen at the beginning of the game, the signal for which is given by the umpire and echoed by a brisk peal from the gong and drum. The riders, previously drawn up at the starting-point, now press forward with the balls as thrown in to them by the attendant behind the rails. Carrying, passing, casting—any means providing that the *kiu-tsui*, or stick, only is used—are allowed for getting the balls forward, until they are finally pitched into the net from the hither side of the goal railing. Obstructive tactics are, of

course, a prominent feature of the contest. To steal away and throw back the balls belonging to the other side; to dislodge them from an opponent's *kiu-tsui* by striking the latter; to put them out of play by striking them over the boundary; to hustle and hinder a dangerous foe; and especially to thwart him at the moment of attempting a cast into the net by shouting, brandishing your *kiu-tsui* before his eyes, or, better still, by arresting his weapon with your own—all this is lawful, and is not less important than successful casting on your own side. One or two skilled players of each colour generally hover about the goal for these purposes, as well as to shield their friends from being baulked by adversaries. A ball once out of play cannot be touched; a fresh one must be taken from the starting-point; but there is no limit to the number that may thus be taken on either side until its required number has been thrown into the net. At each successful cast the scorers deal two blows on the drum or gong for red or white (as the case may be), at the same time withdrawing out of sight one ball from the corresponding scoring wire. At the seventh ball there is a merry peal of blows. Then the greater struggle begins. For after succeeding with its plain balls, either side has yet to cast one striped ball into the net; and, as victory rests with those who first accomplish this, the skill of every player is exerted to the utmost. There are generally, of course, some ineffectual tries. Sooner or later, however, success is achieved, whereupon a joyous crash from gong or drum proclaims the triumph of red or white. Two wins out of three generally constitute a set, unless the ponies tire earlier—a point on which the umpire decides.

The rules of the game are some twenty-two in number and would take up too much space to quote here, but it may not be devoid of interest to note that 'off-side' is unknown in the Japanese game, that the lacrosse-like implements used are limited to a length of 3 ft. 4 in., the inside measurement of the net 'spoon' being 3 inches in width by $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches in length, and the ponies are limited to a height of 14 hands. These are decidedly rough-looking, with coarse heads, strong short necks, defective shoulders, and weak forelegs; they unite the vice of a camel with marvellous endurance, not to say intelligence, and some of them know the game almost as well as their riders. Take him all in all, the Japanese pony cannot lay

claim to much admiration, and even the best would compare very unfavourably with the worst English or Indian polo pony.

The stick used by the Japanese seems much the same as that described by the Byzantine historian Cinnamus, whom I have quoted in a former chapter, and there is but little doubt that the Japanese must have got the game through Corean Tartars, for, whether called 'chaugán' by the Persians, 'dakiu' by the Japanese, 'kànjā-i-bāzèè' by the Munnipoorees, or 'polo' by us, in whatever form it may be played, it seems inseparably connected with the hitting of a ball with a stick of some sort from horseback.

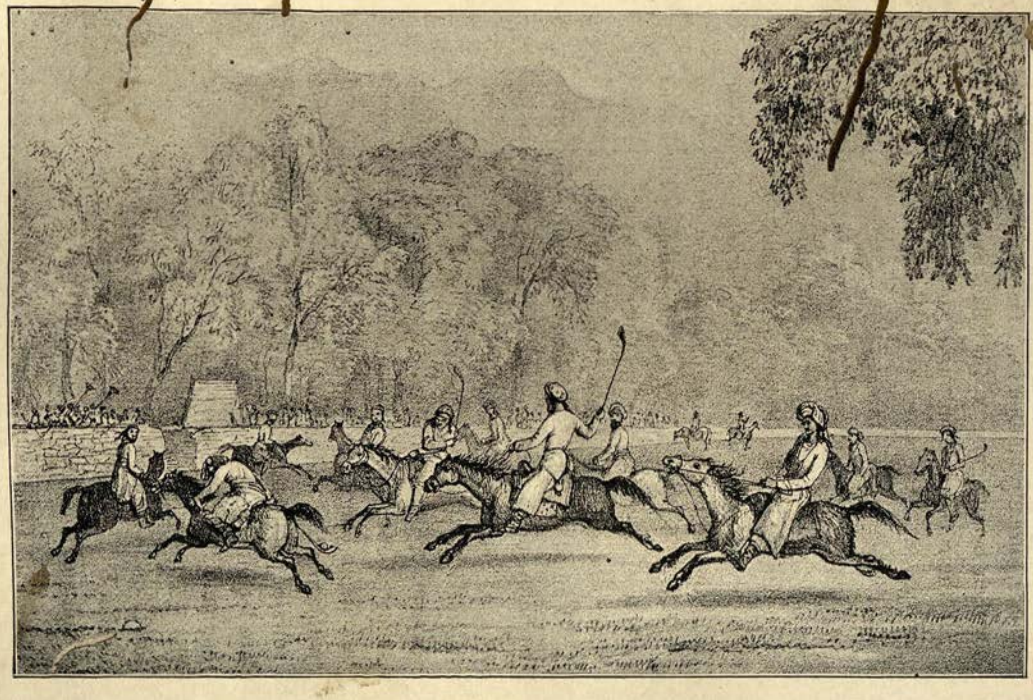
CHAPTER III

POLO IN INDIA

How, when, and where polo was first introduced into British India as a game for Europeans is a matter of controversy. Some believe that it came from Kashmir and Afghanistan, some that it was brought from China by the Irregular Cavalry after the war of 1861, and others again that it was known in the pre-Mutiny days, and authority for this last assertion is obtainable. Certain it is, that though the game was a favourite pastime amongst the Moghul rulers of Hindustan as late as the sixteenth century, yet historians seem to be silent on the subject subsequently, and there exists a hiatus in the mention of the game between the sixteenth and nineteenth centuries. It is probable, therefore, that it declined in popularity and died out.

The first allusion to polo in works written within the last half-century that considerable research has enabled me to find, is contained in a very interesting volume by Vigne entitled 'Travels in Kashmir, Ladakh, and Thibet,' published in 1842. It is, of course, possible that Vigne may have mentioned having seen the game played in Thibet on his return to India, but I can find no evidence that, even if he did so, it was ever taken up. Vigne's account of polo as played in Thibet is so graphic and interesting that I cannot resist quoting it and appending an illustration that accompanies the description which vividly depicts the method of play, the ponies, and locality. He says:—

At Shirghur, in Thibet, I first saw the game of chaugán, which was played the day after we arrived, on the mydán, or plain, laid out expressly for the purpose, being about three hundred and fifty



POLO IN THIBET

yards, or thereabouts, in length, by about sixty in breadth, covered with a fine turf and surrounded by a low stone wall and rows of poplars or linden trees. Two pillars of stone are let into the ground at a short distance from either end, and the space between them, about ten yards, is the goal or home of the players. It is, in fact, hockey on horseback. The ball, which is larger than a cricket ball, is only a globe made of a knot of willow wood, and is called in Thibeti *pulu*. The stick, or *byntu*, is of the strong and straight bough of the almond tree, about four feet in length, and let in at the top and passed quite through to the end of a piece of solid birch wood about the size and shape of a drenching horn. The course is attended by numerous spectators, who remain upon the wall and watch the game with the greatest interest. A carpet was spread for the Rajah, and he invited me to sit beside him. Meanwhile a boy was blindfolded, and the sticks of all the players, whose number is unlimited—but of course equal on both sides—were put into his hands, and from these he forms the sides by placing one alternately on the right and left of him. The Gylfo's[1] band is in attendance and plays whilst the game is going on. It commences by one of the chief players—perhaps a relation of the Gylfo—taking the ball in the left hand, and then, allowing the reins to lie upon the back[2] of the horse, he starts off at speed, tosses the ball into the air, and does not often fail to strike it, sending it far and high towards the opposite side. Immediately it falls a desperate *mêlée* takes place in order to hit it, and the players, perhaps sixteen in number, are rarely at rest until the game is finished. The exact rules I did not learn.

The horses of Little Thibet are small and active, and their long, uncombed manes and tails, together with the streaming black hair of their riders and the loose, pendent ends of the Thibetan turban, give to both horses and riders a most wild and picturesque appearance. I can conceive that chaugán requires only to be seen to be played. It is the fit sport of an equestrian nation, and would be, I should think, an excellent exercise for cavalry.

After alluding to the agility that the riders display, and to the fact that accidents do occur occasionally, Vigne continues:—

The game is played in almost every valley in Little Thibet and the adjoining countries of Ladakh, Yessen, Chitral, &c., and I

[1] Rajah or prince. [2] Query: Neck?

should strongly recommend it to be tried on the Hippodrome at Bayswater.

I fear that the locality alluded to would hardly have suited players of the present day, but the above shows that forty years ago there was some idea of introducing polo into England, and Vigne on his return to the Punjaub and North-West Provinces may have spoken highly of it to some of our Native Cavalry officers, and so introduced the game to their notice. Several distinguished Indian officers, however, who were through the Sikh wars have told me they never heard of polo in the Punjaub in those days. The following account of it in Baltistan appeared in the 'Field' in 1888 under the signature of 'Turbot':—

Towards six o'clock in the afternoon the Rajah, preceded by his musicians and followed by the retainers (a very mixed pack), without whom a great man of Asiatic extraction appears to be unable to move, rode past my camp to inform the Zillah Sahib, or representative of the Kashmir Maharaja, that the game was about to begin. I therefore started for the ground, followed, according to the custom of the country, by all the available blackguards whom my shikari could gather together. . . .

As we approached the polo ground strains of native music again played havoc with my nerves, and on our arrival we found a man dancing, and dancing uncommonly well, too, whilst awaiting the arrival of the Zillah Sahib. The polo ground itself is very picturesquely situated: cornfields, backed by a half-ruined fort to the east, a ridge of gravel with trees and buildings on it to the south, and, on the other sides, the great isolated rock with two forts on it which towers above the town;[1] a peep of the Indus, with the sandy plain 150 or 200 feet below the level on which we stood, and mountains bounding the view.

The ground itself is an exact oblong, about 150 yards long and not much more than thirty yards wide,[2] bounded on three sides by a low stone wall, and on the fourth by a terrace ten to twelve feet high, on which the spectators were assembled in considerable numbers. The surface is partly gravel, partly short tufty grass,

[1] Skardo, on the Indus, about 100 miles north-east of S'rinagar, capital of Kashmir.

[2] This is about the size of the ground at Léh, where the game is played in the principal street.

and altogether far from smooth. In an open space on the edge of the terrace there were two carpets, upon which my chair was placed ; and I was then ushered forward with great dignity by my shikari, Sumhud Khan. Meanwhile the dance continued, and I was watching it with great interest when the distant strains of more music reached my ears. This was the Zillah Sahib, on a small pony, 'attended by a brilliant staff'—to use the correct expression—and preceded by music which certainly made up in volume what it lacked in melody. The sounds grew nearer, but our other band was not to be outdone, and stuck manfully to its own tune, so that the effect, if not exactly pleasing, was certainly impressive ; and, in the absence of speaking trumpets, my introduction to the Zillah Sahib was carried out in dumb show. By this time the dancer—who, in addition to performing many vigorous and intricate steps, had been gradually working his way into a huge coat with tight sleeves, some two yards long—succeeded in reaching the cuffs and finding his hands again, whereupon he retired, and the ground was cleared for polo.

I was surprised at the good looks of some of the ponies, having rather expected to see under-bred beasts with cat hams and goose rumps, like the pictures one sees of Turcoman horses. On the contrary, these little 'tats,' though very small—12 hands 2 inches, and less—showed any amount of quality, and a few were real little pictures, handsome enough for the Park at home. When they began playing, too, they slipped along at a wonderful pace, and moved with the straightest, truest action imaginable. They were half buried in huge saddles with a high pummel in front, and made of a number of folds of thick cloth. All had heavy cruppers and a broad surcingle over everything. As far as I could see the riders all used snaffles, and the reins were apparently made of thick rope, lapped round with coloured cloth, and only just long enough to reach over the pony's neck, with a single tail in continuation, which must be very awkward for guiding an unwilling mount. I rode one of the ponies back to my camp and felt far from comfortable, being perched up on the great saddle nearly a foot above the pony's back with a useless end of rope in my hands instead of reins. If the little beasts were not just as keen as their riders about the game, I fancy it would be no easy matter to coerce them, as, apart from the question of reins, it would be no use to 'sit down and ride' the pony ; all your exertions would lose themselves in the layers of cloth on which you were sitting.

There was a good deal of discussion and delay (probably choosing sides) before the game commenced ; but at last all the players were mounted—seventeen or eighteen of them—and they hit off. It began in rather a desultory sort of way, and there was no galloping for the ball or crossing sticks, as with us. Though there were so many people on the ground, the chief part of the play was confined to ten or twelve, several men appearing to be second horsemen or servants of some kind. The costume and appearance of the riders were decidedly various, some being all in white, with large white puggrees, and one or two with English boots and a sort of half-English get-up, riding very long, like a pair of half-opened scissors, whilst others were the wildest figures imaginable, with long, flowing hair and dark-coloured, loose cloths flying all about the place, and who rode with their knees up to their chins. On the whole, the riding was rather of a loose character, with a good deal of 'by-action,' and arms flying about *à la* windmill ; but some of the players sat down as close and motionless as you please, and drove their little 'tats' along like workmen. Once the ball was started they certainly kept it going up and down the ground as fast as they could gallop, and several men played as good and pretty a game as you could wish to see.

Their sticks are not the least like ours, being much shorter and having a curved club-head, in shape very much like the bowl of a German pipe. The handle is fitted in where the pipe stem would be, is very thin, and is not thickened or covered at the other end, except with a strip of calico for the hand to grasp. Those I handled were very clumsy and top-heavy, besides being a good deal heavier than those most of us play with. However, these people use them well, and hit straight, back hand, over the off side, and all their strokes going at full speed, and on a rough ground, which would certainly puzzle some of our good men if they tried to play on it.

The balls are made of a hard, dark-coloured wood, and are durable and heavy. The goals at each end are marked by low white stones, much further apart than our goal posts—in fact, I do not think they were much more than seven or eight yards from the boundary on either side. Hitting the ball between the posts was not enough to constitute a goal, though I could not exactly make out what they had to do in addition. The ball had to be hit on one side and then 'touched down' somehow, as a man on the striker's side always jumped off and picked up the ball, sometimes

with rather a scuffle with others, after it was struck behind the goal. At any rate goals appeared to be numerous, and, after each of them, the most peculiar part of the performance took place. One of the players on the winning side, not necessarily the striker of the goal, taking the ball in his left hand, started from the back line, close to the boundary wall, on the right hand side of the ground the way he was going, and galloped off as hard as he could send his pony along. As he got mid-way he transferred the ball into the hand in which he held his stick, and, tossing it into the air, hit it as it fell with all his strength. They very seldom missed it, and made splendid strokes, driving it nearly to the further end of the ground. It was very pretty to watch, and I was quite pleased when a goal was obtained that I might watch the hit-off. Whilst the game progressed the combined bands played a selection of music which depended for its *piano*, *crescendo*, *forte*, and *fortissimo* effects on the character of the play, a good run being greeted with a banging of tom-toms and loud trumpetings, whilst a sudden drop to *pianissimo* condemned a bit of slow play or a total miss. To give the players their due most of the music was of a very vigorous character. The gallop and hit-off, especially if the latter was successful, were the occasions of redoubled efforts; but the moments for which the musicians really longed were when the Rajah galloped with the ball; then two enormous horns, about twelve feet long, with bells at the end which could have covered a small boy like an extinguisher, were reared slowly up to a horizontal position, the tom-tom wallahs grasped their sticks, and the Zillah Sahib's chief trumpeter distended himself with air, and, as their ruler started on his ride, every musician chose the note which experience told him was the most powerful that his instrument could produce, and blew his immortal soul into it. The great horns gave a mournful bellow, the trumpets brayed forth a brassy howl, the reeds squeaked in anything but unison, whilst as to the tom-toms, if the former wearers of the drum-heads could but have heard the hideous sounds that were to be produced by their remains, they would have been filled with consternation.

So the game progressed, amid much excitement, till there came a truly civilised pause for refreshment, which appealed to my sympathies in a most natural manner. They did not run to whisky and soda, however, and, instead of cigarettes, passed round a large bubble-bubble. Then there was more galloping, more hitting-off of the ball, with the usual accompaniment of

horrid sounds and harder riding than ever, varied by one stout gentleman in voluminous white garments, whose pony pecked and deposited him with a terrible souse on the broad of his back; yards of puggree flew about the ground, with considerable disarrangement of his remaining attire, but he was immediately surrounded by sympathising menials, who gradually swathed him into shape again, the ball meantime flying about the ground, with riders dashing after it, as if this interesting toilet were going on a hundred miles off, instead of in their midst. . . .

By this time the sun had almost set, and a golden light spread itself over the country, glorifying the bright cornfields and brightening the old fort and the buildings that peeped out from amongst the orchards. Far away a torrent was roaring down from the mountains, its voice softened by the distance to a mellow murmur that sank and swelled on the shifting breeze. The musicians had brought their performance to an end, and the whole scene was picturesque and peaceful beyond anything else that I have ever witnessed.

The game concluded with salaams from the Rajah and other players, to whom Sumhud Khan conveyed my thanks and compliments. I was presented with one of the sticks and given a pony to ride back to my camp. So ended an interesting sight, in a very curious and interesting place—a spot lost in the heart of the Himalayas, where our best and one of our most popular games has been played for—who shall say how many generations before the time we first saw it and added it to the list of our national sports?

There is a great amount of similarity in these two descriptions, but I have quoted them both as tending to show that but little alteration has taken place in the game in Thibet and Central Asia during nearly half a century, and we may conclude that polo is played there much as it was centuries ago. The game was known, however, and practised for many a hundred years far nearer our own frontier than the sterile wastes of Little Thibet, and though it slumbered long in comparative obscurity in this out-of-the-way nook, it was destined sooner or later to blossom into popularity not only in India but elsewhere.

If the reader will glance at a map of India he will see lying between the British provinces of Assam and Cachar and

the north-west of Burmah an immense range of mountainous country. In this great mountain tract lie snugly ensconced amid the hills that rise to an elevation of 6000 to 7000 feet one or two large valleys. The largest and most important embraces the independent state of Munnipore, the area of whose central valley is about 650 square miles, standing at an elevation of some 2700 feet above the sea level and governed by the Rajah of that ilk. The origin of the Munnipoories is obscure, as their written records were only composed at the time of their conversion to Hinduism in the beginning of the last century, and as such are not reliable. But by a Shan account of the Shan kingdom of Pong we find mention of one Samlong, a brother of the Pong king, having descended into the Munnipore valley on his return from Tipperah in the year 777 A.D. This is the earliest record of the Munnipoories as a distinct race.

Captain Pemberton attributes their origin to the Tartars and says: 'We may safely conclude them to be the descendants of a Tartar colony from China.' In this diagnosis he is doubtless right, for one has only to scan their features, high cheekbones, flat faces, and almond-shaped eyes to realise that they have a large share of Tartar and Chinese blood in their veins.

This, however, is at variance with the opinion expressed by Captain McCulloch, who was Political Agent at Munnipore for over twenty years, and who in 1859 published an interesting pamphlet on the Munnipoories and the adjacent tribes. Be that as it may, no doubt Munnipore is the cradle of Indian polo, though it is unknown by that name there, where it is called *kàn-jāi-bāzèè*, and occupies as a national game the position that cricket does with us. Children commence practising the game on foot and on horseback from an early age, and proficiency in the game is viewed as a road to royal favour. A tradition exists amongst the Munnipoories that the game was introduced into their country more than 300 years ago by one of their rajahs, Pakungba by name; but if Captain Pemberton's opinion as to their origin be correct, it is more than

probable that the Tartars, from whom he believes them to be descended, brought the game with them, for it is distinctly of Tartar origin.

[The ponies used in the country are all home-bred, varying from 10 hands to 13 hands 2 inches in height, and though small are hardy, wiry, and active, with blood-like heads. For polo a pony of from 12 hands 2 inches to 13 hands is considered the best. The Munnipoories ride in a double-ringed snaffle made very thick, like a colt's mouthing bit, the reins being round and heavy. Their saddles, called *sabul*, are curious structures and enormously heavy, weighing some 30 lbs., with both pummel and cantle projecting considerably. Attached to each side of this edifice, hanging on the ponies' sides and between them and the riders' legs, which they partly protect from blows, are huge flaps of leather curled round at the ends, called *naktung*, which, in addition to serving their purpose as safeguards to the riders' legs, make a tremendous rattling as the ponies gallop. The Munnipoories ride very short and only just insert their toes into the stirrups, which are broad and heavy. An elaborate number of trimmings over the pony's quarters completes the get-up, and these, combined with the great lumbering saddle, almost hide the diminutive 'tattoos' they bestride from view, little else but head, tail, and legs being visible. The Munnipoories invariably carry a whip made of plaited thongs of raw hide slung on the left wrist, though where they manage to hit their ponies, covered as they are with leather and trappings, is a mystery.]

Their sticks are made of light hard wood, the butt some eleven inches long, with a handle of well-seasoned cane inserted into it. These handles vary from four to five feet in length, according to the fancy of the player, and are considered of some value. Indeed, the Rajah has a special plantation near his capital where they are grown for the purpose. The end of the stick, or *kàn-jāi*, is covered with red or blue cloth for about a foot from the upper end, and to be the right length should reach the rider's elbow when the butt is resting on the

ground. The ball, which is made of the root of a particular sort of bamboo called *kundroom*, undergoes an elaborate process of seasoning before it is considered fit to play with. It then becomes very tough and as light as a cork, lightness which would hardly be considered an advantage by English polo-players, since it cannot be driven very far. The ground at Munnipore, where all the important matches are played at festivals and on great occasions, is 225 yards long by 110 yards wide, and is enclosed by a small bank of earth about two feet high all round. This keeps the ball within bounds and corresponds with the boundary boards at Hurlingham. No goal-posts are used, but the game is called as soon as the ball is hit to one end of the ground.

The usual number of players varies from seven to nine a side, but this is often exceeded, as many as fifteen a side sometimes playing; but for matches nine a side is considered the correct number. They have few or no rules connected with the game, though some strategical science is exhibited, and they place their men somewhat in the fashion we do ours, having a 'back,' who is the captain, looked after by a 'No. 1' on the opposite side, and who is generally mounted on a fast pony. They also have a 'half-back,' and the others are 'forward' players, who arrange themselves pretty much as fancy pleases them, though it is generally understood that the different players are to select some particular opponent to play against. The result is that they play pretty much in pairs, as in the old Persian days, and have a total ignorance of being 'off-side,' which fact is indeed not recognised in the Munnipore game.

Play begins by the two teams assembling in mid-ground when the ball is thrown in. If it is hit out of bounds it is thrown in where it was hit out. In a match a certain number of goals is decided on as the score, and the side that hits this number first is counted the winner. A player may knock away another's stick or may ride him out, but it is not considered fair either to hook an opponent's stick or his body. A player may change ponies as often as he likes, but play is never sus-

pended to enable him to do so, and men are placed round the ground with spare sticks to hand to any player who may have broken his. The Munnipoories never attempt to 'dribble' a ball, except perhaps for a stroke or two in order to get a fair swipe at it or to get it out of a bully, but it is all hard hitting and hard galloping from beginning to end. They greatly value their ponies, some of which thoroughly enter into the spirit of the game, following the ball of their own accord, hardly needing any guidance, and the owner of a really good pony will not part with it under any circumstances—indeed, some years ago a rajah of Munnipore invaded Cachar at the head of a large army to recover a pony that the rajah of that country had taken from him, and a Munnipoorie has even been known to pawn his wife in order to purchase a pony on which to play the game. In fact, polo is the one idea uppermost in the Munnipoorean male mind, and professional players are highly paid for their services.

I am indebted to Major-General Sherer and the 'Field' for the above notes, which I have had perforce to abridge considerably. To the latter journal I owe the following interesting description of the game, which I have transcribed literally:—

In striking the ball and using the stick Munnipoories are most skilful; some of their ordinary strokes are never attempted by Europeans, and would seem almost impossible to a person who had not seen them. It is this use of the stick that enables them to give long odds to us, for in mere riding they are by no means our masters. The ordinary strokes that they use may be said to be six in number, three on the right hand and three on the left. On the right-hand side they practise the ordinary strokes backwards and forwards, the blow being given, not from the wrist, but from the shoulder with the whole force of the arm. Besides these they have a two-handed stroke. When a player catches the ball he puts his pony to a gallop in a line parallel with the goal, throws the ball in the air, and hits it with the stick held in both hands, the reins being thrown on the pony's neck. Munnipoories generally succeed in this stroke, but it is seldom or never attempted by Europeans—indeed, it is difficult in an English saddle and without a well-trained pony. On the left side the Munnipoories hit as

freely and almost as strongly as on the right ; they are the ordinary forward strokes, and a back stroke, by which the ball can be hit either straight back or at right angles behind the pony's tail.[1] This is a most useful stroke and not difficult to acquire after practice although at first the beginner generally succeeds in hitting his pony's tail oftener than the ball. There is also a two-handed stroke on this side, the ball not being thrown into the air but hit along the ground, both hands being used to give greater power. Besides these ordinary strokes, with which every Munnipoorie is acquainted, and which are constantly used, there are many fancy strokes which are more for show than use. One of them is to hit the ball, when at rest, with a downward stroke, so as to make it rise in the air, catch it on the butt of the stick, and hit it away. Another is to hit the ball forward behind the pony's tail by a back stroke on the right-hand side ; but strokes of this kind are extremely difficult and only attempted by the very best players.

According to our ideas of *hands*, a Munnipoorie has none, and his way of turning his pony is by a rude jerk of the bridle and being ever 'at' him with his whip. Consequently, when a European gets on one of these animals a misunderstanding generally arises. Taking them all round the Munnipoories, with their long, streaming hair, their bodies naked to the waist, their quaint saddlery, and excited demeanour, give one a fair idea of the noble savage thoroughly enjoying himself.

When playing by themselves and merely for practice the Munnipoories prefer to ride barebacked, and letting loose their long hair, and gripping the sides of their ponies with their naked, dark-hued legs, they flash hither and thither, making such abrupt and sharp turns and sudden pauses that it is difficult at times to realise that man and pony have not one will, as they seem to have one body.

To Major-General J. F. Sherer, to whom I shall presently allude more fully, I am indebted for the following additional remarks on Munnipoories and their play.

He says :—

To see *kàn-jāi-bāzèè* played in its greatest perfection one should go to the fountain-head of the game, at the Munnipore capital itself.

[1] I have seen Mr. John Watson, Mr. F. B. Mildmay, and Mr. Arthur Peat perform this latter stroke several times at Hurlingham.

I took my team up there in 1865, and the Maharaja got up several matches for me. I and my band, who had been so proud of our victories in Calcutta, were simply *nowhere* in Munnipore. We never won a single game. The game was fast and furious. The Maharaja's men were his picked team, the best players in the State—clean, clever, and scientific in their strokes and sharp as needles. The Munnipoories, again, were no respecters of persons. It was quite permissible, and recognised as lawful, to ride *at* and *through* anything or anybody that came between the player and the spot where the ball lay. I was once caught in this position and dilemma, and was simply sent spinning, pony and all, and got considerably shaken and bruised.

To return, however, after this long digression, to the question of when and where polo was first introduced into British India and attracted the notice of Europeans. There is but little doubt that it was first played in British territory in Cachar in 1854–5. Tea-planting was then only being started in that lovely valley, where some dozen or so planters had begun opening up their various estates. The valley and villages were full of Munnipoories, resident agriculturists who had been obliged to leave their native State for political reasons, or who had emigrated voluntarily, taking with them their families and polo ponies. Each group of these villages had its little native polo club, and games were of frequent occurrence. About this time, before the country was opened up, the tea-gardens were so scattered, and so far away from the Sudder station of Cachar, that except at Christmas or at the annual Doorga Pojah festivals the planters hardly ever came in to the station; but when they did on rare occasions, a scratch polo match would be got up on the detachment parade ground between half a dozen Europeans and twice the number of Munnipoories—that is to say, three Europeans and six Munnipoories on each side. Thus it came about that in 1854 the game attracted the attention of a young subaltern of the Bengal Army—Lieut. J. F. Sherer, Adjutant of the Sylhet Light Infantry (now the 44th Native Infantry). Soon after this Lieutenant (now Major-General) Sherer was employed politically on the north-east frontier, and

for eleven years had greater opportunities of seeing the game played than most men. Fascinated with the charms of the sport, he took to playing himself. Then came the stormy days of the great Indian Mutiny, when men's minds were turned to other and more serious matters, and it was more an object to hit a Pandy head than a polo ball; but when the great wave of rebellion had quieted down, Sherer and Captain Robert Stewart, who was then Superintendent of Cachar, and whose assistant Sherer was, started and organised a *European* polo club in 1859, and this they had no great difficulty in doing, for between 1854 and 1859 the European element had largely increased, and the game was becoming more popular and better known year by year. Before long some of the active young mercantile blood of the great Calcutta houses, whilst visiting their tea estates in Cachar, became bitten with the mania. They used to see Sherer, Stewart, and their merry men playing, and became infected with the disease to such an extent, that from time to time they took down balls and sticks to Calcutta, began to play in earnest, and started a club of their own. So popular did the sport become, that in February 1864 Captain Sherer took down his team of seven Munnipoories, who went by the name of the 'Band of Brothers,' to Calcutta, to show them how the trick was done. The game took like wild fire, and so Captain Sherer not only obtained the honoured title of 'the father of polo,' but was entertained at a great banquet in the Indigo Mart at Calcutta, and received more tangible recognition of the value of his services in being presented with a most handsome tankard and salver of solid silver.

It was not, however, till 1861 or 1862 that the game was introduced into the Punjaub and North-West Provinces by Captain G. Stewart, of the Guides, and a Madras officer, Eustace Hill, of the Lahore Light Horse. About this time also Captain (now General) G. Stewart, C.B., late of the Guides, who had seen the game played in Cachar when staying with his brother, the late Colonel R. Stewart, then Superintendent of Cachar in 1862, formed a club at Barrackpore, and on his way to

Peshawur the following year started clubs at Cawnpore and Mian Mir (Lahore), having brought up sticks and balls for the purpose. In Peshawur he also started it, and during 1863-4 it was regularly played there under its Munnipoorean name of *kàn-jāi bāzèè*—*bāzèè* meaning game, and *kàn-jāi* hockey-stick. The game was also introduced at Hazáribágh about 1861-2. About that time Khaifa Singh and Konai Singh, two princes of the blood, were deported to Hazáribágh in consequence of constantly intriguing against the Munnipore Rajah. Of course their followers accompanied them, and as a Munnipoorie looks on his polo ponies, his sticks, and ball as his most precious possessions, they took these with them, and the pastime soon attracted the attention of Europeans. About the same period the Rajah of Kashmir became an enthusiast at the game, *pél-khet*, or ball play, as it was then called, having learnt it from some Khokhani prisoners. He established a capital chaugán maidan at S'rinagar some three hundred and fifty yards long by sixty yards in width, became a great proficient, and even used to emulate the feats of the Emperor Akbar, by playing at night with burning balls. The game, however, must have been known long before this in Kashmir, and can only have been revived about the time I have mentioned. The game was also played in 1863 at Tonghoo in Burmah by the officers quartered there.

During the summer of 1864, Captain (now Brigadier) Kinloch, the well-known shikari and author, who was then serving in the Rifle Brigade, saw and played the game at S'rinagar, the capital of Kashmir, in company with several of his brother-officers. On their return from leave they introduced it at Meerut, where both the Rifle Brigade and the 19th Hussars took it up warmly.

But it was not till some years later that polo was taken up seriously by Europeans; the planters of Tirhoot and Behar—that most sporting set of men—gave it the initiatory start, and matches were of frequent occurrence. By 1865 the game was fairly established in the City of Palaces and Lower Bengal; in Madras a game was played on the Island in 1867, and in 1874 it had really spread. The famine in Behar during that

year caused many army men to be employed on the relief works. They learnt the game from the planters, and on re-joining their regiments introduced it. The 54th Regiment were then at the top of the tree, but when the 10th Hussars went out, the latter soon demonstrated that small ponies were of little use against bigger ones. Then the 9th Lancers on their arrival in India in 1875 took to the sport in earnest, and to their example as well as to that of the 10th Hussars and 54th Regiments, combined with the causes I have previously alluded to, may be traced the popularity polo gained among riding men. During the great assemblage at Delhi in 1876, when regiments from all parts of India met, the question was seriously discussed, an annual Inter-Regimental Tournament was resolved on, rules were drawn up, the four-a-side game adopted, and the pastime put on the footing it now holds. In 1877 the first of these meetings was held at Meerut, and the game there played was practically the same as that at present played in England. To Colonel St. Quintin, now commanding the 8th Hussars, but then in the 10th Hussars, must be given the credit for calling this meeting at Delhi and putting matters on the basis they have assumed: he was unanimously elected Hon. Secretary of the Inter-Regimental Polo Tournament, and during his stay in India may certainly be looked upon as having been the leading man. The Inter-Regimental meetings gave a great fillip to the game, and from 1877 down to the present time these have been held annually either at Umballa or Meerut, with the exception of the years 1879–80, when the Afghan War prevented play. The 9th Lancers were the heroes of these gatherings, having won the tournament no fewer than five times, besides winning the Calcutta Open Cup in 1885, while the 8th and 10th Hussars and the 17th Lancers can each claim two victories apiece, and the 5th Lancers two. In 1883 the 10th Hussars presented a cup to be contested for by Native Cavalry regiments, and this is still kept up and played for annually. The Calcutta Polo Club also give a cup, open to all comers, and the Maharajah of Cooch Behar, that most

sporting of Oriental potentates, took the game under his fostering care, rode first-rate ponies, and played vigorously, as he does still. The Maharajah of Mysore also gives a cup to be played for at Bangalore.

The year 1877 may be said to have marked a new epoch in the polo as played in India, for larger ponies began to be used, and play generally put on a more scientific basis. Previous to the 'eighties' two or three ponies apiece were considered enough for any man, and there was a lack of that knowledge of strategy and tactics that is now necessary to enable a player to rank high. Combination in a team was unknown, and every one played more or less for himself. But all this has been changed. Seven or eight ponies apiece are now not uncommon, and if a man does not 'play the game,' he is hopelessly 'out of it.'

Nowadays the great polo tournaments are looked upon as regular social events, and such is the *esprit de corps* existing that from the uttermost parts of the empire, and often at great expense, regiments send representative teams to compete in the great contests. When it is taken into consideration that each regiment often sends a stud of thirty ponies with their attendants several hundreds of miles to Meerut and Umballa by road and rail, it will be seen how great a foothold the game has now obtained, and in this respect none have perhaps shown greater pluck and enthusiasm than the 7th Hussars, 17th Lancers, 13th and 25th Regiments. Right pleasant too are these great gatherings, when men from all parts of the empire congregate, and there is no surer place of meeting for old and widely scattered 'pals' than the Indian polo tournaments.

The Nizam and nobles of Hyderabad also have of late years done much to encourage the sport, and enter into it with great zest and keenness. Both the Nizam and nobles maintain professional players, whom they not only pay well, but mount on the best ponies that money can buy. Many of these men have come to the front wonderfully of late years and display most excellent horsemanship, together with all the

suppleness that characterises Orientals, no mean advantage in a game. They lack combination, however, and each man plays too much for himself. It is a pity that one of these teams does not visit Hurlingham, and see if it could hold its own against such players as the Messrs. Peat, John Watson, &c. The betting would certainly be in favour of the Englishmen, but the contest would be one worth going a long way to see. [That history repeats itself is a truism, and it is strange that a game once so universally popular in India should have been practically reintroduced by its conquerors, and that some of the descendants of the Moghul horsemen who exhibited their skill at the Imperial Court of Agra and Lahore centuries ago, should now be amongst the most noted players of our Indian Empire.]

The Nizam of Hyderabad gives an open challenge cup which is played for annually on the polo ground at Secunderabad, and there is a polo tournament held annually at Poona which bids fair to rival that at Bombay. Others take place at Allahabad, Nusseerabad, and Calcutta, besides the Infantry Tournament and the Native Cavalry Tournament, in which latter only one native per team is allowed to play.

And so north and south, east and west, in our great Indian empire the national game of its former rulers has again blossomed forth, and, like a green tree, grows and flourishes, nearly every station having its polo ground and club. Umballa in particular boasts of no fewer than fifteen polo grounds, where play and practice take place most days in the year, and it is noteworthy that in 1884 the three great contests played at Umballa—the Inter-Regimental Tournament, the Infantry Inter-Regimental Tournament, and the Native Cavalry Cup—were all won by regiments quartered at that place.

Polo grounds in India differ greatly from those at home, being very hard and fast, though very level, and easily found. During the hottest months of the year, viz. March, April, and May, the grass all dies down and the surface is little better than a dusty plain. Once the monsoon bursts, however, the grass springs up like magic, and though during the rains the

going is heavy, by about October little fault can be found with them. Watering has been tried, and has in some cases proved efficacious, but as a rule rolling is all the attention they require.

Thus since its initiatory start in 1854 polo has gone on steadily increasing in popularity, and nowadays there is hardly a station in all our vast Indian empire that does not possess its polo ground and club, most regiments, both of infantry and cavalry, native and European, having their teams. The game has improved vastly, discipline and strategy having taken the place of mere skill in the use of the stick and brute force, till now it may fairly be classed as the best and most popular pastime in the land.

There is nothing new under the sun certainly, and soon, since ladies have taken to cricket, we shall probably hear of a ladies' polo team entering the lists at Hurlingham! In a preceding chapter allusion has been made to some Eastern damsels participating in the game, and this example has of late been emulated in India, for Captain G. F. Younghusband, in his capital little book 'Polo in India,' gives the following amusing account of a ladies' polo match, which is so good that I must apologise to the gallant author for quoting it *in extenso*.[1]

He says :—

> The match was between four married ladies and four single ones, each side being allowed one of the opposite and more brutal sex to act as a support and backbone to the team; but it was specially ordained that neither of them was to go up into the game and hit the ball about too much, or hustle in an unladylike manner.
>
> The game was a very fast and good one for about a minute, and then one of the unmarried ladies called a halt, on the ground that her veil was dreadfully in the way, and she must really take it off—which she accordingly did, whilst every one waited—and the male member of the team was called up and ordered to put it in his pocket; an unreasonable and even tyrannical request when made to a man with next to no clothing on, and certainly no pockets in it.

[1] A ladies' polo match was played in Ireland in 1890.

Another minute of stern and businesslike play—during which the two teams managed to hit the ball three distinct times between them—and then Mrs. A. declared she could play no longer with gloves on, because she could not hold her stick properly; and Mrs. B., having played so far without gloves, taking the opposite view, said she could play no longer without gloves, and that her rings hurt her dreadfully. So these two went off to the touch line, the one to take off her gloves, and the other to put them on. This was a famous opportunity for all the rest of the party to discover that something or other was wrong with them, their ponies or their get-up. Having soothed and set straight everybody, the two males get off their ponies, light cigars, and sit down on the ground to await the development of affairs. After a quarter of an hour's rest they developed into another three minutes' play, during which a considerable improvement in the all-round play was noticeable, and one of the males hit a goal for his side, much to the indignation of all the ladies on the other side. Then followed two minutes' more play, during which the other male, incited thereto by the reproofs liberally administered to him by his own side, hit a corresponding goal for them. By the nature of things it was now, in the ordinary course of events, tea-time, and an adjournment for this necessary meal was at once decided upon. After tea, which occupied one way or another about half an hour, play was resumed. Every one seemed greatly revived, and some really good runs were made. It is quite astonishing what wonders tea works on the female constitution. So in our game tea made all the difference, and the play afterwards was really astonishingly good, considering the inexperience of the players. Having the off side of the pony quite clear, they could get a clean hit on that side, and those on handy, well-trained ponies appeared to be very nearly as active after the ball as men would be. As long as ladies play only in a ladies' game, and ride handy, well-trained ponies, there is no reason why polo should not, like hunting, become a pastime for our sisters and cousins and aunts as well as for ourselves. To return to our match. After, in all, about twenty minutes' play, it was voted that the game should be declared drawn, every one being too hot and tired to go on.

Having thus traced the rise and development of polo up to the present phase of the game with which most of us are familiar, it may be as well to say something, not only of the rules which

govern it, how it should be played, the ponies used, &c., but of famous players who by their exertions and precept have tended to make it what it is. Even those who are most intolerant of sport cannot but acknowledge that polo is a fine and manly game, and one that has the advantage of being devoid of that element of gambling which has tended so much to degrade many of our other sports. For it is a sport that induces men to run personal risks for mere honour and glory, a refreshing reflection in these days, when the widely different terms of 'sportsman' and 'sporting man' are so frequently confused by the ignorant.

A QUICK TURN

CHAPTER IV

RULES AND BY-LAWS OF POLO

THE Hurlingham Club stands in the same relation to polo as the M.C.C. does to cricket; in fact, the Hurlingham Polo Committee may be considered the governing body of the game —to make, alter, and amend all rules and laws connected with it. The committee who frame these laws are a powerful body, composed of men who thoroughly know the game, men who have been, and are players, and who are representatives of the leading polo clubs and regimental teams; and therefore it will be patent, on glancing over the names of those acting on the committee for 1889, that rules approved of by such authorities are as good as they well can be.

In 1889 the Hurlingham Polo Committee was made up thus :—

Viscount Valentia.
Earl of Harrington.
Sir Charles Wolseley, Bart.
Edward Baldock, Esq.
Captain Herbert.
T. S. Kennedy, Esq.
Major Cecil Peters, 4th Hussars.
Arthur Peat, Esq.
Richard Fort, Esq.
Gerald Hardy, Esq.
Captain Julian Spicer, Royal Horse Guards.
John Watson, Esq.
F. B. Mildmay, Esq., M.P.
Earl of Airlie, 10th Royal Hussars.
Captain Heywood Jones.
Capt. the Hon. Richard Lawley 7th Hussars.
Captain Lamont, 9th Lancers.

Captain Walter Smythe (*Manager*).

RULES AND REGULATIONS

1. The height of ponies must not exceed 14 hands, and no ponies showing vice are to be allowed in the game.

2. The goals to be not less than 250 yards apart, and each goal to be 8 yards wide.

3. The size of the balls to be 3 inches in diameter.

4. Each side shall nominate an umpire, unless it be mutually agreed to play with one instead of two ; and his (or their) decision shall be final. In important matches, in addition to the umpires, a referee may be appointed, whose decision shall be final.

5. In all matches for cups or prizes the number of players contending to be limited to four a side.

6. The duration of games in matches shall be one hour and ten minutes, an interval of five minutes between each twenty minutes of play being deducted from the above ; or four quarters, with intervals of three minutes.

7. In cup competitions the game in case of a tie must be played on till one side obtains a goal.

8. The side that makes most goals wins the game.

9. The game commences by both sides taking up their position in the middle of the ground and the manager throwing the ball in the centre.

10. If a ball is hit above the top of the goal posts, but in the opinion of the umpire through, it shall be considered a goal.

11. If the ball be hit behind the back line by one of the opposite side, it shall be hit off by one of the side whose line it is from a spot as near as possible to where it crossed the line. None of the attacking side shall be within 30 yards of the back line until the ball is hit off. If, however, the ball be hit behind the back line by one of the players whose line it is, they shall hit it off as near as possible to where it crossed the line, and all the defending side shall remain behind the ball until it is hit off, the attacking side being free to place themselves as they choose.

12. When a ball is hit out of bounds it must be thrown into the playground by the umpire.

13. A player may ride out an antagonist or interpose his pony before his antagonist so as to prevent the latter reaching the ball, but he may not cross another player in possession of the ball, excepting at such a distance as to avoid all risk of a collision.

Definition of 'Crossing.'—If two players are riding from different directions to hit the ball, and a collision appears probable, then the player in possession of the ball—i.e. he who last hit the ball, or who is coming in the direction from which the ball was last hit—must be given way to.

14. It is allowed to hook an adversary's stick, but neither under nor over an adversary's pony.

15. No player who is off side shall hit the ball, or shall in any way prevent the opposite side from reaching or hitting the ball.

Definition of 'Off Side.'—A player is 'off side' when, at the time of the ball being hit, he has no one of the opposite side between him and the adversaries' goal-line or behind that goal-line, and he is neither in possession of the ball nor behind one of his own side who is in possession of the ball. The position of the players is to be considered at the time the ball was last hit—i.e. a player, if on side when the ball was last hit, remains on side until it is hit again.

16. In case of a foul (viz. infringement of Rules 13, 14, and 15) the umpire shall stop the game, and the side that has been fouled may claim either of the following penalties :—

(*a*) A free hit from where the ball was when the foul took place, none of the opposing side to be within 10 yards of the ball.

(*b*) That the side which caused the foul take the ball back and hit it off from behind their own goal-line.

17. Ends shall be changed after every goal, or if no goal have been obtained, after half-time. The ball must go over and clear of the line to be out, or to score a goal. If the ball be damaged the umpire must stop the game and throw in a new ball at the place where it was broken, and at right angles to the length of the ground.

18. Should a player's stick be broken he must ride to the place where sticks are kept and take one. On no account is a stick to be brought to him.

19. In the event of a stick being dropped the player must pick it up himself. No dismounted player is allowed to hit the ball.

20. No persons allowed within the arena—players, umpires, and manager excepted.

[1] Though rare, occasions may arise when a player may catch the ball in his hand. In this event he is entitled to carry the ball up to the goal and hit it through; but in such an event it is permissible for an opponent to ride *over*

BY-LAWS

1. That, in the event of any player having a fall, or if, in the opinion of the umpire, any player shall be hurt in any way to prevent his playing, the umpire shall in that case stop the game and allow time for the dismounted man to mount, or the injured man to be replaced. On play being recommenced the ball shall be thrown in where it was when the accident occurred.

2. Every regiment having among its officers four members of the Hurlingham Club, and starts a team in the Inter-regimental Polo Tournament, and which is not already represented, shall have a right to elect one officer (being a polo player and a member of Hurlingham) as a member of the Hurlingham Polo Committee; and this officer shall be a member of the committee for one year from the time he is elected.

3. That in future the charge for the ball be done away with, and the game commenced by the manager throwing in the ball.

4. In order that all members may play during the afternoon, the manager shall have power to shorten the time and stop the match or game at the appointed hour.

5. All polo clubs must be registered with the manager on May 10 in each year. A book of rules and members of such club to be forwarded at time of registration.

6. In matches for cups or prizes the ponies must be *bona fide* the property of the club or regiment contending.

7. No spurs with rowels allowed, except on special occasions when sanctioned by the committee.

8. Each pony to be passed under the 14-hand standard by the manager and two of the polo committee. A book to be kept by the manager in which the height of all ponies belonging to members is to be entered. A pony five years old or aged, after having been passed, is not required to go under the standard again.

9. Not more than four players on each side are allowed to play, the members arriving first at the Pavilion to have the precedence.

him and knock him down. This is an unwritten law, founded, perhaps, on the way the Persians played the game. It is one that requires strict definition, and the attention of the Hurlingham Polo Committee might well be directed to it, as well as to the necessity of passing some rule about left-handed players.

The rules for the game as played in India, and revised at Meerut in March 1888 by the Inter-regimental Polo Tournament Committee, which occupies to Indian polo the position that Hurlingham does to the English game, are practically the same, though there are a few differences, the most prominent of which I will quote from a copy now before me.

'*Rule* 1. Each game shall consist of six periods of 8 minutes each, exclusive of stoppages and intervals. Time shall not be called while the ball is in play, unless the game shall have lasted 48 minutes, when time shall be called irrespective of the ball being in play. (This applies only to Inter-regimental tournaments; at the other tournaments either four or five periods only are played.)

Rule 3. In the event of a tie the game shall be continued another 8 minutes, the goal flags being placed 44 feet apart.

Rule 7. The maximum height of ponies shall be 13 hands 3 inches.

Rule 14. At each end of the ground, in the centre of the back line, there shall be a goal marked by flags, which shall be 22 feet apart.

Rule 18. To start the game the umpire shall have the ball placed in the centre of the ground. Two players on opposite sides shall cross their sticks, heads upwards, over the ball, after which any player may strike the ball.

By the above extracts it will be seen that, though the method of starting the game is somewhat similar to that which we are accustomed to in England, the periods of play are shorter and the goal flags wider apart.

The rules of the Cachar Kàn-jāi [1] Club, as determined at a meeting held at Silchar on January 1, 1863, are quoted by Captain G. J. Younghusband in his interesting little volume, 'Polo in India,' and they may well call up a smile on the reader's face. The rules are twenty-three in number, and are much the same as those now in force; but Rule 9, which says that 'any player may interpose his horse before his antagonist's, so as to prevent his antagonist from reaching the ball,

[1] Kàn-jāi is the Munnipoorie name for polo.

whether in full career or at the slow pace, and this despite the immediate neighbourhood of the ball,' would be a very fruitful cause of accident if adhered to in the present galloping game. By Rule 15 it is enforced that, 'as a general rule, in regular matches, no player can use fresh horses, or no horse have fresh riders.' It would indeed be a wonderful pony that could carry its rider through the whole of a game as at present played! Rule 20 infers that 'spurs and whips may be freely used, but only on the rider's own horse. To beat an adversary's horse is foul play.' How a player could use his spurs on another man's horse is not very clear, but the game must have been rather of the rough-and-tumble order in those days to necessitate such a rule. Perhaps Rule 22 is the most remarkable. It enacts that 'it is to be understood that no player shall be under the influence of "Bhang-gouja," or spirituous liquors.' As a matter of fact the sportsman of to-day, whether he be a hunting or shooting man or polo player, is decidedly of the abstemious order, and more given to the consumption of tea and lemon squashes than the spirituous 'peg' of brandy or whisky and soda.

Of course in those days, following the example of the Munnipoories, from whom they learnt the game, the Cachar sportsmen rode small ponies of about twelve hands two inches, or under, and the ground, which was rectangular in shape, was smaller, being only 200 yards in length by 120 yards in width.

The following is a list of polo clubs registered at Hurlingham :—

The Monmouthshire County Club. *Colours—red & white.*
The Hurlingham Club. *Colours—blue & silver.*
The Sussex County Club. *Colours—orange & lilac.*
The Ranelagh Club. *Colours—pink & white.*
The Barton-under-Needwood Club. *Colours—maroon & light blue.*
The All-Ireland Polo Club. *Colours—red & gold.*
'The Freebooters.' *Colours—white.*
Carlow County Club. *Colours—red & white.*
The West Essex Club.

The Hertfordshire County Club. *Colours—blue & white.*
The Manchester Polo Club. *Colours—chocolate & yellow.*
The Liverpool Polo Club. *Colours—chocolate & pink.*
The North Devon Polo Club.
The Gloucestershire County Club. *Colours—blue & red.*
Oxford University Polo Club. *Colours—dark blue.*
Cambridge University Polo Club. *Colours—light blue.*
Maiden Erleigh Polo Club.
Leeds Polo Club.
Wirral Polo Club. *Colours—yellow & black.*
Ashtead Polo Club. *Colours—scarlet.*
The Hampshire County Club.
Canterbury Garrison Polo Club.
Aldershot Garrison Polo Club.
The Kent County Club. *Colours—yellow & white horse.*
The Derbyshire County Club. *Colours—yellow & black belt.*
Priory Polo Club. *Colours—yellow & black.*
The Essex County Club. *Colours—red & white.*
The Houghton Club. *Colours—green & white.*
The Middlesex Club. *Colours—black & white.*
The Edinburgh Polo Club.

The following is a summary of the winners of the principal cups played for in England, Ireland, and India year by year.

Hurlingham Champion Open Cup.

Date	Final tie played between	Won by
1877	Monmouthshire Club and Tyros . .	Monmouthshire Club
1878	Monmouthshire Club and Fifth Lancers	Monmouthshire Club
1879	Hurlingham Club and Monmouthshire Club.	Hurlingham Club
1880[1]	Sussex County and Hurlingham Club .	Sussex County
1881	Sussex County and Hurlingham Club .	Sussex County
1882	Sussex County and All-Ireland Club .	Sussex County
1883	Sussex County walked over for Cup.	

[1] In this game one of the Sussex team got hurt after playing only ten minutes, and Sussex played and won the game with only four players to their opponents' five.

Hurlingham Champion Open Cup (continued).

Date	Final tie played between	Won by
1884[1]	Freebooters and Sussex County . .	Freebooters
1885	Sussex County and Freebooters . .	Sussex County
1886	Freebooters and 7th Hussars . .	Freebooters
1887	Freebooters and Derbyshire Club .	Freebooters
1888	Sussex County and Freebooters . .	Sussex County
1889	Sussex County walked over. Freebooters, having had one of their men hurt, scratched.	
1890	Sussex County and Derbyshire . .	Sussex County

Hurlingham Inter-Regimental Tournament.

Date	Winners of Cup	Date	Winners of Cup
1876	Royal Horse Guards (Blues)	1884	7th Hussars
		1885	7th Hussars
1878	5th Lancers	1886	7th Hussars
1879	5th Lancers	1887	5th Lancers
1880	16th Lancers	1888	10th Hussars
1881	16th Lancers	1889	9th Lancers
1882	5th Lancers	1890	9th Lancers
1883	7th Hussars		

Hurlingham Infantry Inter-Regimental Tournament.

Date	Winners
1890[2]	5th (Northumberland) Fusiliers

[1] In this year four side was first played. At the end of the second quarter Captain Hornby was hurt, and Sussex County played three to four.

[2] This tournament was inaugurated in 1890, when the Hurlingham Club gave a handsome cup to be competed for. Five regiments sent representative teams; viz. The Coldstream Guards, The Buffs, 5th Fusiliers, 7th Royal Fusiliers, and Munster Fusiliers. The final tie was played between the Coldstreams and the 5th Fusiliers.

Hurlingham Open County Cup.

Date	Final tie played between	Won by
1885	Gloucestershire County Club and Yorkshire County Club	Gloucestershire Club
1886	Gloucestershire County Club and Oxford University Club	Gloucestershire Club
1887	Derbysilire County Club walked over.	
1888[1]	Kent County Club and West Essex County Club	Kent County Club
1889	Barton-under-Needwood Club and Priory Club	Barton-under-Needwood Club
1890	Berkshire County Club and Ashtead Club	Berkshire County Club

All-Ireland Open Cup.

Date	Winners of Tournament	Date	Winners of Tournament
1878	7th Royal Fusiliers	1885	Freebooters
1879	7th Hussars	1886	Freebooters
1880	Scots Greys	1887	All-Ireland Polo Club
1881	5th Lancers	1888	All-Ireland Polo Club
1882	All-Ireland Polo Club	1889	Freebooters.
1883	County Carlow Club	1890[2]	All-Ireland Polo Club
1884	5th Lancers		

When the All-Ireland Polo Club first gave this cup to be played for, it was a challenge cup, to be won two consecutive years before becoming the property of the winning team. The only team who have won the cup are the Freebooters, who won it in 1885-6. They then presented a new challenge cup open to all teams, to be won three years in succession before becoming the property of the holders. Since 1882, with the

[1] Only two teams entered for the cup this year.

[2] In this match two members of the 15th Hussars who were playing in the final tie against All-Ireland met with accidents, and so the military team scratched.

exception of 1884, when he did not play, Mr. John Watson has captained the winning team every year.

All-Ireland Polo Military Cup.

Date	Winners of Cup	Date	Winners of Cup
1886	10th Hussars	1889	4th Hussars
1887	16th Lancers	1890	4th Hussars
1888	3rd Hussars		

Indian Inter-Regimental Tournament.

Date	Played at	Final tie played between	Won by
1877	Meerut	9th Lancers and 10th Hussars	9th Lancers
1878	Meerut	9th Lancers and 10th Hussars	9th Lancers
1879	The Afghan campaign took place during these years,		
1880	and consequently no polo tournament was held.		
1881	Umballa	10th Hussars and 9th Lancers	10th Hussars
1882	Meerut	10th Hussars and 9th Lancers	10th Hussars
1883	Umballa	9th Lancers and Rifle Brigade	9th Lancers
1884	Umballa	9th Lancers and 8th Hussars	9th Lancers
1885	Meerut	9th Lancers and 8th Hussars	9th Lancers
1886	Meerut	8th Hussars and Carabiniers	8th Hussars
1887	Umballa	8th Hussars and Carabiniers	8th Hussars
1888	Meerut	17th Lancers and 7th Hussars	17th Lancers
1889	Meerut	17th Lancers and 7th Dragoon Guards	17th Lancers
1890	Umballa	5th Lancers and 17th Lancers (1st team)	5th Lancers

There was formerly no trophy attached to this match, the winners getting merely the entrances. Now, however, it has been decided that there shall be a challenge shield, like the Elcho Shield, &c.

In 1883 the Earl of Airlie (then Lord Ogilvy), 10th Hussars, presented a cup to be played for in an inter-regimental tournament by infantry regiments only, and after some discussion it was decided that this cup was to be held for a year only by the regiment who won it, and that it was not to be a challenge

cup, nor ever to become the property of any winning regiment. This cup was first played for in 1884, and the following regiments have won it :—

Infantry Inter-Regimental Tournament.

Date	Played at	Final tie played between	Won by
1884	Umballa	25th K.O.B.'s and 2nd Queen's	25th K.O.B.'s
1885	Meerut	25th K.O.B.'s and 95th Regt.	25th „
1886	Meerut	33rd and K.O.B.'s . . .	33rd D.W. Regt.
1887	Meerut	33rd and 18th R.I.F. . .	33rd „
1888	Umballa	33rd and 18th R.I.F. . .	33rd „
1889	Umballa	25th K.O.B.'s and 18th R.I.F.	25th K.O.B.'s

The 10th Hussars also gave a cup for native cavalry, which has been kept up ever since. All these military tournaments are held in March.

Bombay Open Cup.

Date	Played at	Won by
1883	Bombay	Central India Horse
1884	„	Central India Horse
1885	„	Bombay Gymkhana Club
1886	„	Poona Gymkhana Club
1887	„	Poona Gymkhana Club
1888	„	The Nawab Vicka-ool-Oomra of Hyderabad's team
1889	„	7th Hussars
1890	„	7th Hussars

The Bombay Open Cup is a challenge cup, and has to be won three years in succession before becoming the property of the winning team.

There is also an open cup played for at Calcutta, given by the Calcutta Turf Club, started some years ago, after which it was discontinued, and revived in 1888. In that year and 1889 the 17th Lancers won the cup, beating the Calcutta Club team in the final tie; whilst in 1890 the first team of the Calcutta

Polo Club were the victors. The 9th Lancers also won this cup in 1885, and a tournament is held annually in March at Nusseerabad in Rajpootana, and also at Allahabad, for a very handsome challenge trophy given by Mr. C. J. Connell, of the Civil Service, but complete records of winning teams connected with the above have unfortunately not reached me at the time these pages go to press, so I am obliged to omit them.

An annual tournament is held at Mean Mir in the Punjab. This, since its institution in 1886, has been won every year by the 12th Bengal Cavalry, who have successively beaten the Lahore Polo Club, the 33rd Regiment, the 18th Bengal Lancers, and the Queen's Bays (the latter twice). In 1890, when playing against the last-named regiment, the 12th Bengal Cavalry won by 9 goals to love; and it is somewhat remarkable that out of their team—which was composed of Mr. C. Gough, Ressaldar Sarfaraz, Duffadar Heera Singh, and Sowar Futteh Khan—the three native members should have played every year for their regiment in the winning team.

The Mysore Tournament was inaugurated in 1890, when the Maharajah gave a handsome cup to be competed for. This was won by the 21st Hussars.

CHAPTER V

GROUND, BALLS, STICKS, GOAL-POSTS, ETC.

To be perfect, a polo ground should resemble as closely as possible that on which cricket is played. It should be as level as a billiard table and as smooth as a lawn. No doubt many polo grounds do not fulfil these requirements, and a fair game may be played on those that do not quite come up to the standard. Still, playing on an inferior ground is not the same thing as playing on a good one. As types of what a good ground should be, let me mention those belonging to the Hurlingham, Barton-under-Needwood, Ranelagh, and Derbyshire Clubs—that of the latter at Elvaston Castle having been laid out by the Earl of Harrington, whose name is as much associated with polo as it is with hound and horse. A polo ground should be rectangular in shape, 300 yards long, and 180 yards wide. That at Hurlingham, it may be mentioned, is almost 300 by 175, though the ends are considerably narrower.

Opinions vary as to how it should be marked out, whether enclosed by boards one foot high, merely defined by a narrow strip being cut out of the turf, or marked with whiting like a lawn tennis court. No doubt the former method makes the game faster, by keeping the ball within bounds, but it is open to two or three objections. First, that it introduces a new element into the game, by enabling a man to hit *for* the boards at an angle and get the ball on the rebound; secondly, that the keeping the ball within bounds affords no breathing time to the ponies; and thirdly, that ponies unaccustomed to boards

frequently stumble over them. No doubt for on-lookers a game played on a ground enclosed by boards is far more exciting, but whether it is viewed by players in the same light is a moot point. In fact, I am not far wrong in surmising that most players of note prefer an unenclosed ground. It is a fact, however, that during any of the important cup matches or inter-regimental tournaments at Hurlingham the boards are always removed.

At one time the ground at Hurlingham was enclosed by stiff posts and rails, but this gave rise to so many accidents, owing to ponies trying to jump them, that boards were substituted instead. In some grounds a narrow bank of earth about nine inches high is used to mark the boundaries. This is the case in Munnipore and Thibet; and it seems to me the method least open to objection, as it keeps the ball within bounds to a certain extent, cannot be played at for a rebound stroke, and can offer no impediment to ponies.

The necessity for the ground being level, and free from lumps and holes, must be apparent to every one. If these exist, the ball hops too much, and even the best player will miss his stroke when the ball is lying in or against one of these obstructions. Given the means of watering and rolling &c., it is no difficult matter to keep a good polo ground in order, even during a season in which it is played on four or five days a week, and as an illustration I will quote the means adopted for doing this at Hurlingham, where the ground always seems perfection. At Hurlingham 2,827 feet of piping are employed, and the water is obtained from eight hydrants fitted with brigade junctions and centrifugal distributors. The force that conveys the water to these hydrants is supplied by a pulsometer pump capable of pumping up 17,000 gallons an hour. By these means the polo field, which consists of about seven acres, can be flooded to the depth of one inch in ten hours. This apparatus has been fitted up at a cost of 700*l*. In a dry summer it is of course invaluable, as the turf always rides light and elastic, and the good done is incalculable. Ponies now stand work much

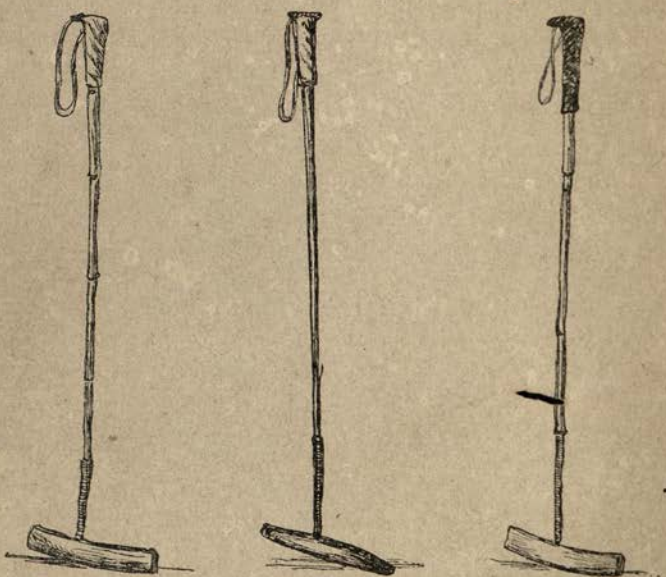
better than they used to formerly, when the ground was frequently hard. Breakdowns are not nearly so numerous—incidents which were not only expensive, but disheartening—and, lastly, the ground is safer to fall on, owing to its softness. Directly play is over, about twenty men and boys are employed to go all over the field and tread in any parts of the turf that may have been cut up; then the water is laid on, and the next morning several hours' rolling makes the ground appear almost as if it had never been played on.

In Iskarado, Thibet, Baltistan, and Munnipore—aptly called the cradles of polo—grounds vary considerably in shape and size. In Baltistan, for instance, they play on grounds about 150 yards long by 30 yards wide; in fact, in many places the polo ground is often the main street of the village. In Kashmir grounds are some 350 yards long by 60 yards wide; those on which the Munnipoories play are some 225 yards long by 110 yards wide Experience, however, tends to show that a ground 300 yards by 180 yards is the size best adapted to the game as now played in Great Britain, and where space is available these dimensions are generally adhered to.

We now come to the subject of balls. When the game was first started in England it was played with ordinary hockey sticks of bent ash or oak and a cricket ball painted white, afterwards superseded by an indiarubber ball. This latter, however, gave way to a wooden ball; and in 1879 Mr. Holbrow, of Eagle Place, Piccadilly, invented a cork ball covered with leather; but this proved a failure, being found to be too light. Eventually, balls made of willow wood were substituted, and these have been considered the 'sealed pattern' ever since. In India balls made from bamboo root are always used, and these were tried at Hurlingham, but they were not approved of generally. The Munnipoories always use a ball made from the root of bamboo, which they take considerable time and trouble in seasoning and preparing; but I question whether they are better than the willow-wood ball, and are decidedly not so suitable for the slower grounds of Britain, however much they

may be for the faster Indian ones; and, though not so liable to split, they are certainly more expensive. The balls at present in use are regulated to three and a quarter inches in diameter, and weigh about five ounces. They cost from five to six shillings per dozen, and about sixty dozen are used annually at Hurlingham.

Polo sticks vary in size, weight, shape, and length according



Polo sticks.

to the fancy of the player. The head is made of birch, willow, mango, sycamore, or some other hard wood, and is of various shapes, curved more or less, flat, round and cigar-shaped. The head of the curved and flat shapes, whose edges should *invariably be rounded*, varies from 7 to 9 inches in length by 2 inches in width. The cigar- or cylindrical-shaped heads are 9 inches long, 2 inches in diameter in the centre, and taper

towards the ends. These drive fairly well, but they are very apt to get under the ball and make it rise, particularly on bumpy ground. The cane handles are made of ordinary or sometimes of Malacca rattan, and are let into the heads at a hole drilled near the centre, at any angle the player likes. The more acute the angle the greater are the facilities for hitting the ball when it is some distance off, and you get a more sweeping stroke. The stick is tightly bound round with waxed thread at its lower end where it joins the head. The tops of the handles are either flat or round, and bound with soft white leather or indiarubber, so as to afford a better grip to the hand, and are generally furnished with a wrist-strap. It is best to have these wrist-straps made of tape, which, whilst preventing the stick leaving the hand from a blow, will yet give, if the stick be caught by any means. Nasty accidents have occurred owing to a player not being able to disengage his stick from his hand, and so being pulled off his pony. Flat handles are the best, as they are not so apt to turn in the hand. A polo stick measures on an average from 4 ft. 4 in. to 4 ft. 6 in., but the length must depend greatly on the man who is using it and the height of the particular pony he is riding at the time, besides the strength of his wrist. As a general rule, and as a safe standard to go by, a polo stick should be of such a length that when the man using it is mounted, and grasps it in his hand, letting his arm fall to its full length by his side, the head should just touch the ground. In weight polo sticks vary from 15 oz. to 21 oz. each, but as every man has his particular fancy, it is impossible to say which is the best. The illustration opposite will show the most favourite forms of sticks.

The Thibetan 'byntu,' or polo stick (sketched from a stick in the museum at Kew Gardens), differs much from our own, but though a very rough implement the players are very dexterous in its use. The handle, which is made of cherry or sometimes of tamarisk wood, is let into a sort of groove in the head, which is made of hard, heavy wood. This is clamped with a band of roughly wrought iron and further secured

by a thin rope made of twisted yak's hair, and this lashing is continued for some little distance up the stick above its junction with the head.

Amongst Eastern polo-playing races the goal posts consist generally of permanent upright stone pillars, which are always depicted in old illustrations of the game, some of which will be found in this volume. Such things, however, in the polo field at home, considering the pace at which the game is now played, would not be tolerated for an instant, and would prove a fruitful source of danger, not only to the players themselves, but to the ponies. Thick wooden posts were generally used at Hurlingham fixed into a socket in the ground and sawn nearly through at their base. Thus in the event of a pony colliding with them they would give way and break. These are, nevertheless, dangerous, for the material is hard, and the post even when it falls may give an awkward knock. Sometimes, too, the precaution of partially sawing the post through may be neglected, when the consequences of a collision are very serious; then thinner posts were used, but one or two nasty accidents proved that these also were open to objection in the event of their splintering. By far the best form of goal posts yet invented is that now used at Hurlingham, introduced by the Earl of Harrington. These posts consist of hollow cylinders of *papier mâché* bound round with thin brass wire, having a diameter at their base of some 9 inches. A slight stick fixed in the ground inside them is sufficient to keep them upright, and being light and elastic they give to the slightest concussion. They are manufactured by the Willesden Paper Company, and should certainly be used on every polo ground.

Thibetan polo-stick or 'byntu'

As an illustration of the dangers of the thick wooden posts, even when partly sawn through, I may mention a couple of incidents which I witnessed in the season of 1889 at Hurlingham. During a match between the 10th Hussars and a Hurlingham team, Captain the Hon. H. T. Allsopp and Mr. Alfred Peat were racing for the ball, which was on the very confines of the goal. Eager with the excitement of the moment, Captain Allsopp either did not notice the goal post or else miscalculated his distance from it. Be that as it may, there was a serious collision, a crash, a sound of cracking timber; the goal post flew one way and the gallant Hussar and his pony rolled over like a shot rabbit on the other. The fall looked bad, but fortunately was unattended with any more serious consequences to the hard-headed soldier than a black eye and a cracked rib, altogether a lucky escape. The next day or the following one these *papier mâché* posts were substituted, and another collision occurred with a goal post. This time Captain Fergusson, of the Blues, was the player who matched his cranium against the post, and I shall not forget his look of astonishment when he found that he was unhurt, and that his pony did not come down with him.

Telegraph boards showing the numbers of goals made by each team are also no unimportant adjunct to a polo ground when a match is in progress, for, independently of the interest that the game has for the spectators, it is useful to the players, who in the heat and excitement of play can hardly remember the exact state of the score.

CHAPTER VI

BREEDS OF PONIES SUITABLE FOR POLO

I THINK I am within the limits when I say that no one has yet determined what breed of pony is most suitable for the game. Each race has its distinctive merits, and every man who plays has his own ideas on the subject. On certain qualifications, however, all are united, and it is generally admitted that for a pony to be really first-class it must have speed, intelligence, staying powers, a sound constitution, suppleness or the power of turning quickly, and last, but not least, good temper.

The pure British breeds of ponies, such as Exmoors and Shetlands, we may dismiss at once, as their small size renders them quite unfitted for the game, but other ponies may be divided thus: Undersized thoroughbreds, Barbs, Arabs, Syrian or Egyptian ponies, Indian country-breds, American, New Forest, and improved Exmoors. Let us glance for a moment at the respective merits and demerits of these various breeds, bearing in mind the while the combined qualities that are requisite, and that the points that make a good hunter apply equally to a polo pony. 'Blood will tell' is a common and very true saying, and it is apparent that an animal bred expressly for racing must be endowed with the greatest speed. The pluck of a thoroughbred also enables him to go on till he drops. But here, I think, the advantages of thoroughbred horses cease. They have not always the very best of tempers, many of them cannot carry great weights, and in this it must be understood that my remarks apply to thoroughbred *ponies*, animals which from their

being undersized have never been thought worthy of being 'put through the mill' in a racing stable. The thoroughbred pony does not seem to withstand the constant strain he has to undergo in twisting and turning during a game of polo; his constitution is very often delicate, and his narrow formation in front and high withers prevents him from turning very sharply. I am aware that, with regard to this question of a narrow high wither being a detriment to turning power, I differ from many whose opinion is entitled to respect, and though I freely admit that a pony must turn on his haunches, yet he must supplement the action with his shoulders. Of course, there are and have been brilliant exceptions in the case of high-withered ponies, such as The Fawn, Dynamite, Dancing Girl by Sefton, &c., that must be very near if not quite thoroughbred.

But exceptions prove the rule, and I could instance many other thoroughbreds that have proved a dismal failure on the polo ground. Unsound wind, that curse of our thoroughbred stock, is also a disease to which such ponies, or rather horses, (for such they are) are liable; and though ponies, as distinct from horses, are more free from diseases of the respiratory organs, yet they are often unsound in this respect. As an instance, Esmeralda (the property of the Messrs. Peat) is generally admitted to have been the best polo pony ever known, yet she was latterly unsound in her wind, and other similar instances might also be adduced. Much, therefore, as there is to admire in the speed, gallantry, and the game qualities of our English thoroughbred—qualities which eminently fit him for the hunting field and racecourse—yet it must be admitted that, as a rule, he lacks others which, if he is to train into a *perfect* polo pony, are necessary. Though not endowed with the speed of English ponies, Barbs and Arabs certainly have all the other necessary qualities that I have alluded to. Above all they have *brains*.

To look at the clean-cut patrician head of a Barb or Arab, with the broad, intelligent forehead, tapering muzzle, full, gentle eye, and large, fine nostril that you can almost see through, and to compare him with many English animals will convince the

observer that the brain power lies with the Eastern. It is these brains that enable an Eastern horse to traverse in safety such ground as he is often called on to gallop over in pigsticking (ground, be it remembered, far different from that on which he has been reared and to which he has been accustomed), and turn and follow a boar of his own accord; and likewise it is this same reasoning power that fits the two breeds so eminently for polo; in fact, they take to the game and *understand* it sooner than an English pony will.

In this necessity for brain power I am aware some will differ from me—and as an illustration of the nature of the objection I will quote the Earl of Airlie, one of the best men in his day, either in the polo or pigsticking field. He says, 'I do not think you want too much brains or too good a memory. Too much brains tends to a recollection of nasty blows and cuts. I have had Waler pigstickers as good as any Arab, and as good country-bred polo ponies with a little Arab blood in them as any Arab ponies.' Personally, however, I should prefer for any purpose a horse with brains to one without them.

It has been urged against Arabs and Barbs that their shoulders are faulty. No doubt many of them do possess this defect, but does not the objection apply equally to English animals? and I suppose no man who wanted a *good* polo pony would buy or breed from a bad-shouldered Arab or Barb, any more than he would buy or breed from an English animal possessed of similar malformations. The shoulders of Eastern horses do not, as a rule, please the eye of men who are accustomed only to English horses, as their withers are almost invariably low and thick. But such formation, if not indicative of speed, points to staying powers, and, to compensate for this possible want of speed, Arabs and Barbs have shoulders receding at an angle, and with a shaping of the scapula that assures them liberty of action. This formation of the shoulder, which is thicker than that usually seen in English horses, but of a good slope, is a *true* formation, and one that denotes weight-carrying capabilities. Such a good authority as Youatt in describing

the Arabian says : 'In the formation of the shoulder, next to that of the head, the Arab is superior to any other breed. The shoulder has the proper inclination backwards. It is also thickly clothed with muscle, but without the slightest appearance of heaviness.' It must be remembered also that whatever claim our English horse has to good shoulders he derived originally from the Arabian and Barb. The bone of the Eastern

Barb pony—Awfully Jolly.

horse also is even closer in its ivory-like consistency than that of the English thoroughbred.

If you examine a really good Barb, such, for instance, as Lord Harrington's sire Awfully Jolly (who, by-the-bye, is in the Stud Book), you will see that he really has beautifully oblique shoulders, though from his exceedingly low wither they may at first sight appear heavy. Put a saddle on, however, and see what you have got in front of you—what rein there is—and then be no more sceptical. The constitutions of these

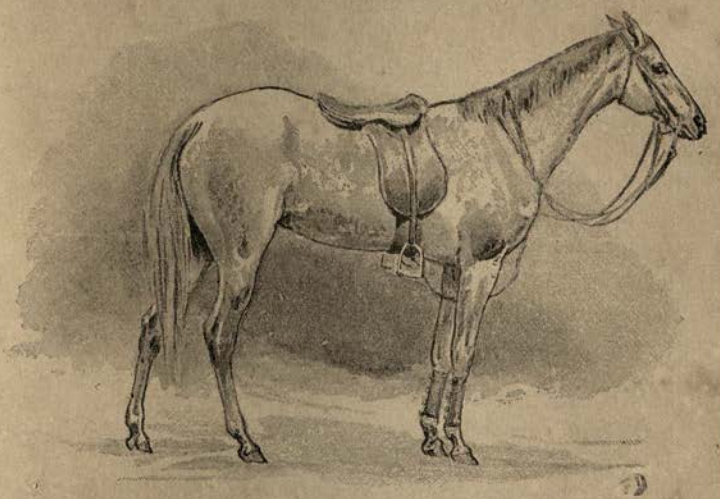
Eastern horses are grand, and instances of their suffering from diseases of the respiratory organs are rare and exceptional. They are well turned over the loin, and have not only great length from hip to hock, but above all are thick through the heart. Of course in the mere matter of speed they cannot come up to the standard of English thoroughbreds, and not being built on the same lines they labour under a disadvantage in this respect; but they possess many other and perhaps more desirable qualities, not the least being their docility and the ease with which they are trained.

The standard of a good hunter as given by a friend to 'The Druid,' and quoted by him in 'Post and Paddock,' has not much to be found fault with, and amongst other points this authority, whose name is not mentioned but who is described by the author as 'one of the finest horsemen and judges of the day,' says: 'Had I to choose a hunter by one point only, it should be his *head*; for I never knew one with a small, clean, *intelligent* face and prominent eyes, to be bad.'

'The Druid's' friend was right, and any one who runs over in his mind all the best polo ponies he knows of, will find that they had intelligent heads.

Syrian ponies are not very well known at present, though there have been a few very good ones, such as Algiers (late Bledah), a grey, the property of Captain Jenner, of the 9th Lancers, which was one of five that a brother-officer imported from Algiers. With the exception of Algiers, however, none of them turned out of very high class. Among the best Syrians at present in England may be noted Sinbad, a grey, belonging to Mr. J. R. Walker; and Saladin, a chestnut, now the property of Mr. Percy Hargreaves, both very nice ponies, showing a deal of quality, besides being quick and active to boot. During the winter of 1887–8 Mr. Walker went to Cairo with a view of purchasing some of these ponies. No sooner was his object known than he was beset with Arab dealers anxious to sell their animals, nearly all of which had only just come in after a fifteen days' march across the Arabian desert from Syria, where

both water and fodder are scarce. Needless to say they were hardly in 'dealers' condition,' and as the Arab bit is a very severe one, and the Arab saddle frequently causes a sore back, the poor brutes' skins were chafed and their mouths bleeding more or less. Yet they were wonderfully tractable and easy to turn. The make and shape were there ; the animals were sound ; Mr. Walker was not long in making his selection, and certainly both Sinbad and Saladin turned out trumps. It



Syrian pony—Algiers.

may perhaps not be uninteresting to state, as a proof of how readily Eastern ponies take to polo, that the first ride Mr. Walker ever had on Sinbad was in a 'quarter' at polo on the Cairo ground. The pony had only just come in from his desert march, and had never seen a polo stick or ball in his life, and yet he played then as well as he does now—no slight meed of praise ! The average cost of these ponies was 18*l.* apiece.

We now come to the Indian 'tattoo,' or country-bred pony. Only a few years ago people opened their eyes with astonish-

ment when it was rumoured that 1,000 rupees had been given for a polo pony, for not long previously less than a third of that sum was deemed a high price for the usually vicious squealing little beast of the country. But when the era of polo dawned, a new avocation in life was found for the 'tat.' English, Arab, and Australian blood had been infused into the race, and made him what he now is. Thus he has rapidly risen in the equine social scale. A pony that but fifteen or twenty years ago could be bought for prices ranging from fifty to a hundred rupees, has now risen to four and five times the latter sum as raw material, and a thousand-rupee trained pony is nowadays by no means a phenomenon. Any animal with four tolerably sound legs, even when unbroken, is unobtainable at any of the great Indian horse fairs for less than 300 to 400 rupees, and if in addition it can carry weight, and exhibits a fair turn of speed, the price goes up by leaps and bounds. For an animal with a reputation there is no difficulty in finding a purchaser at four figures—in rupees of course. Very recently, of six polo ponies belonging to an officer in India, not one went for less than 950 rupees, whilst four belonging to another averaged considerably over this sum. At the sale of the 17th Lancers' ponies after the Inter-Regimental Tournament this year, 1890, forty-three ponies averaged 802 rupees each, and one, an Arab named Happy Lad, belonging to Captain Renton, realised 1550 rupees. But ten years ago this officer was supposed to have paid an enormous price for a pony named Rosamond (who is still playing) when he gave 250 rupees for her. This shows how the demand is increasing. Some of these ponies are very good, being not only fast, but very quick at turning, and, though often rather plain-looking and cow-hocked (not a bad fault in a polo pony, by the way), there have been some very good ones amongst them, notably Paleface, a dun. This pony, lately brought home by his owner, Colonel St. Quintin, of the 8th Hussars, is as clever as a monkey, and knows more about the game than many men. The 17th Lancers, reputed the best-mounted regiment in India, had some capital country-bred ponies, notably Pole-

star, now thirteen years old, formerly the property of Mr. E. D. Miller, but now belonging to the Rifle Brigade—quite the type of a 13-3 weight-carrying, galloping pony—and New Guinea, a dun mare belonging also to the same owner. Joe, a dun pony belonging to Captain Renton, is also quite a celebrity, and the perfection of a light-weight pony. Marguerite is another wonder, though there is some doubt of her being a country-bred, as she came to India after the Egyptian War with some

Indian country-bred pony—'A bad sort.'

troopers, and may be a Syrian. Yellow Jack, a beautiful chestnut pony, and Conqueror, a very bloodlike bay, both belonging to the Earl of Airlie, were also great celebrities in India. Conqueror is now in England, is the property of the Hon. E. Baring, and played in the 10th Hussars team at Hurlingham in 1890. This pony was on board ship at Suakim during the battles of Teb and Tamai. Country-bred ponies, though they do not possess the staying powers of Arabs, are, as a rule,

quicker at starting, though an Arab can, if properly trained, and put through the riding school, be made equally quick. Besides this their price is considerably lower. Altogether the 'tat' is by no means a bad animal on which to play polo if once he is 'Europeanised.'

During recent years the fashion as regards ponies in general has undergone a great change, and nothing has brought about this result more than polo. Size, substance, breeding, and speed have been aimed at, and in many cases obtained by crossing pure-bred Exmoor and other mares with both thoroughbred and Eastern stallions, and the result is an animal that can not only gallop, but carry weight, and is in many instances a miniature hunter and racehorse combined. Some polo ponies, it is true, have no pure pony blood in them, being merely, as I have before said, undersized thoroughbreds. But many of them combine the points of a Leicestershire hunter and a thoroughbred racehorse, and the result is a picture of formation in an animal that would doubtless have been a horse had not some freak of nature ordained otherwise. It is an undeniable fact that an infusion of Eastern blood has in the past considerably improved, even if it has not been the making of, our present breed of thoroughbred horses, and this opens up the question as to the advisability of again recurring to the strain for the improvement of our ponies, and particularly the breed of ponies suitable for polo. The first or even second cross might indeed be no great success according to some theories, but that it would tell in the long run, if done judiciously, is, I think, not open to contradiction. An improved Exmoor mare by an Arab or Barb sire, put to a small, neat thoroughbred horse with a strain of Venison or Newminster blood in him, ought to produce something very near perfection. The dash of Eastern blood would answer for soundness of constitution, quickness, bone, sagacity, and freedom from roaring, while that of the thoroughbred would produce symmetry, gameness, and speed. Mr. Knight and Sir Thomas Acland have greatly improved their breed of Exmoor ponies by adopting this course, and it is

a matter for reflection if their example should not be more widely followed.

And now to glance at Barbs. These have all the good points of Arabs, and as a rule have better shoulders. Moreover, they are far cheaper, not only costing less money in their own country, but, as Morocco is within only a few days' sail of England, they cost less to import. This, with their wear-and-tear constitution and the ready way they take to the game, makes them by far the most suitable polo ponies for a poor man or a beginner. Many of these Barbs are imported to Gibraltar and Malta, and are often wrongly called Maltese ponies, and thence find their way to England. Smuggler, Spider, The Bay, Saracen, Awfully Jolly, and other well-known ponies are all Barbs.

A word here with regard to the history of the last named, which is not only curious, but has a dash of humour connected with it. Awfully Jolly was stolen in a raid with several other ponies and women, and brought into Tunis. Here the ladies were sold as slaves and went to various harems and other more menial occupations, the ponies being exported to Gibraltar and Malta. So highly were these ponies thought of by their plundered owners that they sent a message into Tunis, saying that if the plunderers would only return the ponies they might keep the women, and all would be forgiven and forgotten! In 1877, at Malta, Lord Harrington one day saw Awfully Jolly drawing a cabbage cart, and noticing the animal's shape entered into conversation with his owner and bought the pony, as he could not persuade any one else to do so. He was then only two years old. Lord Harrington rode him, and thought him so good that he entered him in the races. The little animal won six out of seven races for which he ran. Lord Harrington gave 15*l.* for this pony, and within a week after purchasing he played polo on him. His owner brought Awfully Jolly with several other Barbs over to England, and the little animal soon earned a great reputation as a polo pony. After playing for a couple of seasons, however, he went to the stud. Here his

first produce out of English mares were Ali Baba and Jenny, who both have the highest character as polo ponies. Then for a few years Lord Harrington left off breeding ponies and crossed Awfully Jolly with big mares, getting some rare hunters, one or two amongst them being up to 14 stone. About four years ago, however, he embarked in pony-breeding again, and the paddocks at Elvaston show some wonderful stock got by the Barb, Ally Sloper and Aunt Sally being two very smart ones. Awfully Jolly must have over a hundred of his get in Cheshire and Derbyshire alone, and to not one of them can the term 'bad' be applied, nor have any of his foals died from disease. This speaks volumes for the Barb cross. Standing 14 hands 1½ inch, a dark chestnut with a blood-like head, wonderful shoulders, which slope back and are strong at the top without being heavy, the length in front of the saddle is marvellous when you look at Awfully Jolly. Nearly all his stock inherit these points, as well as his low wither, which is not only a great advantage for measuring, but enables them to turn quickly. His back is short and strong, loins and quarters are muscular, though the latter droop rather and have the low set on tail that distinguishes a Barb from an Arab. Deep back ribs, great depth in front and through the heart, and fresh, clean, flat legs, that a two-year-old might envy, with extraordinary bone, complete the picture of what a pony sire should be; and when it is remembered that Awfully Jolly was foaled in 1875, it must be admitted that he carries his years bravely.

In my remarks about Barbs it must be understood that I am talking of the Barb horses, not ponies. These latter vary from 12 to 13 hands 2 inches, and do much the same work in Morocco as the 'tattoo' does in India. Their size, consequently, makes them too small for polo. The Barb horse, on the contrary, varies from 14, to 14 hands 3 inches, and is somewhat difficult to procure of a good stamp, for in that country, which is a hotbed of despotism, the Sultan and the unscrupulous myrmidons who constitute his court will not allow a poorer subject to retain a really good animal. Directly one is

known of, it is seized. The consequence is that when a man finds he has anything really good he disfigures and even often maims it, and so no encouragement is given to horse-breeding. The best Barbs come from some distance inland, from districts into which in the anarchic and lawless state of the country it is difficult to penetrate; but many find their way to Tunis and Algiers, and thence into the markets of Gibraltar and Malta.

Though Barb ponies are bred everywhere, there is a district about seventy miles from Mogador which is celebrated for its horses, and this would be the place to make for by any one desirous of importing a good animal, and let him take a measuring stick with him; for it is astonishing how the eye errs in measuring an animal when long accustomed to see only those of a certain height.

A few South American ponies have found their way to England. Some of them are remarkably good, and none better than the little bay Dublin, belonging to Major Peters, 4th Hussars. Though small, Dublin is very compactly made, fast, and as quick as lightning in turning. Some of the Californian ponies are also very good, but though very quick, they are somewhat deficient in speed, have ewe necks and light middle-pieces; but they are sound, serviceable animals, and in the South California Polo Club Mr. G. L. Waring's Santa Clara, Mr. W. H. Young's Marquis, Mr. E. Woodhouse's Miss Jummy, and Mr. J. B. Proctor's Rex, are all quite celebrities and very varmint-looking. These ponies can be bought very cheaply—viz. from 10*l.* to 12*l.* apiece—and so must recommend themselves to players with shallow purses.

New Forest ponies can never be said to have made any mark as a breed suitable for polo, though Rosealba, the property of Mr. Gerald Hardy, bred in the New Forest by an Arab sire out of a Forest pony, has earned a name for herself. Speaking generally of New Forest ponies, they may be classed as more suited for harness than saddle work. As a rule, they are small, thick, but strong-shouldered, short-necked animals,

with good backs and on short legs. When taken up and well fed, however, there seems no limit to the work they can do and the pace they can go in harness. Their small size arises probably from starvation and want of shelter as colts and the general disregard of proper crossing exhibited by their owners. That a strong vein of Arab blood existed amongst them at one time is undoubted, but it has been much neglected. Mares are half starved, and the grazing of the Forest contains but little nutritive element. The question has, however, been taken up of late by the Verderers, and some good pony stallions, *inter alia*, one Arab sent by Her Majesty, imported into the district; but it will take many a generation before the breed becomes fit for polo, if ever it does.[1]

Many good ponies come from Connemara, in Ireland, where the breed is celebrated. They have a strong dash of blood in them, and those crossed with English thoroughbred sires have produced some of the very best polo ponies known.

Considered briefly, I think it may be taken that the best cross for an all-round polo pony is between an Arab or Barb sire and a good English polo pony mare. Given the sire, it is not a matter of much difficulty to obtain a mare. Any one who has been often at Hurlingham must have observed that mares preponderate amongst the ponies played, the reason being that mares generally do not grow up so much in their withers, and so are easier to get under the standard of measurement, and amongst thoroughbreds are smaller, and so are more suitable for polo than racing. Every season, owing to accidents and breaking down, many of these mares become of no use to their owners, except to breed from, and as most men have neither the taste nor opportunity to do this, they can be bought very reasonably, and so for no very great outlay a mare can be secured and the services of a sire obtained, the result being what will probably turn out a good polo pony.

[1] The question of pony-breeding in the New Forest has now been taken up again. Her Majesty has sent down another stallion, and every effort is being made to encourage the breeding of a better stamp of animal.

It would tend much also to improve the breed of ponies generally, and polo ponies in particular, if the committees of the Hurlingham and Ranelagh Clubs and those of horse shows were to follow the good example set by Lord Harrington at his shows at Elvaston and Gawsworth, and have classes and offer prizes for young stock likely to make polo ponies, yearlings, two-year-olds, and three-year-olds. This would not only prove of great interest to polo players, but would show what was the best animal to perpetuate as most suitable for the

Otium cum dignitate.
Brood mare and foal: Abbess, and Jolly Nun by Awfully Jolly.

game. With regard to the controversy that has lately been raging about Arab blood I have nothing to say—at least as far as breeding hunters is concerned—but I contend that for ponies both Arabs and Barbs would do much. From them as sires would be got suppleness, intelligence, stamina, bone, and a sound constitution—all qualities more or less lacking in our English stock—whilst English mares would supply speed and shape; and when you have got an animal combining all these qualities, what more is required, as far as a polo pony is concerned?

After all, though, theory proves nothing. The proof of the pudding is in the eating. The proofs of a good polo pony are his performances and his ability to stand work. Let these tests be applied and then let every man form his opinion. Still I venture to assert that a cross with a Barb sire and a good polo pony mare should produce an animal that will neither disgrace its rider nor its parentage on the polo field.

CHAPTER VII

THE TRAINING OF PONIES

To a man who has the time to devote to it, the training of polo ponies is perhaps one of the most interesting points connected with the game. More satisfaction will be derived from riding and playing a pony that you have trained yourself than from one that has been broken by some one else, and a sort of *camaraderie* and mutual understanding will be established that cannot be produced by other means. In fact, a pony generally works for his trainer or breaker better than for any one else, just as a dog will. Of course, every one cannot spare the time to do this, but to him who can the following hints may prove of some use.

Of course these remarks apply mainly to English ponies, and not so much to Arabs and Barbs, which take to the game much quicker and require less training.

If you want to get *perfection*, keep your eyes open, and if you can see or hear of a pony as near a miniature racehorse as possible, on short, strong legs and good, sound feet, that will just measure 14 hands, with plenty of substance and bone, buy him. See that in addition to the above points he has a clean, well-bred head—broad forehead, with full, intelligent eye—well set on to a lean neck, which means a good mouth; for if head and neck are not put on right, no art of man can make the perfect mouth so necessary for a polo pony. The shoulders should be as perfect as possible. The back should be short, loins strong, and the ribs well arched. The quarters should be

long and muscular, and the hind legs bent a bit at the hocks and coming well *under* the animal; for a pony with a straight hock will never turn quick enough. Given all these, besides a good temper and courage, and it will be your own fault if your pony does not become all you can desire.

To play polo a pony should be a perfect 'school' animal, and the lessons he will learn in the riding-school—such as passaging, reining back, and the ordinary circles and changes—will prove invaluable. The following necessary qualifications in a good polo pony, which appeared in a late issue of Hayes's 'Sporting News,' are so much to the point that I cannot refrain from quoting them. The writer says: 1st. A pony should be able to strike off from the halt into the canter or gallop. 2nd. He should be able to be brought to the halt at the fastest gallop in a very few strides. 3rd. He should be trained to change his leading leg the moment the proper 'aids' are applied. 4th. He should go at any rate of speed (between his natural limits) his rider may wish. 5th. He should be capable of being made to passage to the right or left at a canter.

We will suppose that you have been fortunate enough to become the possessor of such a paragon, and that you have bought him unbroken. Your first step will be to treat him kindly and get him to know you and care for you. This can very easily be done. A carrot, an apple, or a lump of sugar, given whenever you go near the pony, and also whenever he plays, both before and after a game, will soon make him connect your presence with delicacies such as he delights in, and, though the love may be cupboard love, it will be the first step gained towards winning his affections.

Select as your training ground as large and as open a space as you can. If the pony's education is carried on in a small field, he gets to know his way about it too well, and will probably pull, when going towards the place he has come in at and hang back when going away from it. The best plan to counteract this is to put your spare sticks &c. in a different part of the field each day. The pony knows that you stop

there to rest, and also before finally leaving the field, and if the place is altered each day he will get confused, and not know what he is going to do. This will make his will subservient to yours, which is one of the primary objects to be attained. After hacking him about a bit, and having got him to carry you quietly and turn to right or left from leg pressure and hand at a walk, begin by cantering him and make him canter in the figure of 8. Let the 8 be large with wide curves to begin with, and gradually lessen the circles, until you can get him to do the smallest 8 at the greatest speed. This course of training may be varied by taking the pony up and down the 'bending' course, as he may get tired and bored if kept too long at the '8's.' The 'bending' course is a capital institution, of which I believe the Earl of Harrington was the originator about eight years ago. Two lines of sticks should be set up 20 yards apart and parallel to each other. The sticks should be about 7 feet high and 8 yards apart. They should be about an inch square with the edges rounded off, and care should be taken to place them perfectly upright in the ground, and not too deeply, so that they can easily be knocked over. Then begin by cantering your pony up one side and down the other zigzagging between the posts, increasing your pace as your pupil shows aptitude in learning his lesson. One set of posts is sufficient, but two are more advisable, as it will be as well to train two ponies in company.

I may here remark that this 'bending' competition is the most invaluable practical test of a really good polo pony. In fact, it may be regarded in the same light as a 'trial' between racehorses, and a pony who can win this in good company may be looked on favourably as a *made* polo pony. In proof of my assertion I would only add that Esmeralda, the property of the Messrs. Peat, was never beaten at it; Jenny, The Girl, and Ali Baba (all the property of the Earl of Harrington) have also won this competition at Hurlingham, Elvaston, and elsewhere against all comers; and in 1889 a three-year-old pony, also belonging to his lordship, named

Ally Sloper, by Awfully Jolly, who had never played polo, won at Folkestone against several well-known polo ponies.

With regard to bits opinions vary, but I may quote Lord Harrington's views on the subject, for few ponies are better broken than his. He says: 'Personally I am in favour of breaking ponies in severe bits and using easier ones afterwards. All Eastern horses are broken in severe bits, and I have never ridden horses with such good mouths.'

There is much truth in this argument, and no doubt it will commend itself to many; but this matter is of course one of taste, and the breaker of the pony must adapt himself to circumstances and judge for himself.

Training should be done gradually, and a pony should never, if he is to turn out well, be brought too hurriedly into a game. Some men knock a ball about for a bit on a pony and then take and play him in a game. This is a fatal mistake; like everything else, the education of a polo pony must be graduated—he must be led on step by step, and not crammed or rushed through. A pony may be looked upon as a baby, and must be taught on the same principle, viz. by slowly giving him confidence. He cannot be hurried, or he will never become trustworthy.

It will be as well to get him thoroughly accustomed to the stick before a ball is hit off his back. Some ponies shy away when they catch sight of a stick, particularly if they have at any time been whipped or ill-used. When your pony has become thoroughly accustomed to the stick, and takes no notice of its being moved up and down by the side of his head or whirled round, you may then take a ball; and here it is a good plan, if the pony is at all nervous, to begin by hitting a hollow india-rubber ball, as, being noiseless, it will be less likely to upset his equanimity. Hit it first at a walk, then at a trot and a canter. Do this for several days before galloping at it. When your pony understands this part of the performance it will be a good plan to canter him about with other ponies, so that he may learn not to become excited when galloping among them in

a game. If circumstances should allow of your acting as umpire in a game, ride your pony then ; this will get him accustomed to other ponies galloping about near him, and will not test his nerves too much. Nothing is so detrimental to a pony as beginning to race directly he gets beside another pony in a game, and for this reason a good polo pony should never be raced.

As I have remarked before, your one aim and object in training a pony should be to invest the game with interest in his mind ; everything towards attaining this object should be done by kind treatment—harshness should be unknown. If, when practising, you take a few carrots in your pocket, and when you stop to rest give your pony one or two, it will make his associations with the game pleasant, and he will get fond of it.

When hitting the ball, always leave your pony's head free and the reins loose. If they are held tight a jerk is sure to be given to the pony's mouth, which he will connect in his mind with the striking of the ball, and this will probably make him flinch and shy away from the stick.

When your pony has become thoroughly accustomed to the stick, and will follow the ball, going quietly and sedately, then begin to gallop him, but do this very gradually, and always end up with a slow practice. It is best to take your fast runs away from home, as he will then not pull so much, and needless to say that a pulling pony, or one that has acquired the habit in the game, is practically useless. This defect then is important, and one that must be constantly guarded against.

We will suppose now that after several weeks' practice (a dozen is none too many) you have got your pony thoroughly handy, and that you have established the most amicable relations with him ; then is your time to introduce him to the real business of his life, viz. playing in a game. Before doing this, however, get two other ponies, first four yards apart, then narrowed to two yards, and make them meet you at a canter and at a gallop, guiding your pony between them. This will

give him confidence in meeting an opposing force and teach him not to shy away from another pony. The first time you play him, however, take matters very easily, and do not force him in any way or pull him about unnecessarily. The best plan to carry out this part of the programme will be to play him in a game which by mutual consent it has been decided shall be a mere cantering game. Do not play him in a match until he has participated in at least a dozen cantering games. These hints, of course, only apply generally, as every pony has a different character ; no two ponies train alike—in fact, some it is impossible to train at all.

It will be seen from the above remarks that the training of ponies is a comparatively easy task, and one which needs only time, good temper, light hands, and patience—things very easy to write or talk about, but perhaps not always so easy to bring into practice. Still, it must be borne in mind that if you cannot exercise them you had better relegate the task of training your pony to some one who can.

Polo ponies are very apt to suffer from sore backs, particularly when you first begin to train them. This arises from the constant shifting and swaying of the rider's body. A pony should, therefore, never be practised if he shows the slightest symptom of a sore back ; if he is, he will associate the pain with the strokes, and will hate the game accordingly. A good plan is to line the saddle with glazed lining, the shiny part being next the pony's skin, and of course the saddle should be left *on* for nearly an hour after play or practice, the girths merely being loosened.

We now come to the vexed question of bits and bridles. Formerly snaffle bridles and a very short single rope rein were much in vogue, and ponies used to be lugged about by main force—i.e. the system of a sharp bit and a sharp pair of spurs—turning clumsily and entirely on their shoulders. The current of opinion has, however, now set in favour of double bridles and long reins. A horse that you can ride in a snaffle bridle, be he hunter or hack, is the most charming of mounts,

A SCRIMMAGE—THE BALL HANGS

but a horse used for such purposes is not called on to do what a polo pony is; for the latter has to turn, dodge, twist, and pull up often within a few yards. To do this he *must* get his haunches under him, and a double bridle is the only means by which he can be made to do it. Eastern horsemen invariably use a sharp bit; so do the Guachos of South America, and they can pull a horse on to his haunches when going almost at full speed.

The majority of polo players, and all the best—with perhaps one or two exceptions, and they ride ponies that would play almost without any bridle—use double bridles, viz. 'bit and bridoon,' which, I contend, are for every reason preferable to snaffle bridles.

Blinkers were formerly nearly universally used in the game, but have now become practically obsolete. That such should be the case is, in the opinion of any one who has experience, most fortunate, as they were responsible for half the accidents that occurred. They were most dangerous, preventing, as they did, a pony seeing another that was charging down on him, and therefore he never exerted himself to resist the shock or get out of the way; consequently the slightest shove sent him over. In fact, riding a pony in blinkers is about as risky as playing football blindfold.

Spurs should as a rule be discarded; those with rowels are not allowed at Hurlingham, except under exceptional circumstances. Few men know how to use spurs, and fewer still in the excitement of a game are cool enough to use them with beneficial effect either to themselves or their ponies. Besides, if an accident should occur and you get a fall, the absence of spurs will enable you to get clear of your pony sooner and more easily. At any rate, they should never be worn in a match. They may, however, be used in practice with a pony that has got old and cunning, in order to induce him to start more quickly; and it is often a good plan to ride him with spurs the day before a match, in order to waken him up. With regard to this question of spurs, I know some will differ from me—and, as showing the

other side of the question, I would quote the Earl of Airlie, who writes to me :—'I consider spurs or whips with most ponies in *India* to be a necessity, if you are to play properly and get the most out of your pony. Ponies in India are much more sluggish, owing to the climate, and most of them want spurs more, and will stand them more, than English ponies.' This may be the case in India, but the fact that few English players wear spurs, I think, strengthens my argument.

It is often advisable to ride with a whip when playing in a match ; not necessarily for use, but in order to let your pony know that he must do his utmost and that he is not engaged merely in practice. Of course, however, he should never be punished with it unnecessarily

Newmarket racing bandages are the best to play in. I refer to those with a loop at one end, through which the other end is passed before the leg is swathed ; this enables the bandage to be pulled tight, and prevents it from slipping and becoming loose. They are much better than leather boots, being more elastic, and so less liable to hamper a pony in turning. Cloth boots with leather buckles are also very good, and are much used.

As will be seen on reference to the Hurlingham and Indian Rules, the height of ponies is limited to 14 hands in England, and 13 hands 3 inches in India. This subject, viz. the best height for a polo pony, has given rise to much controversy, some maintaining that a small pony is quicker and more active in every way, and that the player being nearer the ground it is easier for him to make certain of hitting the ball. I cannot agree with this theory, and hold that with polo ponies as with racehorses 'a *good* big 'un is better than a good little 'un.' The extra size and weight of a 14-hand pony give him an enormous advantage over one of only 13 hands 1 inch or 13 hands 2 inches, and a team of big men on big ponies may safely be backed against a team mounted on smaller ponies, however good the men and animals of the latter may be. A big pony, too, seems to balance your weight better, and do his work with greater ease

both to himself and his rider. Besides, in a hustling match, where you are riding an opponent off the ball, weight is bound to tell. That there have been, and are still, many capital small polo ponies is indisputable. I may mention the little chestnut Indian 'tattoo' Blair, got by an Arab sire out of a Deccanee pony mare, the property of Captain K. M'Laren, 13th Hussars, that only measures 12 hands 3 inches; the well-known Dick, formerly the property of Captain F. Herbert; Major Peters' Dublin, and Mr. F. Mildmay's Judy, only 13 hands 2½ inches; but ponies such as these stand out by themselves, and, good as they are, are bound to give way when it comes to a trial of strength with bigger and heavier ponies; nor can they carry weight.

So far I have endeavoured to point out the course to be pursued by a man who buys a raw pony and trains it himself. Comparatively few men, however, have the time and inclination to do this; though should it be done properly the result will be more satisfactory than if the pony be bought second-hand. The reason is not far to seek, and simply resolves itself into the fact that from constantly riding the pony, and having trained him yourself, he not only knows your ways better and is more ready to take a hint from your hands, but that the case is the same with yourself. I have known within my own experience several ponies, that played brilliantly with the man that broke them, fail utterly when they passed into other hands. One pony that was sold two seasons ago for three figures, and that played capitally in its breaker's hands, was sold in disgust by its purchaser for 35*l.*, as he said the pony was 'ball shy'! This was not the case, however, the fact being that the new owner, a fair player, did not understand the pony. This is merely one instance of what breaking a pony yourself will do.

Where money is no object, the problem of getting together a stud of polo ponies is very much simplified; and a man will find no difficulty in suiting himself with 'trained' animals. The best time to buy, and the best locality, is after the Cup Matches and Inter-Regimental Tournaments at Hurlingham, and these

generally take place about the middle of June and first week in July. The would-be purchaser will by then have had the opportunity of seeing the ponies play, and be able to form an opinion as to what will suit him best. Soundness must, of course, be an indispensable condition; for though a pony may be a most brilliant performer, it may really not be able to play five minutes without going wrong. An instance of this was The Fawn, who latterly threw out bad splints. but still she was so fast, and could play so brilliantly for a short time, that her owner, Mr. Arthur Peat, always kept her as a reserve, and once, in a tight match for the Champion Cup, got on her at the end of the game for a few moments and fairly galloped his opponents down.

Of course if a man can do this, and afford the luxury of an extraordinarily brilliant but unsound pony, and keep it merely for some exceptional case, well and good; but few men can. In buying a trained animal the purchaser has not the difficulties of make and shape to contend with; he has merely to judge of the pony by its performances. We all know that horses go well in all shapes, and so if the pony fulfils the requisites of soundness, pace, and handiness, the task of the purchaser will be one of no great difficulty, provided he has the £. *s. d.* Of course it will be advisable in buying to take into consideration the proficiency as a polo player of the man you are buying from, for a pony that will go well with one man may not do so with another, and no one can sell 'hands.' A trial, however, can generally settle this question.

In conclusion, just one word in defence of the game.

It has been urged by some humanitarians, including some thoroughly good sportsmen, that polo is a cruel game—cruel to the ponies, as they get their mouths fearfully pulled about, and get hit over the head and legs in the scuffle and excitement of a bully. Now this is pure fallacy. To begin with, a pony ought to be properly trained before he is played regularly, and if this is done there will be no need for his rider to pull his mouth about. If this is done, a pony will not be any good for

polo, for he will simply decline to play. Of course, if the animal is raw and untrained he must undergo certain unpleasantnesses in the course of his training; but no man ought to attempt to play polo until his pony is so bitted and trained as to obey the slightest hint given by hand or leg. Then again, though ponies do sometimes drop in for a few hard knocks, it is no more than their riders do. Their legs, which suffer principally in this respect, are protected by bandages; and, besides, men who play the game well and properly do not go swiping about recklessly. Witnessing a game at Hurlingham played by good men on good ponies, both knowing what they are about, will amply demonstrate that there is not much cruelty about polo. Ponies learn to love the game, to take an interest in it, and play as keenly as their riders. Chance, a celebrated old pony belonging to the Messrs. Peat, would follow the ball like a dog, and has even been known to look up and watch its flight in the air! So keenly, too, would this pony follow the ball, that his owners used often at practice gallop at the ball sitting *face to the tail* and hit it in that position. Ali Baba, too, another well-known pony, the property of, and bred by, the Earl of Harrington, will, without the reins being touched, turn of his own accord and follow the ball after it has been hit by a back-hander! Had there been any element of cruelty either in the training of the ponies or in the game itself, such instances would be unknown.

Of course, like Mr. Jorrocks's celebrated horse Artaxerxes, there are some 'h'enterprizeless brutes' whose equine soul never warms to the delight of the sport; but a really good polo pony is usually as keen as his master in taking an active part in the game.

CHAPTER VIII

SOME FAMOUS PLAYERS AND PONIES

WITH so many names to note—names of men and animals who have deservedly earned for themselves a niche in the temple of polo fame—I feel that I have a somewhat difficult task to perform. It is therefore hard, to a certain degree, to drop to the bit, and settle down nicely into one's stride. Moreover, I labour under the disadvantage of having been unacquainted with some of the earlier paladins of polo, when the game was, so to speak, in its infancy. Then again, information gained second-hand is but a poor substitute for personal knowledge. I must therefore briefly condense my notice of the most noteworthy players of the past, for the subject of Polo is a large one, and space is limited. Let me begin with a few notes about the most prominent players when the game was but young. I must not, however, be supposed in either case to take the names in any order of merit. Where all were and are so good, this would be an impossible task; my remarks, therefore, will be made not in any order, but as names occur to me, conjured up from hearsay, or as some brilliant bit of play, some dashing run, or some good bit of generalship is remembered.

When polo was first introduced into Ireland, no one took to the sport more keenly than Mr. Horace Rochfort of Colgrenane, county Carlow, one of the best sportsmen ever bred on Irish soil, who, with his nephews, the brothers Hall of the Carabineers, were amongst the earliest exponents of the game. Truly, Mr. Rochfort deserves equally the title of Patriarch of

Polo as well as that of Nestor of Nimrods, so affectionately bestowed on him in his native land. Though at the time a man of sixty, he proved himself as good on the back of a polo pony as he was in the hunting-field. He it was who inaugurated the County Carlow and All Ireland Polo Clubs, institutions which have gone on and flourished ever since. Mr. Horace Rochfort formed one of the team that beat the 8th Hussars in the first regular match ever played in Ireland, when County Carlow sent him, Mr. Robert Watson, M.F.H., his son Mr. John Watson (of present renown), Mr. Stewart-Duckett, and Mr. James Butler, to do battle with Messrs. Gould, Green, Gregg, Paley, and Baldock, when the county team won, and crowned themselves with glory.

Mr. Geoffrey Hone was another very brilliant player, and so was Major B. Gough, 9th Lancers, better known as 'Goffy,' who was quite at the top of the tree in India, and one of the best 'forwards' ever seen. Captain Steeds, a familiar figure at the Dublin Horse Show, was another well-known man on the polo ground, and generally owned a smart pony or two which he always made good use of. He had a wonderful pony called Tongs, which he bought for a mere song at a sale in Dublin, on the condition that he should be delivered at his house at Clonsilla, seven miles distant; for the impression was that he could not be got there. Eventually he reached his future home and 'went to school.' Education was a hard matter, and resulted in a desperate duel; but Captain Steeds won, and the pony turned out a treasure. The 9th Lancers numbered amongst their ranks many other fine players—Lord William ('Bill') Beresford, V.C.; poor 'Dick' Clayton, who was killed at Delhi on Christmas Eve, 1877, whilst playing the game he loved so well; Chisholme, and 'Tim' Butson, who was killed in action in Afghanistan, were all 9th men, and gloriously kept up the credit of their corps.

Every one knows the old saying of 'The 10th don't dance,' but at any rate the 10th Hussars have ever proved that they can ride and play polo, for tradition has handed down many

prominent players of that regiment, whose names may fitly be inscribed on the roll of polo fame. Colonel 'Tommy' St. Quintin, now commanding the 8th Hussars, was certainly one of the best, if not the very best, polo player the 10th ever turned out, and quite headed the list of Indian players for years; and to the impetus he gave to the game in India by starting the Indian Inter-Regimental Tournament much of the success of those pleasant meetings is due. A more perfect 'back' or captain of a side could hardly be found, even in these days.

Poor Mr. Startin, who was killed out pig-sticking, was another well-known man in the 10th, and a very brilliant 'forward,' as was also Captain Philip Durham. 'Chicken' Hartopp, so well known in hunting circles, was another enthusiast, and exhibited as much fervour in polo as he did in fox-hunting; and whether these tastes were varied by the caprice of the moment—music, chemical and electrical experiments, athletic feats, or bear-fighting—he threw his whole soul into his work. A most useful man in a team, he was, however, heavily handicapped by his great weight, which told even more in India. Lord Chesham, the present popular master of the Bicester, and formerly a subaltern in the 10th, when he was the Honourable C. Cavendish had the reputation of being a very brilliant 'half back' and 'forward' player. But the polo ground knows him no more now, except as a spectator, for hound and horn claim all his energies, and rightly too, perhaps. The present Earl of Airlie, then Lord Ogilvy, another 10th man, is an enthusiast of the game. Not content with proficiency, he is celebrated as knowing more of polo than most men, and having done more to encourage and foster it in India by his liberality and keenness than any one.

'Monte' Cradock of the Carabineers, was also another good man, and so were Messrs. Oliver Jones (13th Hussars); 'Bengey' Jones (Carabineers), and 'Wengey' Jones (5th Lancers), the latter being one of the most brilliant forward players at present. The brothers C. and A. de Murrieta were also amongst the 'lights of other days,' and amongst the ablest

early exponents of the game, brilliant players, and always mounted to perfection. Mr. Brocklehurst and the Marquis of Worcester, when serving in the Blues, were also well-known men. Lord Worcester displayed in the game all those qualities that have since characterised him as a huntsman, being very enthusiastic, quick, and hard-working. His great height, however—6 feet 4 inches—told somewhat heavily against him ; but he was always there or thereabouts in a 'bully,' and his quickness of observation, besides his good horsemanship, made him a formidable antagonist. Mr. Reginald Herbert, the master of the Monmouthshire Hounds, and the founder of the Ranelagh Club, participated with his brother, Captain 'Tip' Herbert (a beautiful horseman, who is still very much to the front), in many a good game, and did more than most men to make polo popular.

Sir Bache Cunard, the Hon. C. Fitzwilliam, Lord Henry Vane Tempest, Captain Needham, Lord Downe, Sir C. Wolseley, Mr. Mellor, H.R.H. the Duke of Connaught, Colonel the Hon. R. Talbot, Colonel Owen Williams, Captain Philip Green, Lord Rossmore, and Lord Valentia, were also among the patrons of polo in former days. But the game was different in those days, and not the scientific galloping one it is now ; in fact, with no implied disrespect, they were the days of the 'dribbling' game, and of ponies much smaller than those used at present.

Coming to the present day, no family has been so widely known in the annals of polo as the brothers Peat. Having come to the front in 1879, they still achieve fresh laurels every year, and keep up their well-earned reputation as the most brilliant players ever known, their names being household words among those who delight to chase the flying ball. Possessing a stud of some four-and-twenty of the best ponies that money can buy, all of which they train themselves, they are indeed hard to beat. The eldest brother, Mr. Arthur Peat, is one of the most, if not the most brilliant player in any place of the game. Possessing the natural talents of a leader, he generally

takes the responsible position of 'back,' from which his side benefits materially, and here he shines to perfection, for quick as lightning, strong of seat and arm, with a wonderfully good eye that enables him to place the ball well for his own side, he is the very type of an accomplished player. The next brother, Mr. James Peat, who invariably plays bareheaded, and is better known as 'Johnnie,' is the most brilliant 'forward' player ever known. A very fine horseman, with great length of limb, he is able to hit tremendously hard, and his good eye enables him to calculate to a nicety the direction in which a ball should be sent when making a shot for goal. No man is capable of making more dashing runs, and he has a way of getting away with the ball and twisting through a crowd of horsemen in a manner that has never been surpassed. Equally good at a hustle, it is no wonder that the team which has 'Johnnie' Peat on their side congratulate themselves on having odds in their favour.

The youngest brother, Mr. Alfred Peat, who also plays 'forward,' though more generally as 'half back,' is a poloist who shows to advantage where dash and quickness are required. Though not putting, perhaps, as much 'powder' into his strokes as Mr. James Peat, he yet knows the game so thoroughly, and is such a good horseman, that he admirably sustains the family reputation; there are few better 'half backs' than 'The Boy.' The Messrs. Peat's best ponies are Dynamite, a bay mare, apparently clean bred, and very fast; Seagull, a grey, that can skim over the ground at a marvellous pace; Perfidy, also a grey (in whose veins, 'tis said, flows the blood of Lord Poulett's celebrated steeplechaser The Lamb), as quick as lightning, and able to go a great pace; Gay Lad, Ninepins, and Grasshopper, all bays, and pictures of make and shape; Edge, a very speedy light brown pony; and others which space prevents my mentioning, but all of which are 'as good as they make 'em.' Probably Esmeralda, the property of the Messrs. Peat, was one of the best polo ponies ever bred, and quite a celebrity during the nine seasons she played. Maggie,

Abbess, and The Fawn were also marvellously speedy ponies in their day, and bywords in the polo world. All these are now at the stud, and doubtless as they rest on their laurels and wander about the pleasant purlieus of the parks at Elvaston or Houghton, enjoying their well-earned repose, they tell the youngsters who keep them company of the glories and delights of polo stick and ball, and inspire them with enthusiasm for the game.

Mr. Frank Mildmay, M.P., who, with the three Messrs. Peat, makes up the hitherto unconquered Sussex County Team, is a most beautiful and finished player, and for neatness and style unsurpassed. Though slight of build, he yet can hit tremendously hard. Always in the right place, never hurried or flustered, and mounted to perfection, he is a model of a horseman and polo player, and whether on the lovely Picquet (by Chypre)—so well known both on the polo ground and in the Show ring at Hurlingham, where she has swept the board for two years in succession, besides securing premier honours at Trent at the head of the list in a strong class of thirty-two ponies, said by Lord Combermere to have been the finest class of ponies he had ever judged—or on Judy, or Kitty, it is always a treat to see him play.

A word here on those two latter ponies. It is an axiom in the horsey world that 'a good big 'un is better than a good little 'un,' and as a rule it is true; but there are exceptions to every rule, and Judy and Kitty are undoubtedly exceptions, for Judy stands but 13·2½ hands, and Kitty (by Pero Gomez) is 13·3 hands. Both are bay mares. The former was bought at Cambridge by Mr. Mildmay for 35*l.*, and the latter as a four-year-old at Tattersall's for 20*l.*—rather a contrast to the prices now given! though they certainly are worth the three figures that a good polo pony will fetch. Quicker on their legs than most ponies, and thus enabling their rider to slip in and take advantage of any opening, they are decidedly 'nippy,' and as such invaluable. Added to this, though played unceasingly for four seasons, they have never been sick or sorry till last year,

when Judy ricked her thigh, though now she is playing as brilliantly as ever—no mean test of their capabilities. Judy, like most celebrities, and especially those of the gentler sex, has her peculiarities, and in her case it takes the form of an uncontrollable desire to perform the feat generally known as 'playing the fool' in every possible way before the game begins. When knocking the ball about prior to play, she will pretend it has indescribable terrors for her; will shy away from it; buck, kick, and refuse to go near it. Directly the game begins in earnest, however, 'a change comes o'er the spirit of her dream'; she sobers down, and takes the greatest interest in the proceedings, following the ball like a dog, and turning when a 'back-hander' is given, almost quicker than her rider can give her the hint. This is but one among many instances of the fascination that the game possesses for equine as well as for human minds.

Whether hunting his hounds six days a week over the extensive and varied South Notts country, sweeping the board of prizes at the Military Tournament, or playing in some well-contested polo match, Lord Harrington is equally at home. A capital 'back,' a very hard hitter, and riding the most perfectly trained ponies, he is a tower of strength to his side. His lordship used to formerly play No. 1, but a severe accident to his left shoulder forced him to take to the easier but more responsible position of 'back,' which he fills to admiration. Perhaps no man has entered so much into the theory as well as the practice of bending the equine to the human will; and those who have witnessed the way his well-known ponies Ali Baba and Jenny (both by the Barb sire Awfully Jolly), The Girl, &c., enter into the spirit of the game will confirm my humble opinion that had not Providence made his lordship a peer he would have become a formidable rival to the celebrated Mr. Rarey, though he perhaps possesses other and gentler methods of making beast subservient to man.

Though a veteran, Mr. T. S. Kennedy is another player of note; as hard a man to beat when hounds run as he is when engaged in a polo 'scuffle.' Active, spare of body, muscular,

a powerful horseman, as keen as mustard, and endowed with great patience and dash, with quick habits of observation, which only shine with greater lustre in awkward predicaments, no wonder he succeeds in playing well a game he so dearly loves, and he will always be associated with two of the most wonderful hits on record. A few years ago, when charging for the ball was the fashion, Mr. Kennedy was playing in a match, Civilians *v.* Military, at Hurlingham. He was riding Mickey Free, and, getting first to the ball, which was in midground, he with one drive hit it within a yard of the enemy's goal; then, getting past all his opponents, he tipped the ball in and scored. Now comes the extraordinary part, for when ends were changed Mr. Kennedy repeated the performance! Two goals in less than five minutes with practically two hits! The distance from centre of ground to the goals was 160 yards. His pony Dandy Jim, a chestnut who pulled his own pelvis bone in two when playing at Hurlingham, and had to be then and there destroyed; and Mickey Free, bought originally out of a Brighton tradesman's cart—a wonderful little hunter, and the fastest pony of his day at Hurlingham—were two of Mr. Kennedy's celebrated polo ponies. A chestnut Arab also, Euphrates, now the property of Mr. E. W. Baird, 10th Hussars, and one of the best Arabs in England, formerly belonged to Mr. Kennedy, who brought him over from Bombay in 1883, where he had purchased him from Abdul Rahman, the well-known dealer, for Rs. 1,000. After teaching him the game and playing him for two seasons Mr. Kennedy parted with him to his present owner for 200*l.* The chestnut Umpire, an Arab of the Anazeh tribe, Keheilan strain, is one of Mr. Kennedy's best animals at present. Imported by him in 1887, Umpire figures in the 'Stud Book.' A beautifully shaped pony, and as fresh and clean on his legs as a two-year-old, he has well repaid the Rs. 1,000 his owner gave for him, and some day will make his mark as a sire. Mr. Kennedy had also a nice mare, Deception, a black, bought at Lord Airlie's sale for 200*l.*—fast, and a grand stamp to breed from, though she can hardly be considered first class as a match

pony owing to a nasty trick of often baulking her rider—the result of bad early training; and he now possesses one of the smartest ponies in England in Dancing Girl, by Sefton (winner of the Derby in 1878) out of Pretty Dance, by Doncaster out of Highland Fling. Faultless in shape, and with a great turn of speed, Dancing Girl was entered for the Oaks, and as a yearling fetched a very high figure. She has now been put through the mill and taught the game by Mr. Kennedy, and taught so well, that in spite of having been rather

Arab pony—Umpire.

a handful, she is now not only one of the fastest, but one of the most brilliant and handy ponies seen at Hurlingham for many a day.

Mr. E. Kenyon Stow, who has been a poloist since 1874, plays a capital game—quick, dashing, and resolute, as befits a good 'forward.' Amongst his best ponies may be numbered Patch, a brown mare of most perfect shape and manners, who hailed from Mr. John Watson's stables, and who, besides being

a wonderful performer, will be remembered in polo history as having fetched the highest price ever given for a polo pony, viz. 300 gs. One of the stable companions of Patch, and every whit as good, is Piper, own brother to Mr. Frank Mildmay's Picquet, a beautiful chestnut with whom it would be difficult to find fault. With powerful quarters, great thighs and hocks, and capital shoulders added to his many other good points, he looks a hunter in miniature, and one on which a light-weight might see every yard of a run, even in the stiffest country.

A thoroughbred pony—Dancing Girl, by Sefton.

Two former celebrities of Mr. Kenyon Stow's were a rare-shaped Welsh pony named Cinderella, who now is at Lord Harrington's stud, and who, in spite of having lost an eye through an accident at lemon-cutting, still played most wonderfully ; and Bullfighter, also a Welsh mare, the very model of a pony, and now also at the stud at Elvaston. Devoted to the game, and a welcome addition to any team, Mr. Kenyon Stow has done much to further the cause of polo in the provinces,

by laying out a new polo-ground at Houghton in Norfolk, which bids fair to equal any ground in England.

Captain Thomas Hone, late 7th Hussars, is another very brilliant player, and a tremendously hard hitter. He formed one of the team that accompanied Mr. John Watson to America, and is the owner of the shapely Mary Anne.

Amongst Hurlingham *habitués* the brothers J. R. and W. H. Walker are not so often seen as others, but when they do put in an appearance their brilliant play cannot fail to attract attention. Taking the deepest interest not only in the game but in the breeding of ponies to play it, they are living examples of how good horsemen can play, and play right well too, on any breed of pony; though, like some others, their fancy inclines towards Eastern breeds. Their Arab, Magic, a perfect picture to look at, who has won several races both in India and at home; their Syrian ponies Sinbad, Saladin, and the Egyptian, Solomon, are all fast, good, and active, and endowed with the qualities necessary in a polo pony.

Mr. Gerald Hardy is another familiar figure wherever polo is played. Few men have done more for county polo than Mr. Hardy, and, in conjunction with the Messrs. Walker above mentioned, he is the life and moving spirit of the well-known Barton-under-Needwood Club in Staffordshire. A good horseman, hard hitter, and with a thorough knowledge of the game, he still plays as well as ever he did before he met with the unfortunate accident that deprived him of an eye. His old white pony Rose-alba, by an Arab sire out of a New Forest pony mare, the speedy chestnut Arab, Rajah, and Venus, are all quite celebrities.

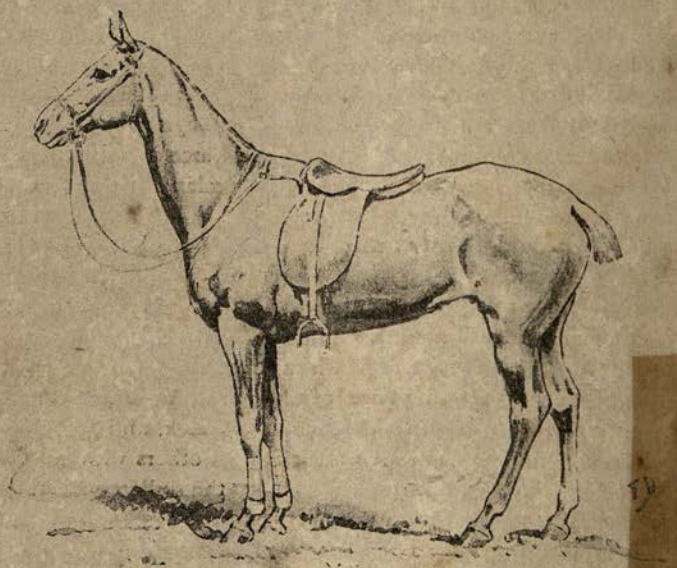
Mr. John Watson, the present Master of the Meath Hounds, is perhaps the leading poloist of the day, as well as one of the best judges of a horse or polo pony, and trainer of either. Son of the veteran master of the Carlow and Island Hounds, and formerly holding a commission in the 13th Hussars, he is captain of the renowned 'Freebooters,' perhaps the strongest combination of polo talent that exists—a club that

has earned innumerable laurels, besides more tangible proofs of its prowess in cups, both in England, Ireland, and America, than any other. Whether riding a boar over the blind Kadir country in the North-West Provinces of India, sailing away over the broad pastures of Meath and Kildare, getting across the more cramped enclosures of his home country, or wielding a polo stick in the Phœnix Park, or on Hurlingham's level sward, Mr. Watson stands pre-eminent as a sportsman and horseman. Endowed with the family gift of horsemanship, added to length of limb and great muscular power, no man is better able to steady a too-eager animal, or shove along a sticky one. His apprenticeship to the game began early, as when but a youngster, and before joining his regiment, he practised a great deal, making his first appearance in public in the first formal polo match ever played in Ireland, in 1872. He then formed one of the Carlow team that did battle with the 8th Hussars, and defeated them, much to every one's surprise, by seven goals to *nil*.

Ever since then, both whilst serving with his regiment and subsequently, Mr. Watson's reputation has steadily increased. No better captain exists. With a capacity for noting with rapidity every turn and phase of the game, he knows almost instinctively when to turn defence into attack, and by his example seems able to inspire and inoculate others with his own enthusiasm to a degree which warms up the dullest player. It was Mr. Watson who demonstrated by practical example that taking the ball round was *not* the winning game to play, and he it was who showed how a goal should be defended by back-hand strokes. One has only to hear the remarks made by a Milesian crowd about 'John Watson,' as they familiarly and affectionately term him, to see in what estimation he is held in his native country. Some of the best polo ponies ever known hailed from Mr. Watson's stable, and needless to say he has always some good ones. Amongst his best at present are Fritz, by Kinsman, dam by Tom Steel, and an Arab named Joss, imported by General Davis. Fritz, who, like many other good

ponies of the present time, is rather on the large side, but has passed the ordeal of measurement, is a bright chestnut, the picture of a weight-carrying pony. Knowing more about the game than most men, and dear as the apple of his eye to his master, Fritz is a byword wherever polo is played in England or Ireland.

I saw Mr. Watson ride this pony last season, during a match in the Phœnix Park, for *forty minutes* without once getting off



A model type of pony—Fritz, by Kinsman.

his back! Mr. Watson's team was decidedly the weaker, but they won the match, chiefly owing to the exertions of Fritz and his master. Joss is also a chestnut—a well-shaped animal, with the very hocks for a polo pony, but a fiery little gentleman withal. Starting life in a circus at Cairo he was, unlike most Eastern ponies, somewhat difficult to train at first, and would fly about all over the place; but patience, firmness, and gentle

handling won the day, and he is now nearly perfect. Meg, by The Wanderer, was a celebrated past heroine of the polo field, and was the first pony Mr. Watson owned after he returned from India. He played her for four seasons, when she came to a sad end through breaking her leg in the Phœnix Park. Venus, by The Mallard, a Yorkshire-bred mare, was another grand pony, and as good as she possibly could be. Mr. Watson heard of her carrying a man remarkably well to hounds, so sent off and bought her, and never regretted his bargain.

Patch, before mentioned; The Nurse (about one of the best ponies Mr. Watson ever owned, though he was over her weight), by Macdonald, brother to Scottish Chief, her dam by the celebrated Irish horse Freeny, her granddam by an Arab, and her great granddam out of a Connemara mare of great quality; The Rag, now in America; Mary Anne, by Baron Birdcatcher, now the property of Captain Thomas Hone, and endowed with a great turn of speed; The Nurse (now the property of Mr. 'Phil' Fenwick), out of The Nurse above mentioned; and Kit-Cat (who has a curious habit of whisking her tail all the time she is galloping), own sister to Fritz, now owned by Captain Spicer, of the Royal Horse Guards, were some of Mr. Watson's former favourites; and, when their breeding is considered, it will be patent to all what sort of animal a first-rate polo pony is.

Prominent as a shining light in the polo world stands Captain 'Tip' Herbert, formerly of the 9th Lancers, who, with his brother Mr. Reginald Herbert, started the first county polo club in England, viz. the Monmouthshire Club, and did so much to render the game popular. A light-weight, a perfect horseman, with great dash and quickness, Captain Herbert is a host in himself, well known at Hurlingham, Ranelagh, and other polo grounds; and no matter on what sort of animal he is mounted, he makes it go somehow. Amongst his best ponies was Dick, a little chestnut, bought originally for 25*l.*, and sold first for 150*l.*, and subsequently for 200*l.*

A brown pony named Whiskey was another of Captain Herbert's celebrities, as was Polly, a roan, on which he is

depicted in Mr. Earle's well-known picture of Polo at Hurlingham, though in this Polly wrongly figures as a dun; whilst amongst high-class ponies he has owned is a beautiful black, named Starlight, now the property of Mr. Arthur Peat.

Mr. Edge and Mr. Jameson are well-known Irish players, and, being both heavy men and well mounted, are awkward customers in a hustling bout.

I must not omit from the roll of foremost players of the day the names of Messrs. Vaughan and Grenfell, who always distinguish themselves, whatever position in the game they may occupy. Mr. Vaughan is specially noticeable for his hard hitting, and particularly for his very neat near side 'forward' hitting, and probably no man excels him both for force and vigour in this particular stroke. The ponies belonging to Messrs. Vaughan and Grenfell are as good as can be found, Busymaid by Lurgan recently belonging to the former, and now the property of Mr. F. B. Mildmay, being the picture of an aristocratic little mare, but, being light-weight ponies, they cannot claim as much attention as the weight-carriers to which I have alluded.

Captain 'Jim' Barry, late Royal Artillery, of steeplechase fame; Captain J. Fergusson, of the Royal Horse Guards; and Mr. Charles McNeill, are all most promising players; and though the latter was only 'entered' at the game in 1889, he has on several occasions already greatly distinguished himself.

Amongst military players, Captain Julian Spicer, of the Royal Horse Guards, stands pre-eminent. A brilliant 'back,' and good in any position of the game, he is quite in the front rank, and whether mounted on his well-known barb Smuggler, who is quite a veteran, Kit-Cat, before mentioned, or on Captain 'Wengey' Jones's extraordinary barb. pony Spider, which he rode in 1889, his play cannot fail to win admiration.

Major Babington, of the 16th Lancers, is another fine player, and a rare 'back,' as is Captain Jeffreys, of the Artillery. Captains Lamont, Jenner (who has played for his corps in seven Inter-Regimental Tournaments, viz. four in India and three at home), Malcolm Little, Cameron, and Colvin, of the 10th

Lancers, are all first-rate performers. Captain C. R. Burn, who has two of the highest-caste Arabs in Seagull and Blue Blood, Mr. Percy Browne (nicknamed 'Belinda,' from a wonderful pony of that name that he formerly owned), Mr. F. G. McMahon and Mr. Arthur Mesham, all of the Royal Dragoons, play a good bold game. Captain the Hon. H.

A 'near-side 'stroke.

Allsopp, Messrs. A. Hughes Onslow, and E. W. D. Baird, of the 10th Hussars, the latter the owner of Euphrates, about the best Arab polo pony in England, are all very effective; Captain K. MacLaren, 13th Hussars, is one of the neatest of players. Gifted with the eye of a hawk, and never flurried, he combines both style and precision in his play. His best pony is Blair, a bright chestnut 'tattoo' standing only 12 hands 3 inches, got

by an Arab out of a Deccanee mare. Blair began life as a grass-cutter's 'tat' in the Poona Horse. During the campaign in Afghanistan Mr. John Watson spotted him, and in exchange for 70 rupees he was soon transferred to that gentleman's stable, and subsequently to Captain MacLaren's, where for nine years he has fairly earned his corn and gained a great reputation. To see the way this little pony pushes and shoves, twists and turns, and the pluck, staying power, and speed he exhibits, is simply marvellous, and he is indeed a *multum in parvo*. Jenny, a dun mare by Gamester, and nearly clean bred, is another good pony belonging to Captain MacLaren, who bought her from a Cumberland farmer; and though she and Blair are light-weight ponies, yet they are so good that they both deserve a word of notice in these pages. Captain Chaloner, of the 3rd Hussars, who now owns the bloodlike Belinda, is a fine player and brilliant 'forward,' as is Captain Oswald of the same corps. Captain the Hon. H. Ormsby Gore, of the 11th Hussars, who possesses a marvel in the shapely Dorothy, a pony that has proved herself fast enough to win on the flat at Baldoyle, is good all round. Major Peters, of the 4th Hussars, is a brilliant 'forward' and indefatigable player. Captain Duff, Captain le Gallais, and Captain Vesey, of the 8th Hussars, are also quite in the front rank. The former shines as a 'back,' and the latter as 'No. 2,' and is a fine hitter on the near side. All these show that the army is no bad school to turn out polo players.

The 7th Fusiliers have earned a name in the annals of polo by winning the All Ireland Open Cup in 1878, and turned out some good men, *inter alia* Captain Keyser, who owned a twin-brother of Mr. Stewart's beautiful little dun pony Mouse, which played for twelve consecutive seasons. The 5th Fusiliers, the 60th Rifles, and the 23rd Welsh Fusiliers, that horsiest of foot regiments, the 25th K.O.B.'s, and the 33rd also, all counted some good and keen players amid their ranks. Messrs. Meyrick, Hargreaves, and Dundas, of the 15th Hussars, are all fine players, and in old days in India none was better than Captain Tidy, of the 54th.

Amongst useful men in county teams may be mentioned the Messrs. Bird, of the Barton-under-Needwood Club, Messrs. Sheffield-Neave and Sperling, of the Priory Club; Messrs. Milne, Fraser-Tytler, and Walter Peake, the latter the moving spirit of the Ashtead Club. Mr. Lockett (a left-handed player),

A 'back-hander.'

and Mr. Cartland, of the Liverpool Club, also show good form; whilst last, but not least, the Hon. W. North and Mr. H. C. Bentley, poet and poloist, formerly Captain of the Cambridge University Polo team (a good man all round, both with hounds, gun, and rod, or riding a pony race), also deserve

a word of commendation. Amongst Irish county players, Mr. Locke, of Westmeath, was very effective. Mr. E. Dease is the best in his county. Mr. M. D'Arcy is said to have played a good bold game; whilst Mr. Coppinger, well known between the flags, showed much ability.

Amongst Indian players of note, past and present, may be mentioned Mr. Craigie, of Bombay, who, though he plays no longer, has done more than anyone to further polo interests in that Presidency. Seymour Barrow, of Hodson's Horse, was a host in himself. Poor Mr. Hughes Buller, of the Central India Horse, who was killed riding a steeplechase in 1884, was a moving spirit in polo circles, a great enthusiast and brilliant player. Captain Phayre, of the 3rd Bombay Cavalry, is a very dashing 'forward' as well as a splendid 'back.' Captain Reid, of the 25th Regiment (King's Own Borderers), has also earned a great reputation as a most effective 'back,' and yet endowed with that dash and go that will at times snatch an apparently lost game out of the fire and turn the tables on his adversaries. Needless to say, with such qualities he is a rare captain, and plays to perfection an up-hill game. Captain Hornby, of the Rifle Brigade, has a great reputation in India; and Captain C. D. Bruce, of the 33rd, is famous as a fine 'forward' and most brilliant player, the mainstay of his regimental team.

Amongst renowned players in the Native Cavalry, Captain G. Richardson, of the 18th Bengal Lancers, is not only a safe and experienced player, but possesses a most comprehensive knowledge of the game. Captain J. Nixon, of the same corps, is also well known as a very brilliant 'forward.' To the roll of famous players, that distinguished regiment, the 9th Bengal Lancers, contributes the names of Mr. Dawson, a fine 'back' and tremendous hitter; and Captain Mackenzie, a very valuable and safe 'forward,' and one who is always in his proper place. Mr. C. Gough, 12th Bengal Lancers, and Messrs. W. S. Alston and G. N. Walker, of Calcutta, have also made a name for themselves amongst Indian poloists.

Captain Bruce Hamilton, of the East Yorkshire Regiment

also ranked high as a poloist, and as an excellent judge of a pony. He always had a good one, and, what is more to the point, knew how to ride him. Whilst serving on the staff of Sir J. Ferguson and Lord Reay at Bombay, Captain Hamilton was well to the front and played in nearly every match of note in Western India. Mr. Hickie, of the 7th Royal Fusiliers, has also the reputation of being a capital 'back,' as has Captain Kuper, of the Royal Artillery.

Major Beatson, 11th Bengal Lancers, is another splendid player, very brilliant, dashing, and a tremendous hitter ; he is a remarkably fine horseman and no one can get more out of a bad pony than he can ; whilst amongst native officers, nobles, and gentlemen, few can compare for neatness and execution with Nawab Mahommed Ali Bey, otherwise known as Afsur Jung, A.D.C. to the Nizam of Hyderabad, honorary major in the British Army, and A.D.C. to the Viceroy of India ; whilst Misri Khan, 18th Bengal Lancers ; Heera Singh, of the 12th Bengal Lancers ; Subadar Desaraj Urs, 3rd Madras Light Cavalry ; Abbas Khan, and Ibrahim Beg are likewise remarkably fine all-round players, and valuable in any team.

The 17th Lancers count some finished players amongst their ranks, and none better than Captain Renton, who has the reputation of being not only the best 'back' in India, but a most brilliant all-round player, besides being always admirably mounted. Lord Ava, Mr. E. D. Miller, and Mr. Rawlinson, also of the 17th Lancers, a most dashing forward player, rank high, and deservedly so, as the 'Death's Head and Glory Boys' have swept the board at Indian tournaments during the last few years, and have not only earned the reputation of being one of the best playing regiments in India, but the best mounted ; a fact testified to by the enormous prices fetched by their ponies when sold at Umballa on March 11, 1890, when forty-five ponies averaged over 900 rupees each, one of Captain Renton's, an Arab, Happy Lad, realising 1,550 rupees. Amongst their Arabs, Budmash, Arab Lad, Outsider, Quicksilver, Minaret, Prince, Perfection, James Pigg, Jumma, Star-

light, and Rainbow[1] ranked very high, and amongst country-bred ponies, Marguerite, Rosamond (whose old syce Baba has been with his pony for years, and refuses to be parted from her, saying she is more to him than all friends and relations), Aladdin, Stella, Moonbeam, Apology, and Lalla Rookh were all first-rate ponies, and fetched very high prices. Captain the Honourable H. Lawley, Mr. Carew, and Mr. Haig, of the 7th Hussars, are all as well-known players in India as they were at home.

Mr. Apperley, a grandson of the famous 'Nimrod,' and Mr. Rowland Hudson, of the Behar Light Horse, are familiar names on the Calcutta polo ground, and no one excels the latter, not only in fine horsemanship, and being a wonderful shot 'at goal,' but in that most difficult stroke—taking a ball coming fast towards the player. This stroke he is said to rarely or never miss. Captain MacDougall, of the 7th Dragoon Guards, is another fine player and a host in himself. Mr. Willett, of the same regiment, is also a powerful player and a good 'back.'

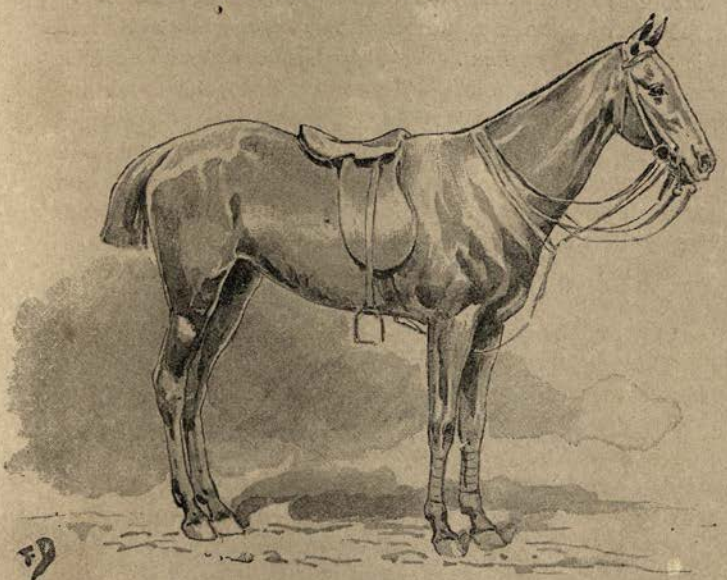
Captain Hanwell, of the Royal Artillery, is well known on the Bombay side, and is a great hitter, besides being a very neat horseman. Mr. De Lisle, of the Durham Light Infantry, is a most enthusiastic player and a very hard hitter; indeed, report affirms that when not actually playing polo on a live animal, he sits on a wooden horse for hours, hitting balls as they are thrown to him, and practising every sort of stroke.

Amongst the planter princes of Bengal, no names are more familiar in polo circles, or indeed in any circles of sport, than those of Messrs. 'Jimmy' McLeod and 'Archie' Hills, both very fine players and mounted to perfection.

Amongst the famous polo ponies of the present day in India must not be omitted the names of the grey country-bred Sambo

[1] Both Rainbow and Starlight were brought home by Mr. Rawlinson in 1890, and played during that season at Hurlingham. Starlight was subsequently purchased by H.R.H. the Duke of Clarence and Avondale, and played in the 10th Hussars team in the Inter-Regimental Tournament at Hurlingham 1890. He is a very high-caste grey Arab, and remarkably fast. He won many races in India.

(who has played in six tournaments), Polestar (the type of a galloping weight-carrying pony), Lulu, The Doe, Lucille, Schoolboy, The Nun, Joe (one of the best light-weight ponies in India), Marie, Maud, Red Lancer, and Kaleidoscope, who have all played three or four years in succession (a pretty good proof of sound constitutions), and whose names will be familiar to most men who have played in the East.



Indian country-bred pony, Polestar—'a good sort.

Perhaps I cannot conclude this chapter better than by relating a peculiar and amusing incident that lately occurred in India. In a game in which the 17th Lancers took part, during a scrimmage close to goal, no one seemed able to find the ball. Some one then said a goal had been hit, whilst others as stoutly maintained it had not; but search for the ball beyond the goal line proved unavailing. Then the secret came out. The ball (of discord) was found attached to the tail of

Lord Ava's pony! This animal, an Arab with a long tail, had been in the thickest of the fight, and the hairs of his tail had become entangled and fixed in a splinter of the ball, and so held it tightly—altogether a somewhat complex case for an umpire to decide upon. I have heard of a ball being hit right up under a pony's tail, and being held there a moment by the animal suddenly tucking down his caudal appendage. I have also heard of a player getting a fall and sitting *on* the ball, but the case of a pony carrying the ball about with him unobserved is exceptionally quaint.

CHAPTER IX

HOW A POLO MATCH SHOULD BE PLAYED

THAT indisputable authority, Mr. Jorrocks, has laid down as an axiom of the hunting field that hounds should always arrive at the fixture punctually; for, he adds, 'punctuality is the politeness of princes'; and on the same principle a polo match should always begin punctually at the hour advertised, though, alas! the rule is generally more honoured in the breach than in the observance. However, at the time named the eight players who compose the contending teams should be mounted, ready, and ride on to the ground accompanied by two umpires (mounted), one for each side. There should also be a time-keeper on foot, outside the ground, and it is his duty to start the game, take the time, and deduct from the various 'periods' of six, fifteen, or twenty minutes any time not spent actually in play, such as intervals required for changing ponies, getting fresh balls, &c.

Each side should be composed of four players, including a captain, who will determine what positions the respective members of his team shall occupy.

Each player has a named position in the game, viz. No. 1, No. 2, No. 3, and No. 4. Nos. 1 and 2 are the 'forward' players, No. 3, 'half-back,' and No. 4, 'back.'

The captain should play either 'back' or 'half-back,' as it is his duty to direct and control his team; and this he would be unable to do efficiently were he not in rear of his fighting line,

where he can see all that is going on in front, and suit his tactics to the exigencies and incidents of the game.

Before proceeding further it may be as well to glance at the various duties of the different players. Men may be individually brilliant players and splendidly mounted, yet if they disregard the duties connected with their respective positions they will probably suffer defeat at the hands of a weaker and worse mounted team, who play together. There is much truth in the Belgian national motto 'L'union fait la force,' and to polo this is certainly most applicable. That, under certain circumstances, it requires much self-denial not to disregard the voice of duty is incontestable ; yet what would be thought of an officer who in action had some important post to defend, if he were to leave his men in order to attempt some brilliant or dashing individual feat of arms ! Ten to one the loss of his commission would be the result, however successful the achievement. So in polo. Every member of a team should *play for his side, not for his own personal glory*, and this fact cannot be too strongly impressed on young players, most of whom are apt to be led away by the temptation of making some brilliant stroke or exhibiting some dashing bit of play. It should therefore be borne in mind that a team cannot be considered really first-class till they have learnt to play together and into each other's hands, and abandoned all ideas of playing a selfish game. Such a team, though possibly individually inferior, will nearly invariably defeat one that, though intrinsically superior, plays a selfish game.

Taking the players in the reverse order of their numbers, and because No. 4 is generally the captain of the side, we will begin with him.

No. 4, or the 'back' player of a polo team, is the one on whom the greatest responsibility depends, for he will have not only to be the eyes, ears, and brains of his side, but their reserve as well. His duty is to defend his goal, and to do this he should always be between it and the ball, at the same time staying as close to play as he can conveniently trust himself and his pony. This will enable him to direct and control his

A GOAL—'WHOO-WHOOP!'

side. Much will depend on his quickness and decision, and knowing where to place the ball at a critical moment, as, for instance, hitting a back-hander to the side farthest from his goal when the ball is in dangerous proximity to it. He should be a man of nerve, decision, and judgement, quick to note an opportunity of turning defence into attack, and equally quick in carrying out his plan. Until lately it was a recognised rule that the 'back' should never start upon a run except under extraordinary circumstances; now, however, a 'back' sometimes does this, but in the event of his doing so his 'half back,' or No. 3, ought immediately to drop back and take his place temporarily. The circumstances, however, under which No. 4 will be called on to go far to the front are, as a rule, few and far between, and he will generally occupy the defensive position, at the same time directing operations much as the coxswain of a boat does. One great aim of a 'back' (who need not necessarily be a heavy man, as some suppose he ought to be) should be to bother his hostile No. 1 by putting him 'off side' as much as possible; he should be thoroughly well mounted, a clean and hard hitter, thoroughly competent, and should never ride to meet the ball when the enemy are attacking in force, for were he to miss it the consequence might be serious for his side. He should defend his goal principally with back-handed strokes and be keenly alive to the fact that he, and he alone, is the responsible guardian of the goal.

No. 3, or 'half back,' has a difficult task to perform, an onerous position, yet, if he understands it thoroughly, a very pleasant one. His chief duties consist in helping his 'back,' to the utmost of his power, in keeping his opponents off him, and assisting him in taking a ball away from dangerous proximity to his goal, besides, as before said, dropping back and assuming No. 4's place should the latter start on a run; often, too, he must, when not wanted by his own No. 4, go up to help his No. 1 and No. 2, and so get an attack of three men against the opposing two, Nos. 1 and 2. He will, in fact, have to make himself generally useful, and to do this must naturally have his

wits about him, and note every turn and phase of the game He should be a good hitter of back-handers, and not only be able to hit hard, but with judgment and direction, so as to place the ball favourably for his No. 2 to take on.

No. 2 has perhaps the easiest place in the game, and should give and take with No. 1. He will be, so to speak, the light cavalry, a sort of free lance, constantly engaged in attack. He should, of course, hit the ball as often and as straight as he can towards the enemy's goal; in fact, all his energies should be concentrated on one point, viz. the capturing of the enemy's goal, varied by worrying them and endeavouring to foil their attack. It is the position *par excellence* in a game which offers most opportunities for quick and fast play, and embarking in all the mad excitement of a run, and, given a good pony—one that can gallop and stay—certainly the most enviable position for a player filled with the fire and vigour of youth.

No. 2 should not only be a hard and sure hitter, but be endowed with judgment, dash, and discretion, quick to note an opportunity of cutting in and getting possession of the ball. Needless to say he should be mounted on a fast and handy pony. He should always ride hard and remember that the enemy's No. 3 is his special opponent, and be ready to take on the ball when hit out from behind his own goal.

The post of No. 1 is somewhat arduous and calls for the exercise of great self-denial at times, if he is to play his proper part in the game. His main duties consist in looking after the 'back' of the opposite side. He should never leave him, but should hustle him off the ball on every occasion and devote the whole of his energies to doing this and keeping 'on side' himself; in fact, during every minute of play he should use his head and his skill, altering his pace to suit the exigencies of the game, timing his rush, and judging on which side of his opponent he shall either attack or defend. No. 1 must not expect to hit the ball as often as other members of the team, but a good man in this position, provided he is as well- or better-mounted than the opposing 'back,' will often find the

opportunity of indulging in a run by passing the 'back,' or turning quicker than he does, and so getting first to the ball. He should, however, go in more for riding than hitting, and if he plays his part properly will render invaluable aid to his side and keep the field clear for his No. 2. He should be Argus-eyed, and be able to watch the opposing 'back' and the ball at the same moment. His greatest difficulty, however, will be to

With a lead of them all.

keep 'on side,' particularly if the enemy's 'back' is a veteran at the game, and up to all sorts of dodges for putting him 'off side.' Should No. 1 find himself 'off side,' he should be most careful not to foul, for should he do so, the penalty might lose his side the game.

Lastly, we come to the umpires, men who not only occupy a very necessary but a very responsible position in the game.

Each side should have its umpire, whose decision *ought* to be considered final. In important matches, however, a referee is sometimes appointed, and from his fiat there is no appeal. The umpire should be a man thoroughly acquainted with all the details and intricacies of the game; he should be well mounted and have not only a quick eye and keen observation, but know the proper distance to keep from the game, a distance that will enable him to note any cases of 'off side' or 'foul' without getting in the way of the players. Needless to say his task is by no means devoid of difficulties, and he, like umpires in other games, seldom gives satisfaction to both sides.

The general duties and positions of the various members of a team and the umpires having now been broadly defined, let us pass on to the question of how a polo match should be played. Choice of goals having been tossed for, the two sides range up, facing each other, in opposing lines: No. 1 facing the No. 1 of the enemy; No. 2 and No. 3 the same; and the respective 'backs' slightly behind, with their ponies half turned, one and all expecting to get the first smack at the ball. The time-keeper then steps out into mid-ground and throws the ball between the opposing teams.[1] Directly the ball is hit towards one goal or the other, it turns the side towards which it travels into the defending side. The attacking side should now use every legitimate means to drive the ball between their opponents' goal posts; and to do this all rapidity of motion, combined with strategy, is necessary, whereas on the part of the defenders every effort should be concentrated not only on the defence of their goal, but on turning the defence into attack without delay. And here it is that a good 'back' will have the opportunity of exhibiting his powers of generalship. Hitting a hard back-hander through to his 'forwards,' he should get it away from the front of his own goal, and sending it out into mid-ground, he should hurl his forces at the enemy and

[1] In India the ball is placed in the centre of the ground, and two 'forward' players cross sticks over it and then begin.

break through their defence. Much will naturally depend on how the ball is placed, for that is half the battle. It will not be sufficient merely to strike the ball—most men can do that—but it is the *direction* in which it is struck that is the important factor; for if a player strikes the ball in such a direction that it can be reached by one of his own side before one of his opponents can touch it, he will have scored a point towards success

Putting plenty of powder into a stroke. 'Vires acquirit eundo.'

This requires nicety of play, far more in the galloping game now in vogue than some years ago, when 'dribbling' was more common, though there are even now occasions when a dribble of a few yards to dodge an enemy can be used advantageously. At the same time, dribbling should be avoided as much as possible, for it is useless endeavouring to do this in a really hard galloping game. The ball hops too much to enable a player to make anything like a certainty of achieving his object when

the pace he is going at is taken into consideration, and even if this were not the case, his antagonists would scarcely allow him to do so for even a short distance without riding him off the ball, or crooking his stick before he could do much good.

One great maxim to be adhered to is to hit hard. Of course in making a circle and taking the ball round, i.e. away from the front of the goal, short shots must occasionally be made; but once embarked on a run and on the direct road for the adversaries' goal, the hitting should be as hard and as straight as possible.

Beginners must not think that they will be able to hit hard and accurately without a great deal of practice, and they should practise every stroke at every sort of pace for at least an hour or two a day. To achieve success in any game constant practice is necessary, nor need a man be disheartened if he fails for a time. This is the secret of success, and unless a man can make up his mind to perfect himself by constantly practising alone he will never develop into a first-rate player.

To resume. It is advisable to hit as much as possible on the natural side of the pony, viz. on the 'off side,' and only to play on the 'near side' to straighten the direction of the ball or to avoid an adversary who is bent on riding you off. Hitting the ball on the near side is one of the hardest strokes in the game, and, however well it is done, should not be attempted except in cases of absolute necessity, as such strokes almost invariably lack not only the force, but the precision and direction of the natural stroke.

The next essential point to be attended to by those who wish success to smile on their efforts, and one hardly less important than hard hitting, is to gallop. To paraphrase the saying of Napoleon's great general, '*De l'audace, de l'audace et toujours de l'audace*,' we might rightly say, '*Le galop, le galop et toujours le galop*.' Gallop till the last moment. By doing so you not only bewilder your opponents, but you exhaust them. Many players will only canter beside an adversary, and look at him whilst he is hitting the ball, making no real effort to prevent him even when they might easily do so and the stroke is

'ARCADES AMBO'—'RIDE HIM OFF'

one of vital importance. They seem to think that their adversary *may* miss the ball, or, Mr. Micawber-like, that 'something will turn up' to produce the effect that they themselves should be instrumental in bringing about. Naturally such indecision and lack of dash are fatal.

'Riding out' is also another important point, and here No. 1 will have a great field for the display of such talents as he may possess. 'Riding out' consists in getting your pony in such a position that you force your adversary to abandon the favourable position he holds for striking the ball, or it may apply to keeping an opponent in such a position that he is unable to foil his adversary or assist one of his own side. Hustling or pushing an adversary is, of course, permissible, and a man may push with his arm, but must not use it *below* the elbow. In no case is pushing with the extended arm and hand allowable.

Many men will delay having a shot at the enemy's goal owing to the distance the ball is from it. This, however, should not be a deterrent, for it should be remembered that it will take the ball near the goal, even if it does not go through the goal posts. Hit hard, therefore, and try for a goal directly you are within possible range, and do not wait till the ball is nearer and in a better line for the goal posts. The chances are that the easier stroke will never come off, and it is astonishing at what a distance a goal can be hit. An instance of this is perhaps worth recording here. It occurred at Hurlingham, during the season of 1889, in a match between the Elvaston and Houghton Clubs. Mr. James Peat, who was playing for the latter, got hold of the ball some fifty yards below the Pavilion, and between it and the 'stables' goal, and some two hundred and fifteen yards from the 'Chesnuts' goal, which was his opponents' stronghold. With one tremendous drive he sent the ball up the ground, not straight for the goal, but rather parallel with the boundary boards. Following it up, he hit again; and though the angle, one of about thirty-three degrees, and the distance, a hundred yards or more, seemed to preclude all chances of success, yet such was the precision with

which the ball was cut, so to speak, that it rolled slowly between the goal posts. It was in very truth a marvellous stroke, but shows what can be done, and that a shot should be taken at a goal, however long it may be.

When the ball has been hit behind the goal line, the player hitting off, who is generally the captain or No. 4 (back), should endeavour to hit the ball as much as possible to one side of the ground, and not in front of his goal. Then, if he makes a poor shot, or the ball is stopped by an adversary, it will not be in such a dangerous position as if it were in front of his goal. Of course, instances will arise when one side hits behind their own goal in self-defence if sorely pressed. Formerly there used to be no penalty for doing this, and the side hitting off were allowed to have their forward players in front of the ball. Now, however, if one side hits behind their own goal, whether accidentally or in self-defence, the whole side has to keep behind the goal line until the ball is hit off, the attacking side being free to place themselves as they choose. (*Vide* Rule XI.) Hitting behind your own goal ought, therefore, to be avoided as much as possible, for the penalty attached to doing so no doubt gives a decided advantage to the side enforcing it.

Finally, it is as well to remark that from the beginning of the game a spirit of calmness and silence should pervade every member of a team. There should be no unnecessary shouting or noise, otherwise any commands the captain may have to give may be unheard at a critical moment; and, above all, every member of a team should not only be acquainted with the duties appertaining to his individual position in the game, but stick to them and his place at all hazards.

Those who have studied the question at all and seen much polo will, I think, admit that it is perhaps the most scientific outdoor game played, being, as it is, not only one of skill both in horsemanship and the use of the stick, but of strategy and discipline. Like whist, it is a combination of forces to effect an end, as opposed to each individual acting separately on his own account. In most other games a man is dependent on

himself alone, none of his side can aid him very materially; but in polo the most dashing run, the hardest hitting, the most brilliant play avails but little if not backed up. It is this combination that constitutes scientific or organised play. The problem, therefore, that every would-be player has to solve is to learn and practise thoroughly the duties appertaining to every place in the game, and of course he must previously have

Missed.

learnt to ride well and to hit the ball when he is going fast. It is comparatively easy to make sure of striking the ball when going slowly, but this is of little use in a game. It is the accuracy of aim when going fast that tells, and this should constantly be practised. Before a match begins you will constantly see even the very best players doing this—knocking the ball about and getting their 'eye in.'

There are four axioms which every player should learn and apply :—[1]

[1] 'An Old Hand,' in *Hayes' Sporting News.*

1. Never hang back on the chance of your adversary missing the ball.

2. Always keep your proper place in the game.

3. Trust every member of the team in which you are playing to do his own work.

4. Whenever you see that one of your own side will get possession of the ball, turn your pony's head in the direction in which the ball will be hit before it is struck.

Let the budding player attend to these simple rules, and, even though he may not be a very brilliant horseman or a slashing hitter, his services will be more valued than if he combined both these qualities with a disregard for the rules of the game. Discipline and cohesion have before now won great battles, and many a game at polo has been won by a team that observed these rules against one better mounted, and with more brilliant individual players, who disregarded them.

I do not think I can conclude this chapter move fitly than by quoting an extract from a capital article in 'Hayes' Sporting News,' signed 'An Old Hand,' whose identity all Indian players will be able to establish. The author, after pointing out the duties of the various players (Nos. 1, 2, &c.), says :—

I will add here one or two points that apply to all players :

1. They should always go as fast as they can when they are riding towards the adversary's goal, even at the risk of missing the ball because it is moving. By hanging a little they may make certain of hitting the ball once—though, if they have smart adversaries, they are more likely to lose it—but doing so allows all the opposite side to get round and back, and cramps up their own side. Waiting for the ball to settle is one of the commonest faults seen in an ordinary game ; but it is a fatal mistake against good adversaries. A player thinks he has got a ball easily, but before he knows where he is one of the adversaries is upon him, and he finds he never gets to the ball at all. It is a very common thing to notice that a player from whom a good deal is expected turns out to be of very little use in a match. The reason is that he is one who is in the habit of dwelling to get his ball settled, and cannot, or will not, give it up. Another common observation is that all the players

seem to be playing a good deal below their usual form. The reason is that they, too, have been in this habit, and, though they give it up in the match, and ride their best, they can no longer hit the ball in the same way that they did when they took it easy. A man who always rides hard, even if he is not a good hitter, is of more use than a good hitter who does not ride.

2. Another point that should be attended to is that the next player should always closely back up one of his side that is on the ball—not so close that he cannot hit the ball if it is missed or ridden off, but bar that as close as is possible—and in any case he should not let one of the adversaries get next the striker.

It will be seen therefore that polo is not the wild hurly-burly that it may at first sight appear to an onlooker unacquainted with the rules that govern the game. It will be acknowledged even by those who stigmatise it as dangerous to be a scientific sport, requiring not only a cool head, quick eye, perseverance, self-denial, dash, faith in one's comrades, and nerve, but judgment, decision, and good horsemanship. It will besides be evident that the power of calculating pace and distance are two most important and requisite qualifications in the man who would shine as a polo player. The knowledge when to race, when to take it quietly; quickness in turning; the period when defence should be turned into attack—in fact, all the strategy and tactics of the game should not only be comprehended, but resolved on and executed promptly and with decision. When a man can do all this, and strictly adhere to his own place in a team, then he will indeed be entitled to high fame in the annals of polo.

My task is finished. It has been to me a task of no ordinary pleasure to trace, though but briefly, the history of this fascinating game from remote ages to the present time; nor have I experienced less gratification in endeavouring to do some justice to those who have made polo what it is; and, though the subject may not lend itself to treatment like the wider ones of hunting, racing, or driving, and my narrative has perforce been somewhat devoid of anecdote, owing to the comparatively short time that the game has been in existence, yet all those who now

participate in it, and even those who have played but can do so no longer—the past, the present, the future players of the game—all will, I feel assured, unite in voting polo a 'pastime for princes,' and concur with the sentiments expressed in these rattling lines that appeared in the July number of 'Fores's Sporting Sketches,' 1889, signed 'C. G.'—

But the ring of the ball and the cheery call
Of a pal in the thickest row,
With a bamboo stick and a pony quick,
Are better than all, I vow.

Remounts.

APPENDIX

APPENDIX

LESSONS IN RIDING

By Robert Weir

LESSON I

In the first place a steady, quiet, easy-paced horse should be provided. The great object at first is to give the pupil confidence, and to get him to understand that he has nothing to fear. The less you talk to him while he is at work the better, but frequently halt him, and if he has lost the position in which you wish him to ride, place him in it again, and explain to him by what means he will best retain it; always taking care not to keep him going too long at a time, so as to overtax his strength. As the course of instruction is to be a short one, it is proposed to begin on a saddle with stirrups.

The horse should be led into the riding school with a plain snaffle bridle and saddle on, and the pupil be made acquainted with the fitting of them.

The next thing is to mount. As a great many accidents occur through ignorance of the proper way of mounting and dismounting, or through carelessness in doing so, it is essential that he should be taught this thoroughly. The man should stand on the near side of the horse, facing him, with the right foot opposite the stirrup and the left in line with the horse's fore feet. He should then take the end of the reins in the

right hand and place the little finger of the left hand between them, the left hand being about twelve inches from the saddle, on the horse's neck. He should next draw the reins through the left hand and shorten them so as to feel the horse's mouth lightly and evenly; then drop the end of the reins out of the right hand to the off side, and with the right hand take a lock of the mane, bring it through the full of the left hand, and twist it round the thumb, the fingers of the left hand closing firmly on the mane and reins. He is next to take hold of the stirrup with the right hand, raise the left foot and place it in the stirrup as far as the ball of the foot; the knee is to be in the middle of the flap of the saddle; the right hand is now to be placed on the cantle of the saddle. Care should be taken that the left heel is drawn back so as to keep the toe away from the horse's side.

This is the position of 'Prepare to mount.' In 'Mounting' the man should be taught to spring from the right instep (not to drag himself up by his hands), bringing both heels together, the body upright and slightly leaning over the saddle, both knees firm against the flap of the saddle. The right leg should now be passed clear over the horse's quarters to the off side, and the right hand moved at the same time from the cantle to the pommel of the saddle to support the body. The knee should be closed to the saddle first, and in passing the right leg over the horse's croup the toe should be down. He should next be shown how to take a rein in each hand, and be placed in the saddle. In taking the reins they should be through the full of the hand and over the fore-finger, with the thumb closed firmly on the top, and the little finger should be outside the rein.

He must now be instructed that he is to sit in the *middle* of the saddle, with the body upright but easy; the head raised and the weight of the upper part of the body over the hips; the shoulders square and thrown back; the small part of the back slightly bent forward; the elbows under the shoulders, and to touch the hips lightly. The hands should be in front of the elbows, which will bring them about six inches apart, and the

wrist very slightly rounded outwards, the little finger about as high as the elbow and under the hand, the thumb on the top and close on the rein. The flat side of the thigh and inside of the knee should be placed to the saddle, but not *screwed* round so as to take all the power out of the leg. (A great deal here depends on the shape of the leg. A man with a round thigh and large knee finds it more difficult to do this than one with a thin flat thigh and small knee, and allowance must be made accordingly.) The lower part of the legs should be close to the sides of the horse, and the heels down.

The stirrup may now be fitted, and in doing this the bar of the stirrup should reach about three inches above the upper edge of the heel of the boot; the feet are then to be placed in the stirrups as far as the ball of the foot, care being taken in doing this not to get the knees forced too much up. The pupil may now be walked round the school a few times, the instructor walking round with him but a little way off, halting him occasionally, and making such correction as may be necessary. It should be explained to him that to make his horse go forward he is to close the calves of the legs gently and yield the hand by turning the little fingers towards the horse's ears; and to halt, to turn the little fingers upwards towards the centre of the body, feeling the horse's mouth lightly and evenly until he halts, when he is to yield the hand. About ten minutes of this should be enough for the first lesson, and he should now be turned into the centre of the school and instructed how to 'dismount.'

The motions are very similar in dismounting to those in mounting. In 'preparing to dismount' the right hand takes hold of the reins above the left, and the right foot is taken out of the stirrup, the left hand then slides forward on the reins, which are still held in the right hand about twelve inches from the saddle; then drop the spare part of the reins out of the right hand to the off side, take the lock of the mane as in preparing to mount, and place the right hand on the pommel of the saddle. In doing this the body should be kept upright. In 'dismounting,' the body is to be supported by the right

hand and left foot, and the right leg brought clear over the horse's croup to the near side ; heels close, right hand on the cantle of the saddle as in mounting. (It should be explained to the pupil that a pause is always to be made here both in mounting and dismounting ; in case the horse is not steady or anything wrong, he can from this position come down or not as may be best.) The body is now to be lowered till the right foot is on the ground. Then, keeping the hands in the same position, take the left foot out of the stirrup and place it in line with the horse's fore feet. The pupil is then to quit his hold with both hands and turn to his left, as he turns taking hold of the rein about six inches from the ring of the snaffle and raising the horse's head. This will be sufficient for the first lesson, and should have occupied from half an hour to forty minutes.

LESSON II

The second lesson must be begun exactly in the same way as the first, as it is not to be supposed that the pupil will remember all that he has been told in the previous one. The mounting motions must be performed correctly, and the pupil placed in the saddle as before directed. The instructor should walk round the school with him, halting him now and again, and pointing out faults, and if the pupil be tolerably confident he may be encouraged to trot very steadily a few times from one end of the school to the other. He will be sure to roll about a little at first, but too much must not be expected. It is quite sufficient that he should sit on the horse's back, get used to the motion, and try to go with the horse without stiffness.

When sitting at ease he may be allowed to take his feet out of the stirrups and stretch his limbs well down, taking the stirrups and being correctly placed again before moving off. When he has been mounted about half an hour he should be turned into the centre of the school and dismounted. If he is not tired, and eager to do more, he may be mounted and dismounted again *once* and then dismissed.

LESSON III

Begin again at the beginning. The pupil may be a little stiff after his lesson of yesterday, but this will soon wear off. The same lesson should be continued, and he should (if able) be made to trot once or twice round the school without stopping, it being explained to him that by leaning his body a little *in*wards, that is to say *away* from the side of the school, especially at the corners, it will help him to keep his balance. He must not be allowed to hold on by the horse's mouth or to cling by the calf of the leg, but must try to keep his balance and to grip by the knee and thigh. If he holds on too low down, he will loosen the grip of the knee and thigh, the knee will work up, and the body will be top-heavy. His feet will be constantly working home in the stirrups; in fact, as fast as he gets right in one place he will get wrong in another. The best thing to do is not to let him trot too long: about twice round the school is plenty; then let him sit at ease, point out to him how he got wrong, and start him again. It should be explained that the feet must be kept in the stirrups by an easy play of the ankle and instep, and not by standing on them, and that the weight of the body should be on the saddle and not on the stirrups. Half an hour will be long enough for him to be mounted.

LESSON IV

Mounting and position as before. The instructor must pay great attention to the position of the body, hands, and legs. The pupil should now be able at a walk to correct any fault he may be told of, without being halted. While trotting, keep working for ease and try to get the whole body in unison with the movements of the horse.

The instructor will have to be very careful hereabouts, and in the few succeeding lessons not to disgust his pupil, who will want all the encouragement he can give. There is nothing

more disheartening than to keep on finding out that a thing which looks so easy when one sees a good rider doing it comes so difficult to oneself; but a little patience and lots of encouragement will get over these difficulties. The pupil should be kept at a very steady pace, in fact barely out of a walk, and frequently changed from one rein on to the other by the *incline*, but as yet always making the change at a walk: for this reason, that while he is going round the school at a trot to the right he is leaning a little to the right, and if he makes the change at a trot, before he has time to get his balance to the left, he comes to the corner and, as likely as not, tumbles into it. While walking he may take his feet out of the stirrups, and cross them over the horse's neck, taking them again before he begins to trot.

LESSON V

The pupil should now be pretty well acquainted with the motions in mounting and dismounting, and should be required on the command 'Prepare to mount,' to go through all the motions correctly, and the same in mounting, care being taken that he makes a pause with the body upright before passing the right leg over, and that the right hand on the pommel of the saddle receives the weight of the body as it comes into it. He should now be getting a little steadier in his seat at a trot, and able to keep going a little longer without becoming distressed. He may also be shown how to make a turn at a walk, it being explained that in turning to the right it is not sufficient to feel the right rein only, but that he should retain a steady feeling of the left also, and that both legs should be closed, the left leg the more strongly, so that the hind quarters are not thrown out; on arriving at the opposite side of the school he again turns to the same hand. The pace at a trot should still be steady and regular, and the same attention paid to the position of the body, hands, and legs. The pupil should also try to ride his horse nearly into the corners of the school by feeling the rein nearest the side and closing the opposite leg,

beginning to do so in good time, say about two horse's lengths before he comes to the corner.

LESSON VI

If the progress has been satisfactory, the pace during this lesson may be increased, though not hurried, and the incline tried at a trot. The pupil may also, while riding without stirrups, be encouraged to trot once or twice round the school without them, of course going back to the slow trot while this part of the lesson lasts. He must not be allowed to hold on by the horse's mouth, but trust to his balance and the grip of the knee and thigh, getting his thigh well down into the saddle, but without leaning forward, keeping the body supple and the hands steady. A little of this goes a long way; about twice round will be enough at first; then sit at ease and take the stirrups again, and before the end of the lesson put the stirrups up again, and try a couple or three times round without them on the other rein. The lesson should now last about an hour, but it must be left to the discretion of the instructor to make it a little shorter if the pupil is not strong or if he is fatigued.

LESSON VII

Continue, as in the previous lessons, to work for steadiness, about a quarter of an hour in the middle of the lesson being without stirrups; as the seat gets steadier the pupil will not grow tired so soon, and may trot a little longer at a time without them. It will very likely be found that, after riding without stirrups, on taking them again they will be too short and may want letting down a hole, but care must be exercised at the same time not to get them too long; or else the body will go too much forward and he will get off his seat on to his fork. Particular attention must still be paid to the position of the body, hands, and legs; also to keeping the feet properly placed in the stirrups, and to regularity of pace.

The pupil should also still be practised in making a few turns

each lesson at a walk, care being taken that the horse is not pulled round by the feeling of the inward rein only, but supported by the outward rein as well, and that both legs are kept closed, the outward the stronger. In speaking of outward or inward leg or rein, the pupil should be made to understand that the hand to which he turns is the inward hand.

LESSON VIII

The same as before, still working to get the rider and horse in unison with each other. As the pupil gets on, and finds himself able to sit on the horse's back without much trouble to himself, he must not be allowed to take it too easy, but be kept more up to his work as he gets firmer and stronger in his seat. A little more may be asked of him each lesson, but still the instructor must be careful not to ask so much as to make him over-tired. He should now be able to keep his position fairly well at a steady trot, and the feet properly placed in the stirrups. The pace should now and again be increased at a trot and slackened again, and a little more be asked from him when riding without stirrups. He should also be taught to 'rein back,' it being explained to him that in doing so he is not to keep a dead pull on his horse's mouth and allow him to run back, but that he is to take a step to the rear at a time, by an alternate feeling of the reins and closing of the legs, the horse halting at each step; also, that the reins are to be felt and the legs closed evenly, so that he reins back on a straight line.

LESSON IX

It would be advisable that by the time this lesson is reached the horse should be changed. It is not at all desirable that the pupil should be put on to a rough horse; on the contrary, the new mount should be as quiet and easy as the one he has been on all along, and the pupil should be assured of this; but as no two horses go exactly alike, it is as well that he should feel

the motion of another. He may be a little nervous at first, but when he finds that the horse is quiet he will soon be as confident as on the other. If he is not quite at home, it would be as well not to take his stirrups away the first day; otherwise the lesson should be continued as before. It is very good practice, where a few beginners are riding together, to change their horses once or twice during a lesson, as it not only gives them the practice on different horses, but each one tries to ride his neighbour's horse better than it was ridden before.

It will also be found that the seat is different on some horses than others. Horses with a round barrel and low in front have a tendency to work the seat and legs more forward than those with flat sides and good shoulders; but it is necessary that the pupils should feel the difference.

LESSON X

The change of horses should be continued, and the same lesson gone on with. The turns may now be made at a trot, and in doing so care is to be taken that the same pace is kept as in going round the school; also when crossing the school the horse must not be allowed to hurry or incline, but is to be ridden straight across at the same pace, and on arriving at the opposite side, another square turn must be made to the same hand as he turned before. The pupil should also when walking be taught to circle. On the command 'Circle right' or 'left' he should describe a half-circle by feeling the inward rein and closing the outward leg so as to arrive at the centre of the school, then advance on a straight line about two horse's lengths down the middle of the school, and describe another half-circle to the side. The horse's head should be bent a little to the hand to which he circles, and the hind feet should go over exactly the same ground as the fore feet. About a quarter of the lesson may still be without stirrups, but the instructor must use his discretion, especially with the change of horses, as to pace, &c. The principal object in making the pupil ride without stirrups is to

get him down into the saddle and keep him there. The lesson should still last about an hour.

LESSON XI

The turns at a trot should be continued, the pupil being now and again halted while crossing the house to see that he is going straight. Horses soon get cunning at this sort of work, and cut their ground off by inclining to the hand to which they turn, but they must not be allowed to do so. It is good practice after halting when crossing the house to rein back a few steps before going forward, care being taken that the horse reins back on a straight line and that the hands yield after every step. The turn should not be made at the same place every time, nor every time he goes round the house. If it were so the horse would get accustomed to it, anticipate the rider and make the turn himself, which would not do the pupil much good. Particular attention must be paid to the seat and position, as the rider may, while having his thoughts fixed on turning his horse properly, lose his position if not looked to. He should lean his body a little inwards as he turns, but otherwise no alteration of seat should be allowed.

LESSON XII

The circles as well as the turns may now be tried at a trot, halting now and again in the circle as in the turn, correcting anything that may be wrong and explaining how to avoid it. It will generally be found that horses which are accustomed to this sort of work are inclined to leave the middle of the school too soon. This should not be allowed, the inward leg being closed strongly to prevent it. The same steady, even pace should be kept in the circle as in going round the school. It is not to be supposed that every pupil will be far enough advanced at the twelfth lesson to do this, but a young active fellow, with plenty of confidence and anxious to learn to ride, should on an easy horse be able to do so. It

must, however, be left to the discretion of the instructor, and if his pupil's seat is not steady enough (and if it is not he cannot be expected to use his hands) he must be kept at straightforward work till the seat improves. In all turns and circles the hands are to be kept down, and the motion is to be made from the wrist and not from the elbow or shoulder, the elbow being kept close to the side but without stiffness.

LESSON XIII

The turns and circles at a trot should be continued at a steady pace, and if they are fairly well made and the seat and hands tolerably steady, the pupil may towards the end of the lesson he tried a few steps at a canter. In beginning to canter it will be found to come easier to the rider to put him on a large circle, taking nearly half the school, and begin the canter from a trot; after he has trotted a few times steadily round the circle, the pace should be a little increased, and the word given to canter just as the horse is coming to the side of the school after crossing the centre. He is then pretty sure to strike off correctly, that is to say, leading with the off fore leg followed by the off hind if going round to the right, and with the near fore followed by the near hind if to the left. It should be explained to the pupil that in striking his horse off at a canter, the forehand should be raised by a light feeling of both reins, that the haunches should be kept under him by a pressure of both legs, but that the inward rein should be felt, and the outward leg closed the stronger, so that the horse strikes off true and united. Of course in beginning this part of the lesson the pupil should be on a very steady horse that knows his work and does not require much riding to make him do what is wanted of him. He must not be allowed to hurry. If the horse is increasing his pace too much, it will be best to bring him to a trot and walk at once. The pupil must be instructed to sit well down on his seat, and not to bear too much weight on the stirrups, as if he does the body will go too much forward, and the

balance will be lost. A few times round the circle is sufficient at first, and if he has managed to keep fairly well down on his seat he will have done all that should be expected of him. It is a great help to lean the body a little inside the circle during this lesson. After sitting at ease a short time he may try a few times round to the other hand. In coming from a canter to a trot the reins should be felt so as to bring the horse nearly to a walk, then yield the hand and sit quite still, and in most cases the horse will settle down to a steady trot ; but if the seat is not steady the hands are sure not to be, and in that case the sooner he walks and halts the better, care being taken not to pull the horse up roughly or suddenly, which will only make him unsteady and of course more difficult to sit on.

In speaking of cantering true and united, it should be explained that when cantering to the right the horse is true and united if leading with both off legs, if to the left if leading with both near legs ; he is disunited if leading with the off fore followed by the near hind, or if leading with the near fore followed by the off hind. It of course takes time to find out all this, but as soon as the rider is able to sit steadily on his horse's back at a canter he will be able to feel whether his horse is true or otherwise, and if he is false or disunited the best way is to pull him up quietly and apply his aids again.

LESSON XIV

It would be as well to allow the pupil to ride the same horse again during the time he is cantering. In the first part of the lesson he should still ride a short time without stirrups, and continue the turns and circles at a walk and trot, also reining back a few steps now and again ; and towards the end of the lesson he should again be put on the circle for cantering in the same manner as yesterday. In the first few lessons in cantering, it will in most cases be found that the pupil will be inclined to get his hands too high. This must not be allowed, as by raising the hands the reins are shortened and he holds on to

the horse's mouth instead of keeping his seat by the grip of the knee and thigh and the balance of the body. He will soon get into the way of keeping his seat at this pace. The main thing is not to keep him at a canter too long at a time, but frequently sit at ease for a few minutes, and then try a few steps more.

LESSON XV

The cantering part of the lesson should now be begun a little earlier, the object being to give the pupil a little more of it and to vary the lesson. About twenty minutes' work at a walk and trot should be gone through, getting the rider to use his snaffle and legs to collect his horse and then begin the canter. If he has done fairly well on the circle order him to 'go large' round the house, giving the word soon enough so that he may have time to prepare himself for it. He should be told beforehand what to do, otherwise the horse will get halfway across the school, on the circle, and the rider will grow confused and upset his horse. On the command 'Go large' (which, as before stated, should be given in good time), the rider should begin to feel the outward rein a little stronger, and work his horse up a little more with the legs, and before coming to the part of the school where the horse leaves the side to come across the centre, close the inward leg and feel the outward rein strongly enough to keep him going on by the side at the same pace. After about once round the school, 'Trot' should be ordered, and if the rider is steady, the pace may be increased by the word 'Trot out,' then 'Trot short,' 'Walk,' 'Halt,' and 'Sit at ease.' After cantering, the pace of the horse at a trot feels rougher than at any other time; great attention should therefore be paid to the steadiness of seat and hands at this part of the lesson.

LESSON XVI

If the previous lessons have been fairly well done, the pupil may now be taught when at a trot to rise in his stirrups, but a

short time should be devoted first to going through what he has been working at all along. The general mistake in beginning to rise in the stirrups is that the rider works too hard and continues bobbing up and down without getting the time, taking a great deal out of himself and his horse and doing no good. He should be instructed to begin to rise down the long side of the school only, and sit still again round the short end of it. As the corners are at first almost sure to put him out of time, he should count the time to himself, '1—2,' '1—2,' '1—2,' and so on; '1' being to raise the body from the saddle by bearing a little more weight on the stirrup and inclining the body a little forward, '2,' to lower the body quietly into the saddle again. In rising, the seat should just clear the saddle, but the body must be kept long enough up to, as it were, rise with one step and sit down with the next (although the horse really takes a step between). If he loses the time, which he is pretty sure to do at first, it is no use to keep on working the body up and down to try and recover it, but sit still for a few steps and then try again. It is found advisable with some pupils in beginning this lesson to shorten their stirrups a hole for the time, and with others to take a lock of mane in the right hand, first putting both reins into the left hand, of course resuming the proper position as soon as they got into the way of it a little. Care must also here be taken that the lower part of the legs are kept steady. Nothing looks worse than to see a man kicking his horse under the jaw with his toe and in the flank with the heel every time he rises on the stirrup; besides, as long as the legs are swinging backwards and forwards the seat cannot be very secure.

LESSON XVII

The same as yesterday. If the instructor find he has more to do than he can do well in about an hour, or if the pupil does not get into the way of rising in the stirrups, discretion must be used and some part of the lesson left out, say the quarter of

an hour without stirrups. While rising, it must be particularly noticed that he does not pull himself up by his horse's mouth, as a great many beginners (and also plenty of people who can hardly be called beginners) are very apt to do. Rather, if he must have something to help by his hands, let him start with the mane or front of the saddle, and when he has got the motion and time leave go and try to keep them without. Of course it is to be understood that he is not to be turned or circled during this part of the lesson. He will do very well to go straightforward and keep the time and motion with the pace of the horse.

LESSON XVIII

Persevere with the previous lessons, especially rising in the stirrups. If the pupil can do it fairly well, get him to sit still now and again while the horse is trotting, and while doing so correct the position of the seat if necessary, and then let him rise again without bringing the horse to a walk. Also, after cantering once or twice round the house, give the word 'Trot!' and as soon as the horse settles quietly at a trot, make the pupil rise in the stirrups and then 'walk,' 'halt,' and 'sit at ease,' giving the horse his head. While sitting at ease the time may be profitably used by the instructor in talking to his pupil, telling him what he would have to do under different circumstances, as for instance, that in case his horse rears, he is to give him his head and lean his body forward to avoid pulling him over, or that if he is inclined to kick, he should lean his body back and raise his hands a little so as to keep the horse's head up and attract his attention by moving the snaffle lightly across the bars of the mouth; in fact, he can nearly always find something to tell him, as for instance about awkward positions he himself has been placed in, and how he got out of them. This sort of thing is always interesting to a beginner, and if he remembers it may some day be of service to him after he has taken to riding by himself.

LESSON XIX

Supposing that the pupil has done fairly well all that has yet been asked of him, this is the last lesson that need be given him before putting on the bit; so it would be as well to work up thoroughly all that has been done in the previous lessons, beginning with mounting and dismounting correctly, riding a short time without stirrups, then a few turns and circles at a walk and trot, going on to cantering to both hands, and rising in the stirrup at a trot. He ought also by this time to be able to make the change from one hand to the other at a canter by the incline, and on arriving at the opposite side walk a step or two, and apply the aids already given to canter to the other hand. He may also increase his pace a little at a canter down the long side of the school, taking care to collect the pace again round the short end; otherwise if the horse does not get the necessary support, which the rider will probably not be able to give him, he will very likely come down on his side.

LESSON XX

In beginning with the bit, the first thing is to explain to the pupil the fitting and action of the bit and curb. In fitting the bit, the mouthpiece should be placed one inch above the lower tush in a horse's mouth, and two inches above the corner tooth in a mare's; it may be necessary with some horses to have the bit higher or lower, but this is about the rule. The curb should be placed quite flat and smooth, and should admit two fingers between it and the horse's jaw. It should be explained that the lower the bit is in the horse's mouth the more severe it becomes, so that it is safer for a beginner if it be rather too high than too low.

The pupil should mount on the bridoon in the same manner as on the snaffle, leaving the bit reins loose on the horse's neck, and then he must be instructed how to take up all four reins. There are several ways of doing so, but the following

is preferable: take the centre of both reins in the right hand, the bridoon rein being on the top of the bit; then, place a finger of the left hand between each rein, beginning with the little finger, so that the left bridoon rein is outside the little finger, the next finger being between the bit reins, and the right bridoon rein between the forefinger and middle finger; the whole being brought over the forefinger, and the thumb closed firmly on the top of the reins. Thus the bit reins are the two centre ones, and the bridoon reins on the outside. For the first few lessons, the right bridoon rein should be taken out of the left hand and held in the right, in the same manner as the pupil has been used to hold the snaffle, the bit reins being let out so as not to feel the horse's mouth on them at all. The left hand must now be placed opposite the centre of the body, and the right hand about four inches from it. The position of the left hand must be particularly attended to, as, if the rider gets it in the position he has been used to have it in while riding on the snaffle, he will be pulling the whole time at the right bit rein without knowing it. The pace at a trot during this lesson should be kept very steady, and the pupil should be frequently halted, so as to correct the position of the hands if necessary, and he should be kept at straightforward work without turning.

LESSONS XXI., XXII., AND XXIII

These lessons are principally intended to get the rider to understand the feeling of the bit on the horse's mouth. He should still ride with both hands, in fact, the right hand should always assist the left, and the bridoon rein be used as well as the bit. It is all very well for a soldier, who wants his right hand at liberty to use his weapon, to ride on the bit alone with one hand, but horses' mouths are kept fresher, and, as a rule, they go much more pleasantly if ridden on all four reins. As the pupil gets accustomed to keeping his hands in the proper place and to the feeling of the bit, the reins should be gradually shortened till he feels all four reins evenly, and the

same lesson be practised as when on the snaffle. He will have to be careful that in turning he does not feel the wrong rein, a very common mistake. If he turns to the right, the little finger of the left hand should work towards the right shoulder; if he turns to the left it should work towards the left shoulder. He should also be instructed not to have a dead pull on his horse's mouth at any time, but to ease and feel the reins, and occasionally draw the bridoon lightly across the horse's mouth, at the same time closing the legs to him, so as to take the weight of the horse's head off the hand, if he is inclined to lean on it. Some horses will not bear the slightest feeling of the bit on the bars of the mouth, but these horses are not fit for a beginner to ride; they are behind the hand, and require to be firmly ridden for some time by an experienced rider

LESSONS XXIV. AND XXV

It is now time that the pupil should be taken out of doors, but on the first few occasions it would be well to begin with a short lesson in the school. The instructor should then mount himself on a steady horse and ride with him on the near side. A quiet road should be selected. The pupil may perhaps miss having the four walls of the school round him and be a little nervous, but will very soon get accustomed to his position, and enjoy his ride outside more than in the school. He should be made acquainted with the rule of the road, that is to say, that if he meets another horse or vehicle he keeps to the left-hand side, and that in passing anything that may be in front of him he is to pass it on the right-hand side. If the lessons in the school have given the rider as much control over the horse as they should have done, he will not be much at a loss outside. The pace at a trot should be steady, and he will find it much easier to rise in his stirrups outside the school than in, as it will be all straightforward work and no corners to put him out of it. He should only be allowed to trot where the road is pretty level. After about half an hour in the school and three-quarters out-

side, he should ride his horse home and dismount at the door or at the stable as may be most convenient, and mount him there on the following day, and always in future; but if he mounts or dismounts at the stable the horse's croup should at the time always be turned towards the stable-door. He should also before mounting be required to look round his horse to see that he is properly girthed up, and the bit and curb properly fitted; in fact, to see that his horse is in every way properly turned out.

LESSON XXVI

As it is proposed at the end of this lesson to try a little jumping, the first part of the lesson should be out of doors. The pupil should not now be confined to the roads, but taken to the fields also. A good-sized grass field, where the instructor can ride some distance from, but nearly in line with him, is best. He should be made to trot and canter the same as in the school, the instructor occasionally halting his own horse and making his pupil describe a large circle round him, then going forward again, increasing the pace by degrees and decreasing it, so as to make sure the horse goes at the pace required and does not regulate it for himself. He should be kept out for about an hour and then taken into the school. The reason for beginning the outdoor work first is that the rider will be firmer and more confident at the end of the lesson, and the horse, having had a certain amount of work, steadier than at the beginning of it. The bar should at first be laid on the ground so that the horse can walk over it. The pupil must be instructed to ride entirely on the bridoon reins. After walking over it a few times the bar may be put up into the first hole, which should not be more than eighteen inches from the ground, the horse should be led up to within about three horse's lengths of it, and then let go quietly; but before doing this it is necessary to explain to the rider, and to get him thoroughly to understand, what he is to do. It is no use talking to him while he is on the move with the bar in front of him, for it is ten to one that he is

so intent on holding on that he does not hear a word you say. (Of course he is supposed to be on a horse that knows his work, and will jump quietly and not hurry.) When the horse rises he should lean the body a little forward, but as a general rule beginners are apt to lean too much forward, and as all the spring of the horse comes from the hind quarters, it is most necessary that the body should be inclined backwards as the horse springs forward. He must not be allowed to hold on by the reins, as by so doing he not only punishes the horse and perhaps makes him refuse, but also by feeling the rein as the horse rises he causes him to jump far more awkwardly than he would if allowed his head. The seat should be retained by the knee and thigh, and as far below the knee as the top of the calf of the leg. Nearly every one in learning to jump has a tendency when the horse rises to raise his hands and open his legs, which of course is the very opposite of what he should do; for by raising the hands the reins are shortened, and by opening the legs the horse is allowed to jump from under his rider. The horse should be quietly collected to a steady pace again after jumping, but care must be taken not to check him suddenly or too soon. If the pupil be at all nervous, the best plan before letting him try, and perhaps giving him a fall, is to dismount him and put some one else up so as to let him see exactly what he has to do and how to do it.

LESSON XXVII

Begin again with an hour outside, and then finish up as yesterday with a little practice in leaping. The pupil must be careful not to allow the horse to hurry, but keep a steady pace; a collected canter is the easiest. When once he gets into the way of it, the hands must be kept down, and the thigh and knee closed firmly to the saddle. The body should be supple from the loins; anything in the way of stiffness is to be avoided. The stirrup should be kept under the seat, as by getting the leg too far forward the rider is apt to kick his horse in the shoulder;

also he should guard against putting too much weight on the stirrup; if he does so when the horse springs forward it has a tendency to throw the body forward, and in case of the stirrup-leather breaking he would be pretty sure to get a fall. If he progresses fairly well the bar may be raised to about two feet six, which is as much as should be asked of the young rider.

LESSONS XXVIII. TO XXX

These three lessons should be principally devoted to out-door work and general instruction, and may last from an hour and a half to two hours. The instructor should keep away from his pupil, letting him by degrees out of leading-strings, and taking him into the school each day after the exercise outside for a jump. The instructor should occasionally ride on some distance on the turf and name the pace at which his pupil is to come up to him, and see that he pulls up correctly, keeping his hands down and his legs closed in doing so; he should also instruct him how to open gates, in fact, in a country ride there is always something to be learnt. If in town, it should be impressed upon the pupil that in turning a corner of a street or road, he should never make the turn too short or at a fast pace, especially if he happens to be on stones or wood pavement; also, that if his horse is inclined to shy at anything the greatest mistake he can make is to put his head straight at the object he is afraid of and abuse him for being frightened, but that in most cases if the horse's head be inclined a little away from the cause of his fright he will pass it quietly enough. When the pupil first starts for his ride, he is to see *himself* that his saddle and bridle are well fitted, and the horse well turned out. He must be made to understand that he is to mount correctly, see that everything is as it should be before starting, and then to start his horse off quietly; that if his horse be fresh and inclined to round his back at starting, he should raise his hands a little so as to keep his head up and distract his attention by moving the bridoon across his mouth

lightly ; that he should not unnecessarily canter or gallop his horse on hard ground or up and down hill, and that on returning from his ride he should walk his horse some distance so as not to send him heated to his stable.

It is not to be supposed that these lessons, in the same rotation as they are given, will be applicable to every *beginner.* Some young men are much quicker to learn than others, and some again have much more confidence and are more anxious to get on than others. Nor is it to be supposed that the pupil who has had these few lessons will have become a first-rate horseman. He will, however, or should, have the groundwork of horsemanship, should be able to ride well enough on a tolerably quiet horse to ride for pleasure, and should be able to improve himself from the instruction he has received.

BIBLIOGRAPHY OF RIDING

Circa 1434 Da Arte de domar os Cavallos. By Duarte, Rei de Portugal e do Algarve, e Senhor de Ceuta.

[Preserved in the Bibliothèque Nationale de Paris. Printed 1842, 4to, Paris, under the title: Leal conselheiro, o qual fez Dom Duarte, pela graça de Deos Rei de Portugal . . . a requirimento da muito excellente Rainha Dona Leonor sua mulher; seguido do libro da ensinança de bem cavalgar toda sella.]

1462 Liber Marescalciæ Equorum. By Laurentius Ruffus. MS. 4to, Rome.

[This is probably the original manuscript, and shows by the following colophon that Gordon Russo, or Rusto—the generally accepted name of the author—is wrong: 'Hic ergo explicitur Liber Marescalciæ Equorum compositus per Magistrum Laurentium, dictum Ruphum de Urbe, familiarem et marescalcum Reverendissimi in Christo Patris Domini Napoleonis de Ursinis Sancti Andriani Diaconi Cardinalis. Anno Domini 1462.'

The following are the printed editions:—Liber Marescalciæ, 4to, Rome, 1490. Another edition, 4to, printed at Speyer, about the same date. Another, Hippiatria, sive Marescalia Laur. Rusii . . . in qua præter variorum morborum plurima, ac saluberrima remedia, quadraginta tres commodissimæ frænorum formæ excusæ sunt, ut nullum tam novo oris vitio laborantem equum invenias, cui non hinc occurrere possis. Folio, Paris, 1531. Another edition of the same, by the same printer, but differing from the above, 4to, Paris, 1532; 8vo, Padua, 1818.

Italian editions:—Arte di cognoscere la natura de' caualli, &c. . . . in vulgare, per Fratre Gabriele Bruno. 4to, Venice, 1492; 8vo, Venice, 1554; 4to, Bologna, 1561; 8vo, Venice, 1563; 12mo, Venice, 1559.

French editions:—La Mareschalerie de Laurens Ruse, translatée de Latin en françoys, avec les figures des Mors. Folio, Paris, 1533. Another by the same printer, but different edition and title. Folio, Paris, 1541. Other editions:—4to, Paris, 1558, 1563; 4to, Paris, 1583; 4to, Paris, 1610.]

1565 The fowre chiefyst offices belongyng to Horsemanshippe. That is to saye. The office of the Breeder, of the Rider, of the Keper, and of the Ferrer. In the firste parte whereof is declared the order of breding of horses. In the seconde howe to breake them, and to make theym horses of seruyce. Conteyninge the whole arte of Ridynge lately set forth, and nowe newly corrected and amended of manye faultes escaped in the fyrste printynge, as well touchyng the bittes as otherwyse. Thirdly, howe to dyet them, as well when they reste as when they trauell by the way. Fourthly, to what diseases they be subiect, together with the causes of such diseases, the sygnes howe to knowe them, and finally howe to cure the same. Whyche bookes are not onely paynfully collected out of a number of aucthours, but also orderly dysposed and applyed to the vse of thys our coũtrie. By Thomas Blundevile. 4to, London, 1565–6; 4to, 1580; 4to, 1597; 4to, 1609.

1584 The Art of Riding, set foorthe in a breefe treatise, with a due interpretation of certeine places alledged out of Xenophon and Gryson, verie expert and excellent Horssemen: Wherein also the true use of the hand by the said Grysons rules and precepts is speciallie touched: and how the Author of this present worke hath put the same in practice, also what profit men maie reape thereby: without the knowledge whereof all the residue of the order of Riding is but vaine. Lastlie, is added a short discourse of the Chaine or Canezzan, the Trench, and the Martingale. (By John Astley.) 4to, London.

1585 Schoole of Horsemanship, wherein is discovered what skill and knowledge is required in a good horseman, and also how to reform any restive Horse; briefly touching the knowledge of the Breeder, Sadler, Smith, and the horse-leach, with a strange and rare invention how to make a new Racke, and how to teach a horse to lie upon his belly until the Rider take his Backe. By Christopher Clifford. 4to, London.

1591 De Arte Equestri Germanice. By Joh. Creutsberger. Vienna, 1591. Opera di mescalzia, doue si contiene tutte l'infermità de' caualli, così interiori, come esteriori, et gli segni da cognoscere, et le cure con potioni, et untioni, et sanguigne per essi caualli. By M. Filippo Scaccho da Tagliacosso. 4to, Rome.

1593 A Discovrse of Horsemanshippe. Wherein the breeding and ryding of Horses for seruice, in a breefe manner, is more methodically sette downe then hath been heretofore. With a more easie and direct course for the ignorant, to attaine to the same arte or knowledge. Also the manner to chuse, trayne, ryde and dyet, both Hunting-horses and Running-horses: with all the secretes thereto belonging discovered. An art neuer heretofore written by any Authour. Printed by T. C. for Richard Smith. (By Gervase Markham.) 4to, London.

[Hazlitt, never having seen a copy of this work, suggests that it is Astley's work of 1584 with a new title, on the ground that the running headings of the latter are the same as Markham's title, and the collation is the same. The works, however, are entirely distinct. Moreover, Markham's is printed in black-letter, while Astley's is in roman characters.]

1596 How to chuse, ride, traine and dyet both hunting and running Horses. (By Gervase Markham.) 4to, London, 1596; 4to, London, 1599; 4to, London, 1606.

[Published first in the Discourse of Horsemanshippe. 4to, London, 1593.]

1607 Cavelarie, or the English Horseman. By Gervase Markham. 4to, London.

[Another edition, newly imprinted, corrected and augmented, with many secrets not before known. Divided into eight books with separate titles. The 2nd and 3rd books bear the date 1616, with the title:—Cavelarice, or the English Horseman; Contayning all the Art of Horsemanship, as much as is necessary for any man to vnderstand, whether hee be Horse-breeder, Horse-ryder, Horse-hunter, Horse-runner, Horse-ambler, Horse-farrier, Horse-keeper, Coachman, Smith or Sadler. Together with the discovery of the subtil trade or mystery of Horse-coursers, and an explanation of the excellency of a horse's understanding: or how to teach thē to do trickes like Banke's his Curtall. And that Horses may be made to draw dry-foot like a Hound. Secrets before unpublished, now carefully set downe, for the profit of this whole Nation. By Gervase Markham. 4to. London, 1617.]

1609 The Perfection of Horsemanship, drawn from Nature, Arte, and Practise. By Nicholas Morgan. 4to, London.

[Another edition, 1692.]

1620 The Horsemans Honour, or the beautie of Horsemanship, as the Choise, Natures, Breeding, Breaking, Riding, and Dieting, whether outlandish or English Horses. With the true, easie, cheape, and most approved manner, how to know and cure all diseases in any Horse whatsoever. Not invented and drawn from foreign Nations, but by long experience and knowledge of many years practice, and now published at the request of divers honorable and worthy persons for the generale good of this noble nation of Great Britain. (Anon., probably by Gervase Markham.) 12mo, London.

1623 Maneige royal, où l'on peut remarquer le défaut et la perfection du chevalier en tous les exercises de cette art . . . fait et pratiqué en l'instruction du roy, par Antoine Pluvinel, son ecuyer principal. . . . Obl. folio, Paris, 1623, 1624, 1625, 1671.

[In German, A la ville de Bruire, au dépens de Gotfried Müller. Folio, 1626. The plates of this last are inferior copies of the original, by Crispin De Pas.]

1624 Fiftie years Practice: or an exact Discourse concerning Snaffle-riding. By T. Browne. 4to, London.

1639 The compleat Horseman, and expert Farrier, in two Bookes. The first shewing the best manner of breeding good horses, with their choyce, nature, riding and dieting, as well for running as for hunting, and how the rider ought to behave himself in the breaking and riding of colts, as also teaching the groome and keeper his true office touching the Horses and Colts committed to his charge, and prescribing the best manner how a stable ought

to be scituated and made—not hitherto so fully described by any; the second directing the most exact and improved manner how to know and cure all maladies and diseases of the horse, a work containing the secrets and best skill belonging either to Ferrier or Horse-leech; the cures placed alphabetically, with many hundreds of medicines never before imprinted in any Author, &c. &c. By Thomas De Grey. Folio, London, 1639, 1651, 1656, 1670.

1656 The Perfect Horseman, or the experienced secrets of Mr. Markham's Fifty years Practice, shewing how a man may come to be a general horseman by the knowledge of these seven offices, viz. :—Breeder, Feeder, Ambler, Rider, Keeper, Buyer, Farrier. Published by Launcelot Thetford, practitioner in the same for the space of forty years. 8vo, London, 1656, 1671, 1673, 1680.

1679 L'écuyer françois, qui enseigne à monter à cheval, à voltiger, et à bien dresser les chevaux. (By Turbotti de Beaumont.) 8vo, Paris, 1679, 1682 or 1685. There should be at the end of the volume some extra sheets, viz. A—F 3, containing thirty-five plates and explanation, originally published separately in 1679.

1726 The Farrier's and Horseman's Dictionary: being a Complete System of Horsemanship. Anon. 8vo, London.

1727 Description de Manège moderne dans sa perfection. By Baron d'Eisenberg. Obl. 4to. Paris.

[Reprinted à La Haye, under the title of 'L'Art du monter à cheval ou description du Manège Moderne.' 4to, 1733, 1737, 1740. Another edition, Amsterdam and Leipsic, 4to, 1749, to which is added the 'Dictionnaire des Termes du Manège,' and sometimes the 'Anti-maquignonage.' 'L'Art de monter' has fifty-nine plates by Picart, and an engraved title-page. The 'Anti-maquignonage' has nine plates.]

Circa 1750 Manège et équitation. By Harguinez. Folio, Paris.

1763 Rules for Bad Horsemen, addressed to the Society for the Encouragement of Arts. 'Nescit equo rudis Hærere,' Hor. By Charles Thompson. 8vo, London, 1763, 1765. A new edition, with additions by J. Hinds, 12mo, London, 1830.

1765 The Art of Riding; or Horsemanship made easy, exemplified by Rules drawn from Nature and Experience. By J. L. Jackson. 12mo, London.

1766 L'Art du Manège, pris dans ces vrais principes. By J. B. de Lind. 4to, Bonn, 1766; 8vo, Vienna, 1772, 1774.

1771 The History and Art of Horsemanship. By Richard Berenger. 2 vols. 4to, London.

[This work is a compound of Xenophon's Trèatise on Horsemanship; Bourgelat's Elemens, 1750–53; and contains a Dissertation on the Ancient Chariot, the exercise of it in the race, and the application of it to real service in war, by T. Pownall.]

1771 or 1772 Traité d'equitation, avec une traduction du traité de la Cavalerie de Xénophon. By Duparty de Clam. 8vo, Deux-Ponts and Paris.

1772 The Compleat Horseman, or the Art of Riding made easy. Illustrated by rules drawn from nature, and confirmed by experience; with directions to the ladies to sit gracefully, and ride with safety. By Charles Hughes. 12mo, London.

1773 Essai sur l'équitation, ou principes raisonnés sur l'art de monter les chevaux. By Mottin de la Balme. 12mo, Amsterdam and Paris.

1774 The Moderne Riding Master, or a key to the knowledge of the Horse and Horsemanship, with several necessary rules for young Horsemen. By Phillip Astley. 8vo, London, 1774, 1775.

1776 La science et l'art d'équitation démontrés d'après nature. By Duparty de Clam. 4to, Paris.

[Counterfeit edition, 8vo, Yverdon, 1777.]

1778 Traité d'équitation. By Montfaucon de Rogles. 4to, Paris, 1778; 8vo, Paris, 1810.

1787 An Academy for grown horsemen, containing the completest instructions for walking, trotting, cantering, galloping, stumbling, and tumbling; twelve plates and portrait of the author, Geoffrey Gambado, Esqre., Riding Master, Master of the Horse, and Grand Equerry to the Doge of Venice.

[Also published with and generally bound with the above, though with separate title-page :—Annals of Horsemanship, containing accounts of accidental experiments, and experimental accidents both successful and unsuccessful, together with most instructive marks thereon and answers thereto, &c. By Geoffrey Gambado (H. Bembury). Folio; London, 1787; 4to, London, 1787 and 1791; 8vo, Dublin, 1792; 4to, London, 1796; 8vo, London, 1809; 8vo, London, 1811; 4to, London, 1822.]

1796 A Complete Dictionary of Farriery and Horsemanship, containing the Art of Farriery in all its branches, with an Explanation of the Terms and a Description of the various particulars relating to the Manege and to the Knowledge of Horses. By James Hunter. 8vo, London.

1799 Analysis of Horsemanship, teaching the whole Art of Riding in the Manege, Military, Hunting, Racing, or Travelling System, together with the Method of Breaking Horses and Dressing them to all kinds of Manege. By John Adams. 8vo, London, 1799; 3 vols. 8vo, London, 1805, 1812.

1800 System of Equestrian Education, exhibiting the Beauties and Defects of the Horse, with serious and important observations on his general excellence, preserving him in health, grooming, &c. By Phillip Astley. 4to, London, 1800, 1801; 8th edition, 1802.

[Another edition :—Projects in the management of the Horse, rendering it calm on the Road, in Harness, &c. Such acquirements may prevent dreadful accidents. By Phillip Astley; being an abridgement of his popular Book of Equestrian Education. To which is prefixed many excellent remedies for the diseases in Horses, &c. 12mo, London, 1804.]

1804 Genius Genuine. By Samuel Chifney of Newmarket. A Fine Part in riding a race, known only to the author. Why there are so few good runners, or why the Turf Horses degenerate. A guide to recover them to their strength and speed as well as to train horses for hard running, and hunters and hacks for hard riding. To preserve their sinews from being so often destroyed, with reasons for horses changing in their running, likewise a full account of the Prince's horse 'Escape,' running at Newmarket on the 20th and 21st days of October, 1791; with other interesting particulars. 8vo, London, 1804, 1871.

1805 Scuola Equestre. Elementi di cavallerizza, lezioni equestri, il cavallo ammalato, catechismo, avvertimenti ed istruzione. By Fed. Mazzuchelli. 2 vols. 4to, Milan.

1806 The Art of Horseman, altered and abreviated according to the principles of the late Sir Sydney Medows. By Strickland Freeman. 4to, London.

1806 L'écuyer des dames, ou lettres sur l'équitation, contenant des principes et des exemples sur l'art de monter à cheval. Dédié au beau sexe. By L. H. Pons-D'Hostun. 8vo, Paris.

1815 The Improved Art of Riding. By G. Lloyd and R. Symes. 8vo, London.

1820 The Art of Riding, and to Manage a Vicious Horse. Anon. 8vo, London.

1825 Principles of Modern Riding for Ladies, in which all improvements are applied to practice on the promenade and the road. By John Allen. 8vo, London.

1825 Principles of Modern Riding for Gentlemen, in which the late improvements of the manege and Military systems are applied to practice on the promenade, the road, the field, and the course. By John Allen. 8vo, London.

1825 The Art of Manage, Riding and Breaking Horses systematically. By T. Gibbons. 8vo, London.

1827 Cours élémentaire et analytique d'Equitation, ou Résumé des principes de M. d'Auvergne suivi d'un essai sur les Haras. By Chabannes.

1827 The Young Horsewoman's compendium of the modern art of riding, comprising a progressive course of lessons; designed to give ladies a secure and graceful seat on horseback; at the same time so effectually to form the hand, that they may in a short time acquire perfect command of their Horses. By Edward Stanley. 8vo, London.

1829 Rules for Bad Horsemen. By John Hinds (pseud. for John Badcock). 12mo, London.

Circa 1831 The Horse. By William Youatt. Knight's Store of Knowledge. 8vo, London.

[Also published in Vol. I. of the Farmer's Library. 8vo, London, (1847). 'Appendix to the Horse,' by W. C. Spooner. 8vo, London, 1849. 'The Horse, its History, Management, and Treatment.' 8vo,

London, 1853. A new edition, re-edited and revised, with observations on breeding Cavalry Horses, by Cecil. 8vo, London, 1855. Under the superintendence of the Society for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge. Revised and enlarged by W. Watson. 8vo. London, 1866. Another on the same superintendence. By E. N. Gabriel. 8vo, London, 1859.]

1835 The Adventures of a Gentleman in Search of a Horse. By Caveat Emptor (Sir George Stephen). 8vo, London, 1835, 1836, 1837. 5th edition, 1841; another, 1861. Another reprinted in America. 8vo, Philadelphia, 1857.

1836 A Comparative View of the Form and Character of the English Racer and Saddle-Horse during the last and present centuries. Anon. 4to, London, 1836, 1855.

1836 Traité raisonné d'Equitation. By P. A. Aubert. 2 vols. 4to, Paris, 1836, 1839.

1838 The Young Ladies' Equestrian Manual. Anon. 12mo, London.

1839 Hints on Horsemanship, to a Nephew and Niece; or common sense and common errors in common riding. By an officer of the Household Brigade of Cavalry (Colonel G. Greenwood). 8vo, London, 1839, 1861.

1839 The Equestrian, a Handbook of Horsemanship. By Captain M. With illustrations by Frank Howard. 12mo, London.

1841 Nouvelle école d'équitation, à l'usage des militaires et des particuliers, suivie de la Diététique. Anon. 8vo, London.

1842 Handbook of Horsemanship. Anon. 12mo, London.

1842 Equitation des Dames. By P. A. Aubert. 8vo, Paris.

1842 Méthode d'équitation basée sur de nouveaux principes, augmentée de documents inédits, de rapports officiels en faveur de l'application de la méthode aux chevaux de troupes. By F. Baucher. 8vo, Paris, 1842; 9th edition, 1850.

[A German translation, 8vo, Berlin, 1843 and 1852. A Spanish translation, 4to, Madrid, 1848. A Russian translation from 10th edition, 8vo, St. Petersburg, 1857.

In English :—A method of Horsemanship founded upon new principles, including the Breaking and Training of Horses, with Instructions for obtaining a good seat.

Third American edition from the ninth, Paris, 12mo, Philadelphia, 1852.]

1842 De l'équitation et des Haras. By Count Lavary de Laucosme-Bréves. 4to, Paris, 1842, 1843.

1842 Equitation Fashionable. By St. Ange-Saint-Paul. 8vo, Paris.

1843 Réfutation complète de la nouvelle méthode d'équitation proposée par M. Baucher. By Legros. 8vo, Paris.

1843 Nuovo trattato d'equitazione. By Carlo Le Maire. 8vo, Turin.

1843 Traité d'équitation sur des bases géométriques, contenant 74 figures. By A. C. M. Parisot. 8vo, Paris.

1844 Traité d'équitation illustré. Précédé d'un aperçu des divers modifications et changements apportés dans l'équitation depuis le XVIe siècle jusqu'à nos jours: suivi d'une appendice sur le jeune cheval, du trot anglais, et d'une lettre sur l'équitation des Dames. By Antonio Henri Phillippe Léon, Comte d'Aure. 8vo, Paris, (1844); 3rd edition, 8vo, Paris, 1846; 8vo, Paris, 1870.

1844 Dialogues sur l'équitation. Premier dialogue entre le grand Hippo-Theo, dieu des quadrupèdes, par un cavalier, et un cheval. By F. Baucher. 8vo, Paris.

1845 Dictionnaire d'hippiatrique et d'équitation. By François Cardini. 2 vols. 8vo, Paris, 1845, 1848.

1845 Handbook of Horsemanship. By H. R. Herschberger. 32mo, London.

1845 Manuel équestre. By C. Raabe. 8vo, Paris.

1846 The Horse and his Rider. By Rollo Springfield (pseud.) 12mo, London, 1846, 1847.

Circa 1849 Manuel du Cavalier. By Orfaure de Tantaloupe. 18mo, Paris.

1849 The Stud for Practical Purposes. By 'Harry Hieover.' 12mo, London.

1850 Practical Horsemanship. By Harry Hieover (Charles Brindley). 8vo, London, 1850, 1856.

1850 Manuel de l'éleveur, ou Méthode simplifiée de dressage des chevaux au montoir et au trait. By Count de Louis Edme Montigny. 8vo, Paris.

1850 The Young Lady's Equestrian Assistant. By Captain A. F. Oakes. 8vo, London.

1850 The Equestrian's Manual; or the Science of Equitation, with Advice to Purchasers of Horses, Saddlery, &c. By Samuel C. Wayte. 8vo, London.

[Abridged and revised: Graceful Riding, a Pocket Manual for equestrians. 8vo, London, 1859.]

1850 The Hunting Field. By 'Harry Hieover.' 12mo, London.

1852 Cours d'équitation, adopté officiellement et enseigné à l'école de cavalerie et dans les corps de troupes à cheval. By Antonio Henri Philippe Léon, Comte d'Aure. Saumur, 1852. 5th edition. 18mo, Paris, 1859.

1852 Aux éleveurs, aux cultivateurs, à tous les cavaliers. (By Casimir Noël.) 8vo, Paris.

1852 L'équitation naturelle enseignée en vingt-cinq minutes avec la bride à mors régulateur sans gourmette et à rênes croisées. Dédié aux amazones et aux jeunes cavaliers. By Casimir Noël. 8vo, Paris.

1852 Herr Baucher und seine Künste. Ein ernstes Wort an Deutschlands Reiter. By Louis Seeger. 8vo, Berlin.

1853 De l'équitation qui convient aux Français et des races qui y sont propres. By Pinto. 8vo, Paris.

1853 Horsemanship, or the Art of Riding and Managing a Horse, adapted for the Guidance of Ladies and Gentlemen on the Road and in the Field, with instructions for breaking-in Colts and Young Horses. By Capt. M. Richardson. 8vo, London.

1853 Méthode d'équitation sur de grandes lignes. By Col. Aimé Théodore Marie Rigault de Rochefort. 8vo, Paris.

Circa 1854 The Equestrian. A Handbook of Horsemanship containing plain practical rules for Riding, Driving, and the Management of the Horse. Anon. 12mo, London.

Circa 1854 The Ladies' Equestrian Guide. Anon. 4to, London.

1854 Examen du cours d'équitation de M. d'Aure. By C. Raabe. 4to, Marseilles.

1854 Equitations-Studien. Mit besonderer Rücksichtsnahme auf den Unterricht in den Artillerie-Equitationen. By Alexander von Nadosy. 8vo, Vienna.

1855 Le Cavalier. Cours d'équitation pratique. By Victor Franconi. 12mo, Paris, 1855, 1860.

1855 Light Horse. By Jacob Omnium (Mathew James Higgins). 8vo, London.

1857 The Habit and the Horse. A Treatise on Female Equitation. By Mrs. Stirling Clark. 4to, London, 1857, 1860.

[In French: Le cheval à l'amazon—guide complet de l'équitation des dames. 8vo, Brussels, 1861.]

1857 Méthode d'équitation et de dressage basée sur la mécanique animale, contenant: 1. Précis de l'équitation depuis Xénophon jusqu'à nos jours. 2. Etude mécanique du cheval. 3. Equitation proprement dite, ou école du cavalier, d'après une nouvelle méthode. 4. Equitation d'agrément, haute école, fariboles d'équitation, équitation de course, équitation des dames, suivie de dressage des chevaux de remonte, dédiée à la cavalerie. By Pierre Joseph Isidore Daudel. 8vo, Paris.

1857 Frank Forresters (pseud.) Horse and Horsemanship of the United States and British Provinces of North America from 1818 to 1856. By Henry William Herbert. 8vo, New York and London.

1857 Le Bauchérisme réduit à sa plus simple expression, ou l'art de dresser les chevaux d'attelage, de dame de promenade, de chasse, de course, d'escadron, de cirque, de tournoi, de carrousel. Programme des Cours d'Equitation Civile et Militaire professés à Bruxelles, Malines, Coblentz, Prague, Vienne, Breslau, Naples, &c. Suivi de notes militaires (organisation, instruction de l'armée,

académie militaire), avec planches répresentant le travail de Buridan, Capitaine. By Louis Joseph Reel. 8vo, Paris.

1857 Precept and Practice. By 'Harry Hieover.' 12mo, London.

1861 Equitation et dressage. Méthode Joseph. (Anon.) 16mo, Paris.

1861 The Horse; How to Ride him. By Butler. 1861, 1865.

1861 The Book of Aids, whol system of Equitation. By Thomas Martin. 12mo, London.

1861 L'Equitation pratique. By Jules Pellier, junr. 12mo, Paris, 1861, 1863, 1875.

1861 Horse and his Rider. By Sir Francis Head, Bart. 8vo, London.

1863 Méthode de haute école d'équitation. By G. Raabe. 8vo, Marseilles.
[With Atlas in 4to.]

1864 De l'équitation et de la haute école, ayant pour base la position de jambette, par un amateur d'équitation. Anon. 8vo, Paris.

1868 On Seats and Saddles, Bits and Bitting, and the Prevention and Cure of Restiveness in Horses. By Francis Dwyer. 8vo, London, 1868, 1869, 1879.

1869 The Book of Aids, or Catechism of the System of Equitation. Anon. Canterbury.

1869 Equitation, haute école et courses de chevaux. By B. J. Jullien. 12mo, Paris.

1873 Graceful Riding. A Pocket Manual for Equestrians. By S. C. Waite. Fcap 8vo, London.

1874 The Barb and the Bridle, a handbook of equitation for Ladies and Manual of Instruction in the Science of Riding, from the preparatory suppling exercises on foot, to the form in which a lady should ride to hounds. By Vieille Moustache (pseud.). 8vo, London.

1874 Le cheval et son chevalier. By Count J. de Lagondie. 2 vols. 12mo, Paris.

1874 Manuel d'équitation. By Louis Charles Pellier, senr. 8vo, Paris.

1875 Les aides du chevalier, ou simples observations sur l'art de conduire et de dresser les chevaux; suivi de dialogues, simplification du dressage &c. Dédiée aux jeunes gens appelés à faire partie de l'armée dans la cavalerie. By F. Burdelot. 8vo, Paris.

1875 Traité complet d'équitation. Cours élémentaire. By C. Mausny. 8vo, Paris.

1876 Book of the Horse. By S. Sidney. Demy 4to, London.

1877 Horses and Riding. By G. Neville. 8vo, London.

1877 Horsebreaking. By Robert Moreton. 8vo, London.

1878 Horseback Riding from a Medical point of view. By G. Durant. 12mo, New York.

1878 Riding Recollections. By G. J. Whyte-Melville. 8vo, London.

1878 Methode de l'équitation Emery de Collomb. 8vo, Bruxelles (3rd edition).

880 Recherches sur l'équitation militaire. Par A. Gaume. 12mo, Paris.

1880 Principes d'équitation. Par Leclanne. 12mo, Paris.

1881 The Horse and how to manage him. Anon. 8vo, London.

1881 On Horseback, in the School and on the Road. By E. L. Anderson. 12mo, London.

1881 How to Ride and School a Horse, with a System of Horse Gymnastics. By Edward L. Anderson. 8vo, London.

1881 Ladies on Horseback, Park Riding and Hunting, with Hints on Costume and Numerous Anecdotes. By Mrs. Power O'Donoghue. 8vo, London, 1881, 1886, 1891.

1881 Vulgarisation d'équitation. By J. A. F. J. Pigouche. 12mo, Paris.

1881 La Russie chevaline. By P. Salin. 8vo, Milan.

1882 Le dressage des chevaux. Par G * * * 8vo, Paris.

1882 Riding on the Flat and across Country. By M. H. Hayes. 8vo. London.

[This work deals almost entirely with Race Riding.]

1882 Was können wir zur Hebung der Reitkunst thun? By P. Plenzner. 8vo. Stendal.

1883 The Saddle-Horse, a New Method of teaching Riding and Training by means of pictures from the life. By E. L. Anderson. 8vo, Edinburgh.

[2nd edition, containing some observations upon the mode of changing lead in the gallop. 8vo, Edinburgh, 1886.]

1883 How to Outwit the Horse. Anon. 8vo, London.

1883 Die Zaamung des Pferdes. By R. Schoenbeck. 8vo, Berlin.

1883 Paris à cheval. By Crafty (pseud.). 4to, Paris.

1884 La femme à cheval. Théorie Pratique, Anecdotes. By Le Vicomte de Hédouville. 16mo, Paris.

1884 Die Amazone. Einführung in das Gebiet der edlen Reitkunst für Damen. By Leopold von Heydebrand und der Lasa. 8vo, Leipzig.

1884 The American Horsewoman. By E. Karr. 8vo, Boston.

1884. Traité d'équitation pratique au point de vue da la promenade et de la chasse. By Charles de Poly. 8vo, Paris.

1884 Die Dame als Reiterin. Informirung über die Reitkunst der Damen. By Ads. Schlaberg. 8vo, Berlin.

1884 Nouveau Manuel complet de l'équitation. Encyclopédie-Rorie. Par A. D. Verguand. 18mo. Paris.

1885 Patroclus and Penelope: a Chat in the Saddle. By Theo. A. Dodge. Boston and Edinburgh.

1885 The Saddle and Stable. The Common Sense of Riding. By Mrs. Power O'Donoghue. 16mo, London.

1885 Training and Horse Management in India. By Captain M. H. Hayes. 8vo, Calcutta.

1886 Vice in the Horse, and other papers on Horse and Riding. By E. L. Anderson. 8vo, Edinburgh.

1886 Manuel pratique d'équitation. By Le Brun-Renaud. 12mo, Paris.

1886 Le cheval. Traité complet d'hippologie, suivi d'un cours d'équitation pour le cavalier et la dame. Avec 182 vignettes et figures. By E. Santini.

1886 The Badminton Library. Racing, by the Earl of Suffolk and Berkshire, and Mr. W. G. Craven, with a contribution by the Hon. F. Lawley. Steeplechasing, by Arthur Coventry and Alfred E. T. Watson. 8vo, London.

1886 Horsebreaking. By R. Moreton. Fcap 8vo, London.

1887 L'art d'équestre. Traité de haute école. By Etienne Barroil. 8vo, Paris.

1887 The Saddle Horse. Complete Guide for Riding and Training. Illustrated. Anon. 12mo, New York.

1887 New Method of Horsemanship, including the Breaking and Training of Horses. With instructions for obtaining a good seat. By F. Baucher, 16mo, New York.

1888 Das Buch vom Pferde. By C. G. Wrangel. Royal 8vo, Stuttgart.

1888 Functions of the Hands in Riding. By Count E. M. Cesaresco. 8vo, Edinburgh.

1889 Illustrated Horse Breaking. Captain M. H. Hayes. 8vo, London.

1890 The Art of Riding. by H. G. English.

1890 Principes de dressage d'équitation. Par James Fillis. 8vo, Paris.

1891 Dressage méthodique de cheval de salle d'après les derniers enseignements de F. Baucher. Par un de ses élèves. 8vo, Paris.

Hints on Horsemanship. Anon. Cr. 8vo.

Horses and Riders. By Crauford. Cr. 8vo, London.

INDEX

ABB

ABBAS Khan,
Acland, Mr. Thomas, 314
Adams on horsemanship, 229
Adelaide (Australia) polo club, 261
Africa, polo in, 261
Airlie, Earl of, 236, 287, 296, 308, 313, 334, 339; on polo, 328
Àli Bey, Nawab Mahomed, 351
All Ireland polo club, 295, 333
Allsopp, Capt. the Hon. H. T., 305, 347
Alston, Mr. W. S., 350
America, visit of a Hurlingham polo team to, 260; match for the America Cup at Newport ground, 260, 261
American cowboys, 179, 180
Apperley, Capt., 184, 188
Apperley, Mr., 352
Arab horses, importation of, into Australia, 177; polo ponies, 308–310
'Arabian Nights' quoted, 252
Archer, F., 139, 144, 147, 153; on horsemanship, 147
Armour, the age of, 224, 226
Ashburton (N.Z.) hounds, Master of the, 196–198
Ashtead polo club, 349

BEL

Asia, Western, earliest mention of the horse in, 212, 213
Australia, horse-breeding in, 158–210; starting and progress of polo in, 261
Ava, Lord, 351, 354

BABINGTON, Major, 346
Backing young horses, 80–85; *see* Training
Baird, Mr. E. W., 339, 347
Baldock, Mr. E. H., 256, 259, 287, 333
Balls, polo, 301, 302
Baring, Hon. E., 313
Barrackpore polo club, 280
Barrow, Mr. Seymour, 350
Barry, Capt. 'Jim,' 346
Barton and Drake's 'Unexplored Syria' quoted, 251
Barton-under-Needwood polo club and ground, 299, 342, 349
Baucher, 54, 55, 217, 227, 229, 230
Beatson, Major, 351
Beaufort, the Duke of, on horsemanship, 44
Behrens, Mr., 26
Belmont, Mr. R., 261

BEN

Bending, 92–97, 323; *see* Horsemanship, hints on
Bentley, Mr. H. C., 349; on polo, 237
Beresford, Lord William, 333
Berjeau's Plates, 225
Bibliography of riding, 393–404
Bird, Messrs., 349
Bits, 10, 11, 42, 44, 113–119, 128; earliest representation of, on Egyptian and Assyrian monuments, 214; of the Greeks, 217–219; the Mexican bit, 260; for training polo ponies, 324, 326
Bitting, 113–119, 145; *see* Horsemanship, hints on
Blinkers, danger of, in polo, 327
Blundeville, T., on horsemanship, 45, 228
Boring, remedy for, 89, 104
Boscawen, Hon. H., 255
Boutell's 'Arms and Armour,' 224
Brainquant, M. de, 259
Breaking horses, 86; the Maories' methods of, 201–204
Bridles, 7, 42, 113, 114; early Egyptian and Asiatic, 214; invention of, ascribed to the Romans, 221; for training polo ponies, 326
Bridoons, 10, 11, 113, 115, 116, 118, 124
Brisbane, Sir Thomas, 177
Brocklehurst, Mr., 258, 335
Bromley, Davenport, on horsemanship, 12
Browbands, 67
Brown's (Mr. Meredith) stuffless saddle, 7
Browne, Mr. Percy, 347
Bruce, Capt. C. D., 236, 350

CHA

Brydges, Sir S. E., on horsemanship, 228
Bucking, 125, 129
Buckle on horsemanship, 226
Buffalo Bill, 180
Buller, Mr. Hughes, 350
Burn, Capt. C. R., 347
Butler, Mr. James, 333
Butson, 'Tim,' 333

CACHAR KÀN-JÀI polo club, 291
Cadogan, Countess of, 9
Calcutta polo club, 282, 297; ground, 352
Cambridge University polo club, 349
Cameron, Capt., 346
Cannon, Tom, 139, 140, 142, 153, 155, 156, 157
Cantering, 100–106
Cape Town polo club and ground, 261
Carew, Mr., 352
Carre, Col., 164
Carthorses, colonial, 206; popularity of the Clydesdale, 206
Cartland, Mr., 349
Cavalry Regulations, 113
Cavendish, the Hon. C., 334
Cavesson, fitting on a young horse, 71; taking off, 85; use of, in training to jump, 107, 112; in curing bucking, 131
Cawnpore polo club, 280
Chain, Capt., 254, 255
Chaloner, 166
Chaloner, Capt., 348
Chamberlain's 'Classical Poetry of the Japanese' quoted, 261
Chapman, Mr. R., 41
Chariot of Sargon I. (2,800

CHA

B.C.), 212; tessera in British Museum representing two-horse chariot, 213; invention of, ascribed to the Romans, 221
Chaugán, 238–253; sticks, 244
Chesham, Lord, 334
'Chifneys,' 42, 117
Chisholme, Mr., 333
Chúpaán, 240
Cicero on horsemanship, 220
Clanricarde, Lord (the late), 23
Clarence and Avondale, H.R.H. the Duke of, 352
Clayton, 'Dick,' 333
Cloth boots for polo, 328
Clydesdales, popularity of, in Australasia, 206
Collars, stall, 67
Colonial horse, the, 158; introduction of horses into Australia, 159; the earliest races, 159; colonial stud-books, 159–161; confusion of pedigree, 161; superiority of New Zealand bred horses, 161; successful and unsuccessful sires, 162; rareness of affections of the wind, 162; great number of racecourses, 166, 170; Flemington (Victoria) racecourse, 166–170; absence of bookmakers at New Zealand meetings, 170; race-cards arranged to suit sweepstakes, 174–176; 'scrubbers,' 178; catching and breaking horses on the runs, 178–181; stockmen and their horses, 180; great increase and wholesale destruction of semi-wild horses, 181; effect of Victorian gold discovery on the

COL

value of horses, 181; rate of annual increase and export of colonial horses, 182, 183; price of horses, 184–186; 'Walers,' 184, 187; disfiguring brands, 185; commercial aspect of horse-breeding, 186; deterioration of horses caused by the introduction of sheep-farming, 186; class of horse bred in the colonies, 187; Australia as a source of supply for Indian military remounts, 187, 188; police and artillery horses, 189; the bush horse, 190; suitability for making hunters, 190; prevalence of barbed wire fencing, 194; its influence on hunting, 194–200; mode of shoeing for wire fence jumping, 196; schooling over wire, 198; jumping power of colonial horses, 198, 210; steeplechasing, 200; the Maories' methods of breaking horses, 201–204; horses specially trained to ford rivers, 204; scarcity of good hacks, 205; colonists' mode of riding, 205; Australian cart-horses, 206; low price obtainable for pure-bred Clydesdales, 206; relative excellence of English and Australian racehorses, 207, 210; tendency to curtail length of races, 208; general legsoundness of colonial horses, 208; hacks and harness horses, 209; general practice of horse-riding, 210; excellence of horses in public conveyances, 210

COL

Colvin, Capt., 346
Connaught, H.R.H. the Duke of, 335
Constable, H., 147
Cooch-Behar, Maharajah of, 282
Coppinger, Mr., 350
Cottiswold, Legend of the, 32
County Carlow polo club, 333, 343
Coventry, Countess of, 9
Cradock, 'Monte,' 334
Craigie, Mr., 350
Craven, Earl of, 9
Crawfurd, Sterling, 21
Crosstrees, wooden, 79
Cruppers, 77
Cunard, Sir Bache, 335
Cups (polo): — All Ireland Military Cup, winners of, 296; All Ireland Open Cup, 258, 348; winners of, 295; America Cup, 260; Bombay Open Cup, winners of, 297; Calcutta Open Cup, 281; Calcutta Turf Club Cup, 297; Champion Cup, 330; Hurlingham Champion Open Cup, winners of, 293, 294; Hurlingham Open County Cup, winners of, 295; Indian Native Cavalry Cup, 282, 283; the Maharajah of Mysore's Cup, 282; the Nizam of Hyderabad's Open Challenge Cup, 283
Curbs, 10, 42, 114

DAKIU (Japanese polo), 262
Dansey, Capt., 255
D'Arcy, Mr. M., 350
Dawson, Mr., 350
Dease, Mr. E., 350

EUS

De Lisle, Mr., 352
De Quatrefages on horsemanship, 214
Derby, times of the English, New South Wales, and Victorian contrasted, 183, 208
Derbyshire polo club, 299
Desaraj Urs, Subadar, 351
Desultores (riders in the Roman public games), 222
Dodge, Col. Theodore A., on horsemanship, 53, 54
Dordogne, horses' bones found in the caves of, 211; the cave-dwellers of, 214
Dorrien, Mr. Smith, 255
Downe, Lord, 335
Downe (trainer), 26
'Druid, The,' quoted, 310
Duff, Capt., 348
Duncombe, Col., 257
Dundas, Mr., 348
Durham, Capt. Philip, 334

EARLE'S (Mr.) picture of polo at Hurlingham, 346
East India Company, 184, 188
Edge, Mr., 346
Egypt, earliest representation of the horse in the monuments of, 213; of the bit, 214
Ellis, Mr. A. G., 236
Elvaston Castle polo ground, 299, 323
Elvaston polo club, 363
'Encyclopædia Britannica' on horsemanship, 223
Equus fossilis, 211; *E. speleus*, 211, 212; *E. caballus*, 211, 212
Eustathius on horsemanship, 225

FEN

FENWICK, Mr. 'Phil,' 345
Fergusson, Capt., 305, 346
'Field, The,' quoted, 237, 268, 276
Fitzhardinge, Earl (the late), 29
Fitzwilliam, Hon. C. H., 255, 335
Fitzwilliam, Hon. T., 255
Flatman, 152
Flemington (Victoria) race-course, 166–170; club, 167
Fordham, George, 139, 140, 142, 148, 150, 151, 154, 156; anecdote of, 139; on horsemanship, 151
Fores's 'Sporting Sketches,' 368
Fort, Mr. Richard, 287
Fossbrooke's 'Antiquities,' 222, 226
France: the first work on the manège, 227; Baucher's influence on the art of riding, 229; polo match between an English and a French team at Dieppe, 259; establishment of a polo club in Paris, 259
Fraser-Tytler, 349
Freebooters polo club, 295
Futteh Khan, 298

GAGS, 10, 42
Gallais, Capt. le, 348
Galloping, 123–125; *see* Horsemanship, hints on
Germany, horsemanship in, 228
Gilmour, Mr. Walter Little, on horsemanship, 20, 21
Girths, 81, 129, 130
Glasgow, Lord (the late), 165
Goal-posts, polo, 304, 305

HAN

Gore, Capt. the Hon. H. Ormsby, 348
Gough, Major B., 333
Gough, Mr. C., 298, 350
Gould, Mr., 333
Grace, Dr. A., 28
Greaves, Mr. Henley, 30
Greeks (ancient), horsemanship of, 215; formation of cavalry, 215; high estimation of horsemanship, 216; the sacred games, 216; the best riders of any age, 217, 220; position in the saddle, 217; bits, 217–219; first known users of the spur, 218; saddle-cloths, 219; method of mounting, 219; highly trained condition of their horses, 220; treatment of manes and tails, 220
Greeks, cavalry of the early, 215
Green, Capt. Philip, 333, 335
Gregg, Mr., 333
Grenfell, Mr., 346
'Gridirons,' 42
Guise, Duc de, 259

HACKS, 52–61; scarcity of, in Australia, 205; *see* Saddle-horse
Haig, Mr., 352
Hales, J., 165
Hall, Brothers, 332
Hamilton, Capt. Bruce, 350, 351
Handling young horses, 63–69; *see* Training
Hands and seat, 133–138
Hands, bad and good, 8, 9, 10, 133–138; use and position of, in riding, 88, 90, 93, 94, 99, 111, 116, 123, 127

HAN

Hanwell, Capt., 352
Hardy, Mr. Gerald, 287, 317, 342
Harford's, Mr. William, stuffless saddle, 7
Hargreaves, Mr. Percy, 310, 348
Harrington, Earl of, 236, 287, 299, 304, 309, 315, 316, 319, 323, 331, 338, 341; on polo, 324
Hartopp, Mr. ('Chicken'), 254, 255, 334
Hayes's 'Sporting News' quoted, 322, 365, 366
Heera Singh, 298, 351
Herbert, Capt. 'Tip', 236, 256, 287, 329, 335, 345
Herbert, Mr. Reginald, 258, 259, 335, 345
Hickie, Mr., 351
'High ports,' 42
Hill, Eustace, 280
Hills, Mr. 'Archie,' 352
Hitchcock, Mr. T., 261
Hoare, Sir Henry, 35
Holbrow's, Mr., patent polo ball, 301
Hone, Capt. T., 261, 342, 345
Hone, Mr. Geoffrey, 333
Hope, Sir William (1696), on horsemanship, 228
Hornby, Capt., 350
Horse furniture, 41; early Egyptian and Asiatic, 214; Roman, 222
Horsemanship, early history of, 211; the first riders: the bit, 211; antiquity of the horse in Europe, 211; varieties of, 211; used as food in the 'reindeer period,' 211; horses' bones found in the

HOR

caves and lake-dwellings of Europe, 211, 212; earliest records of the horse in Western Asia, 212, 213; in Egypt, 213; representations of the bit on Egyptian and Assyrian monuments, 214; the early horsemen of Egypt and Asia, 214; their bits, bridles, and saddle-cloths, 214, 215; the stirrup and spur unknown to them, 215;—the Greeks: the spur, 215; early Grecian cavalry, 215; high esteem in which horsemanship was held, 216; horse and chariot races in the sacred games, 216; the Greeks among the best riders of any age, 217, 220; Xenophon's system of horsemanship, 217–219; the 'seat,' 217; form of bits, 217, 219; use of the spur, 218; the standing leap, 218; substitutes for saddles, 219; mode of mounting, 219; highly trained condition of Grecian horses, 220;—the Romans: the saddle, 221; formation of a body of horsemen by Romulus, 221; the order of *Equites* or knights, 221; perfection of the art of schooling horses, 221, 222; the *gestatio*, 221; prominence of horsemanship in the public games, 222; elaborate decoration of trappings, 222; earliest evidence of the saddle-tree, 222–224;—the Age of Armour: the stirrup, 224; difficulty of mounting, 224; the *scalu*, 224; first mention of the

HOR

stirrup, 225; chiefly used by armed horsemen, 225; origin and development of the tournament, 226;—modern horsemanship, 227; in Italy: Pignatelli and Federigo Grisone, 227; in France: La Broue and Pluvinel, 227; Baucher, 229; in Germany, 228; in England: principal works on horsemanship, sixteenth to eighteenth centuries, 228, 229; superiority of the English as horsemen, 230; the form of the art in which they fail, 230

Horsemanship, hints on:—In the school, 86; superiority of snaffle to bit in breaking a horse, 86; how to carry the whip, 86; object of first lessons, 87; get the horse to step out freely, 87; to prevent horses from stopping, 87; handling the reins, 87, 88; a properly placed horse, 88; trotting, 88; riding badly formed horses, 88; advantage of running reins, 88; remedy for boring, 89; management of the snaffle, 90; accustom the horse to the pressure of the leg, 90; when to begin using the legs, 91; aiding with hand and leg, 91; practice in turning, 91; bending, 92–97; its importance and usefulness, 92; beginning the lesson, 92; how to get the bend, 92; the turn on the forehand, 93; the turn about from the left rein, 93; turning right about on the haunches,

HOR

94; 'shoulder in,' 94, 95; the 'passage,' 96; 'passage shoulder out,' 96; 'half-passage,' 97; reining back, 98–100; begin the lesson dismounted, 98; dealing with an obstinate horse, 98, 99, 100; reining back when halted, 99; cantering, 100–106; commencing the canter, 100; pulling up, 101; changing to either hand, 102; correction of faults, 104; taking up the canter from the walk, 105; the 'half-passage' at a canter, 105; leaping, 106–112; practice over the bar, mounted and dismounted, 107–110; rushing at a jump, 110; lazy jumpers, 110; refusing, 111; occasional open-air practice, 112; bitting, 113–119; selecting and fitting the bit, 113; the bridle, 113; accustoming the horse to the bit, 114; mounting, 115; how to hold the reins, 116; severe bits, 117; movable mouthpieces, 117; nosebands, 117; danger of standing martingales, 118;—Out of doors, 119; meeting objects likely to frighten a horse, 121; to overcome reluctance of young horse to leave home, 121; the gallop, 123–125; pulling up after a gallop, 123; shying at other galloping horses, 124; remedy for, 124, 125;—Punishment, 125–132; obstinate horses, 126; 'cow kicking,' 127; rearing, 127; pulling the horse over, 128;

HOR

rearing bits, 128; bucking, 129; causes of, 129–131; how to be dealt with, 131; when to inflict punishment, 132

Horses, English and colonial, referred to:—Abercorn, 165; Albany, 162, 163; Anteros, 162; Apremont, 162, 163; Arab Child, 177; Bay Camerton, 159; Bee Hunter, 152; Black Doctor, 152; Cadogan, 162; Captivator, 163; Carbine, 166; Castor, 163; Chester, 165; Crunning, 174; Dagworth, 183; Duke of Parma, 56; Gladiator, 163; Grace Darling, 201–204; Hector, 177; Ingomar, 163; King Cole, 163; King Pepin, 35; Kirkham, 165; Leolinus, 162, 163; Lucy Sutton, 142; Manto, 159; Martini-Henry, 163, 165, 166; Maxim, 166; Musket, 162, 163, 165, 166; Narellan, 165; Nordenfelt, 163, 166; Onyx, 163; Pacific, 162; Petronel, 166; Ravensworth, 162; Reprieve, 183; Riddleworth, 162; Satellite, 177; Southampton, 144; St. Leger, 163; Sylvia, 163; The Baron, 159; The Flea, 199, 200; The Peer, 162; Tirailleur, 166; Traducer, 162; Trenton, 166; Vasco de Gama, 163; Young Rockhampton, 159

Horses' mouths, 9; cause of bad, 10; constant change of bridle a remedy, 10; manes and tails, treatment of, by ancient Egyptians and Asiatics, 215; by early Greeks, 220

IND

Horseshoe for wire-fence jumping, 196

Houghton polo ground, 342; club, 363

Hounds, riding to, 12–42; *see* Riding to hounds

Hudson, Mr. Roland, 352

Hunters, difficulty of obtaining good, 39; price of, 41

Hurlingham polo club, 287, 299, 319, 328; the committee, 287; rules and regulations, 288, 289, 328; by-laws, 290; polo clubs registered at Hurlingham, 292, 293; colours of, 292, 293; winners of cups and tournaments at, 293–295

Hurlingham polo ground, 256, 257, 261, 299, 300, 302, 304, 305, 323, 327, 329, 331, 337, 342, 345, 363

IBRAHIM Beg, 351

Ince-Anderton, Mr. W., 256, 259

India, polo in, 267; a favourite pastime of the Moghul rulers of Hindustan, 266; description of the game as played in Thibet, 266–268; and in Baltistan, 268–272; the Munnipoories, 273; their origin, 273; Munnipore the cradle of Indian polo, 273; practised by children from an early age, 273; their ponies, 274; saddles and stirrups, 274; polo sticks, 274; the balls, 275; number of players, 275; descriptions of the game, 275–278; introduction of polo into Cachar by Munnipoories,

278; organisation of a European polo club, 279; spread of the game to Calcutta, 279; Captain Sherer's 'Band of Brothers,' 279; introduction of polo into the Punjaub and North-West Provinces, 279; and into Kashmir, 280; taken up by the Europeans, 281; establishment of an annual Inter-regimental Tournament, 281; the Calcutta Open Cup, 281; Native Cavalry Cup, 282, 283; cups given by the Maharajahs of Mysore and Cooch-Behar, 282; reorganisation of the game, 282; polo tournaments, 282, 283; professional players maintained by the Nizam of Hyderabad, 283; challenge cup given by, 283; polo grounds, 283, 284; a ladies' polo match, 284–286; rules of the Inter-regimental Polo Tournament Committee, 291; of the Cachar Kàn-jāi Club, 295; winners of cups and tournaments, 296–298; shape and size of grounds, 301; the Thibetan 'byntu,' 303; the 'tattoo,' or country-bred pony, 311–314; rule as to height of ponies, 328; some famous players and ponies, 333, 334, 350–354
International gun and polo club, 256
Ireland, polo in, 257; extreme popularity, 257; numerous county clubs, 258; All Ireland Open Cup, 258; winners of, 295; All Ireland Military Cup, winners of, 296; famous players, 332, 343, 349
Italy, revival of horsemanship in the sixteenth century 227

JAMESON, Mr., 346
Janzy, Vicomte de, 259
Japanese polo, 261; differs widely from ordinary polo, 261; introduced from China in the sixth century, 262; description of the game, 262–264; rules, 264; the sticks, 264, 265
Jeffreys, Capt., 346
Jenner, Capt., 310, 346
Jockeys, 139–165
Johannesburg polo club and ground, 261
Jones, 'Bengey,' 334
Jones, Capt. Heywood, 287
Jones, Mr. Oliver, 334
Jones, 'Wengey,' 334, 346

KÀN-JĀI-BAZÈÈ, the Munnipore name for polo, 265, 273, 277, 280
Kashmir, Rajah of, 280
Keen, Mr. F., 261
Kennedy, Mr. T. S., 236, 287, 338, 339, 340
Keyser, Capt., 348
Khaifa Singh, 280
Kinloch, Capt., 280
Knappan, 252
Knight, Mr., 314
Konai Singh, 280
Kuper, Capt., 351

LAM

LAMBTON, Capt. the Hon. C., 261
Lamont, Capt., 287, 346
Lawley, Capt. the Hon. H., 352
Lawley, Capt. the Hon. Richard, 287
Leaping, 106–112; among the ancient Greeks, 218, 220; *see* Horsemanship, hints on
Legs, position and use of, in riding, 5, 8, 90, 109, 111, 123, 127, 136, 230, 231
'Leonis Imp. Tactica,' 225
'Les Chevaux de Course,' 44
Lillie Bridge polo ground, 256
Lindsay, Gordon, on horsemanship, 32
Lingard on horsemanship, 226
Little, Capt. Malcolm, 261, 346
Liverpool polo club, 349
Locke, Mr., 350
Lockett, Mr., 349
Longeing, 69–80; *see* Training
Lumley, Hon. R., 261

McCULLOCH, Capt., on polo, 273
MacDougall, Capt., 352
MacKenzie, Capt., 350
MacLaren, Capt. K., 329, 347, 348
McLeod, Mr. 'Jimmy,' 352
McMahon, Mr. G. F., 347
McNeill, Mr. Charles, 346
'Mall,' 252
'Market Harborough,' 14
Martingales, 118; standing, danger of, 118
'Mauricii Artis Militaris,' 225
Melbourne, the Cup, 165, 166, 170; price of horses in, 185

NEW

Mellor, Mr., 335
Mesham, Mr. Arthur, 347
Mexican vaqueros, 180
Mexico: polo in Mexico City, 259; the Mexican bit, 260; the South California Polo Club, 260
Meyrick, Mr., 348
Mian Mir polo club, 280
Mildmay, Mr. F. B., 236, 277, 287, 329, 337, 346
Miller, Mr. E. D., 236, 257, 313, 351
Milne, Mr., 349
Misri Khan, 351
Mohl's 'Le Livre des Rois,' 239, 240
Monmouthshire polo club, 256, 345
Murat, Prince, 259
Murrieta, Mr. A. de, 258, 334
Murrieta, Mr. C. de, 258, 334
Musket, 165

NATAL polo club and ground, 261
Needham, Capt., 335
Newmarket racing bandages for polo, 328
Newport Lodge training establishment, 26
Newport (U.S.) polo ground, 260
New South Wales: earliest races in, 159; stud-books, 160, 161; sale of thoroughbred stock (1845), 160; rate of annual increase of horses, 182; Sir Hercules Robinson quoted on the horses of the colony, 183; times of English and Sydney Derbys contrasted,

NEW

183, 208; breeding in, 187; hunting in, 192; a dingo hunt, 192
New Zealand: stud-books, 159, 161; horses, superiority of, 161; English stallions imported into, 162, 163; Stud Company, 163, 164; absence of bookmakers from race-meetings, 170; betting by means of the totalisator, 171–174; importation of Arab horses, 177; annual export of horses, 183; price of, 184; shipment of horses to India, 188; breeding in, 190; hunting in, 190; barbed wire fences, 192; a run with the Ashburton Harriers, 195; effect of wire fences on hunting, 195–198; training over wire, 198; remarkable performance of The Flea, 199; the Maories' methods of breaking horses, 201–204; horses trained to ford rivers, 205; extensive breeding of carthorses, 206
New Zealand Stud Company, 163; prices obtained for thoroughbred yearlings, 163, 164; proposed reorganisation, 164
Nixon, Capt. J., 350
North, the Hon. W., 349
Nosebands, 117

OGILVY, Lord, 334
Onslow, Mr. Hughes, 347
Oriental manuscripts on polo, 238–252
Osborne, John, anecdote of, 152

POL

Oswald, Capt., 348
'Our Horses,' 181, 201, 205, 207
Ouseley's (Sir Wm.) 'Travels in the East,' quoted, 243, 249

PALEY, Mr., 333
'Palla Maglia,' 252
Paris polo club, 259
'Patroclus and Penelope,' 53, 54
Payne, Mr. George, 165, 166
Peake, Mr. Walter, 349
Peat, Mr. Alfred, 236, 257, 258, 283, 305, 307, 323, 331,

Peat, Mr. Arthur, 236, 257, 258, 259, 277, 283, 287, 307, 323, 330, 331, 335, 336, 346
Peat, Mr. James, 236, 257, 258, 283, 307, 323, 331, 336, 363
Peat, Mr. J. E., 236, 257, 258, 259, 283, 307, 323, 331, 336
Peel, General, 165
Pelham bit, 117
Pemberton, Capt., on polo, 273
Peters, Major Cecil, 287, 317, 329, 348
Peyton, Mr. Algernon, 256
Phayre, Capt., 350
Pietermaritzburg polo club and ground, 261
Pignatelli, 227
Pliny on horsemanship, 221
Plinzner, Herr, equerry to the Emperor of Germany, 228
Plutarch on horsemanship, 224
Pluvinel, 227
Polo, 235; antiquity of the game, 238; first mention in Eastern literature, 238; chau-

gán (the Persian name for polo), 238; descriptions and incidents of chaugán, from Oriental manuscripts, 238–252; the Persian game, 238–242, 243, 249-252; Persian queen and hand-maidens *versus* king and courtiers, 241; chaugán at the court of the Emperor Comnenus, 242; its popularity in Persia in the seventeenth century, 243; diffused throughout Europe under various forms and names, 244; description of chaugán as played by the Emperor Akbar, 244–247; in Central Asia and Thibet, 250; a game with human heads for balls, 251; 'mall,' in the time of Charles II., 252; the Welsh game of 'knappan' in Queen Elizabeth's reign, 252; derivation of the names 'chaugán' and 'polo,' 252, 253; origin of the game in England, 254; the first inter-regimental matches, 255; the early called 'hockey on horseback,' 255; features of the early game, 256; formation of clubs, 256, 257, 259; the game taken up in the provinces and by the Universities, 256; changes introduced into the modern game, 257, 258; reduction in the number of players, 257; the back-hand stroke, 257; laying-out of grounds at Hurlingham and Ranelagh, 257; rapid spread of the game in Ireland, 257; its present condition, 258;

development of polo through three distinct phases or periods 258; match between an English and a French team at Dieppe, 259; progress of the game in Paris, 258; polo in the New World, 259; in Mexico, 259, 260; visit of a Hurlingham team to the United States, 260; the match for the America Cup, 260; polo in Africa, 261; in Australia, 261; in Japan, 261–265 (*see* Japanese polo); polo in India, 266–286 (*see under* India); rules and by-laws of polo, 287–292; clubs registered at Hurlingham, 292, 293; winners of the principal cups, 293–298; some famous players and ponies, 332–354; breeds of ponies suitable for polo, 306; the pure British breeds unfitted for the game, 306; merits and demerits of thoroughbreds, 306, 308; Arabs and Barbs, 308–310; Syrian ponies, 310, 311; the Indian 'tattoo,' or country-bred horse, 311; high prices obtainable for, 312–314; improved Exmoors, 314; good points of Barb horses, 315; history of the Barb 'Awfully Jolly,' 315, 316; difficulty of procuring good Barbs, 316, 317; South American ponies, 317; New Forest ponies, 317; Connemara ponies, 318; the best cross, 318; suggestions for improving the breed of ponies, 319; training of ponies for, 321–331; a defence of the

POL

game against the charge of cruelty, 330, 331
Polo Club, the, 256
Polo grounds, balls, sticks, goal-posts, &c., 299; requirements for grounds, 299; marking out, 299; keeping in order, 300; shape and size, 301; polo balls, 301, 302; sticks, 302; material and shape of heads, 302; the handles, 303; length of sticks, 303; the Thibetan 'byntu,' or stick, 303, 304; goal-posts, 304; stone-posts, 304; wooden posts, 304; papier-mâché posts, 304; dangers of thick wooden posts, 305; telegraph boards, 305; how a polo match should be played, 355; preparing for the game, 355; duties of the timekeeper, 355; the captain's place, 355; duties of the different players, 356; No. 4, or 'back,' 356; No. 3, or 'half-back,' 357; No. 2 and No. 1, 358; the umpires, 359, 360; starting the game, 360; the attack and defence, 360; striking the ball, direction, 361; avoid dribbling, 361; hit hard, 362; importance of always galloping, 362; 'riding out,' 363; long shots for goal, 363; a tremendous drive, 363; hitting off after a goal, 364; penalty for hitting behind your own goal, 364; advice and axioms for players, 364–367; qualities essential for a player, 367
Polo ponies, 255, 257, 258, 260,

POL

264, 267, 274, 282; breeds suitable for, 306–320; training for, 321–331; some famous: Abbess, 319, 337; Aladdin, 352; Algiers, 310; Ali Baba, 323, 331, 338; Ally Sloper, 316, 324; Apology, 352; Arab Lad, 351; Aunt Sally, 316; Awfully Jolly, 309, 315, 316, 319, 324, 338; Belinda, 347, 348; Blair, 329, 347, 348; Blue Blood, 347; Budmash, 351; Bullfighter, 341; Busymaid, 346; Chance, 331; Cinderella, 341; Conqueror, 313; Dancing Girl, 307, 340, 341; Dandy Jim, 339; Deception, 339; Dick, 329, 345; Dorothy, 348; Dublin, 317, 329; Dynamite, 307, 336; Edge, 336; Esmeralda, 307, 323, 336; Euphrates, 339, 347; Fritz, 343, 344, 345; Gay Lad, 336; Grasshopper, 336; Happy Lad, 313, 351; James Pigg, 351; Jenny, 323, 338, 348; Joe, 313, 353; Jolly Nun, 319; Joss, 343, 344; Judy, 329, 337, 338; Jumma, 351; Kaleidoscope, 353; Kit-Cat, 345, 346; Kitty, 337; Lalla Rookh, 352; Lucille, 353; Lulu, 353; Maggie, 336; Magic, 342; Marguerite, 313, 352; Marie, 353; Marquis, 317; Mary Anne, 342, 343; Maud, 353; Meg, 345; Mickey Free, 339; Minaret, 351; Miss Jummy, 317; Moonbeam, 352; Mouse, 348; New Guinea, 313;

POL

Ninepins, 336; Outsider, 351; Paleface, 313; Patch, 340, 345; Perfection, 351; Perfidy, 336; Picquet, 337, 341; Piper, 341; Polestar, 313, 353; Polly, 345, 346; Prince, 351; Quicksilver, 351; Rainbow, 352; Rajah, 342; Red Lancer, 353; Rex, 317; Rosamond, 313, 352; Rosealba, 317, 342; Saladin, 310, 311, 342; Sambo, 352; Santa Clara, 317; Saracen, 315; Schoolboy, 353; Seagull, 336, 347; Sinbad, 310, 311, 342; Smuggler, 315, 346; Solomon, 342; Spider, 315, 346; Starlight, 352; Stella, 352; The Bay, 315; The Doe, 352; The Fawn, 307, 330, 337; The Girl, 323, 338; The Nurse, 345; The Nun, 353; The Rag, 345; Tongs, 333; Umpire, 339; Venus, 342, 345; Whiskey, 345; Yellow Jack, 313

Polo regimental teams: Royal Horse Guards, 255; 1st Life Guards, 255; 7th Hussars, 282; 8th Hussars, 282, 333, 343; 10th Hussars, 255, 256, 281, 282, 305, 333; 19th Hussars, 280; 5th Lancers, 282; 9th Lancers, 255, 256, 281, 333; 17th Lancers, 282, 353; Rifle Brigade, 280; 25th Regiment, 282; 33rd Regiment, 282; 54th Regiment, 281

Pony, selection of, for a child, 6; treatment of, 8

'Post and Paddock' quoted, 310

RAC

Potter on horsemanship, 215

Priory polo club, 349

Proctor, Mr. J. B., 317

QUEEN, Her Majesty the, and the improvement of the breed of New Forest ponies, 318

Queensland, horse-breeding in, 189

Quin, Capt. Wyndham, 256

RACE riding, 139; paucity of competent jockeys, 140; essentials for a perfect jockey, 140; knowledge of pace, 141, 146; riding in obedience to orders, 141, 146; 'the two chief requisites, 142; 'hands,' 142–144; 'head,' 144; bitting racehorses, 145; disqualifications, 145; saddles slipping, 145; carrying wrong weight, 145; false run races, 146; 'getting off,' 147; 'steadying,' 148, 153; making the rush, 148; taking advantage of the incidents of a race, 149; importance of examining the ground, 150; the final effort, 150–153; injudicious use of the whip and spurs, 150, 153, 155, 156; how races are lost and won, 153; 'leaving it too late,' 154; races thrown away, 154; 'drawing it too fine,' 155; need of tenderness in riding young horses, 155–157; roguish horses, 155

Racing (Badminton), 153

Racing bits, 128

RAN

Ranelagh polo club and ground, 257, 299, 319, 335, 345
Rawlinson, Mr., 351, 352
Rearing, 127
Rearing bits, 128
Reid, Capt., 350
Reining back, 98–106
Reins, 67, 71, 72, 73, 78, 79, 85, 88, 107, 112, 115, 116, 128, 131, 326
Renton, Capt., 313, 351
Richardson, Capt. G., 350
Riddell, Lady Evelyn, 9
Ridgeway, Mr., 259
Riding: early practice, 3; its advantages and disadvantages, 3; how to place a girl on her saddle, 4; fitting the stirrup, 5; selection of pony for a child, 6; putting a boy on a pony, 6; evil effects of 'learning without stirrups, 6; the first thing to impress on a boy, 7; handling the bridle, 7; importance of girls learning to ride on either side, 9; riding to hounds, 12–42; methods of teaching in the seventeenth century, 48; school riding, 53; hints on horsemanship, 86–132; hands and seat, 133–138; race riding, 139–157; early history of horsemanship, 211–231; lessons in, 372–392; bibliography of, 393–404
Riding to hounds, 12; different styles of riding, 13; the leading division, 14; a 'shuffler's hole,' 17; sheep in the way, 17; 'imperial crowners,' 18; an impossible fence, 21; the second division, 21; all-round men, 23; the man who *will* be with them, 24; professional rough riders, 25; going first, 26; the cunning man of the hunt, 29; point riders, 29; importance of a good start, 31; the best way of going at obstacles, 31; fences, 31, 35; timber and walls, 32; brooks, 33; 'doubles,' 34; blind ditches, 36; 'keep inside hounds when running hard,' 36; 'overmarking' horses, 37; horses collapsing suddenly, 37; the question of how to procure hunters, 39; price of good hunters, 41; horse furniture, 41; saddles, 41; bits and bridles, 42
Robinson, Sir Hercules, 164, 261; on horsemanship, 183
Rochfort, Mr. Horace, 257, 332, 333
Rollers, 68, 72, 78
Romans: formation of body of horsemen by Romulus, 221; the order of *Equites*, 221; perfection of the art of schooling horses, 221; prominence of horsemanship in the public games, 222; decoration of their steeds, 222; saddle-trees and saddles, 222–224
Rossmore, Lord, 255, 335
Rough riders, 25
Running reins, 88, 128
Russell, Mr. T., 166

SAD

SADDLE-CLOTHS of the Egyptians, Assyrians, and Per-

SAD

sians, 215; of early Greeks, 219

Saddle-horse, the, 43; comprehensiveness of the term, 43; sources of supply of English horses in the sixteenth century, 45; the 'Turkie horse,' 46; the 'Barbarian,' the Sardinian, and the Corsican, 46; the Neapolitan, 47; the Spanish jennet, 47; the Hungarian, the Almaine, the Flanders, and the Friezeland, 47; the Irish hobbie, 48; sixteenth century training and treatment, 48; curious correction for 'restifenesse,' 49; supposed influence of colour on disposition, 50; Virgil's description of a horse, 51; Major Whyte Melville's ideal, 52; the English hack of the present day, 52; school riding, 53; 'airs' of the school horse, 54; the perfect hack, 55; thoroughbreds as hacks, 56, 61; half-breds, 57; effect of breeding from unsound sires, 57; requisites for a perfect hack, 57, 60; economical way of obtaining a good saddle-horse, 59; difficulty of finding good hacks, 60; ponies as hacks, 61; care of the horse in the stable, 61

Saddles, 7, 41, 44, 76, 129, 130, 178, 224, 275

Saddle-trees, earliest Roman evidence of, 222–224; in the eleventh to eighteenth centuries, 224

St. Quintin, Col., 236, 254, 261, 281, 313, 334

STE

St. Quintin, Mr., 254, 261

Sarfaraz, Ressaldar, 298

Saunders, Mr., 180; on horsemanship, 181, 201, 205, 207

Scala, the, 224

School riding, 53; horse, 54

'Scrub' horses of Australia, 180

Seat, good and bad, 131–138; causes of bad seat, 133; position in saddle of rider with good seat, 136; of Australian colonists, 205; Xenophon's instructions for the seat, 217

Secunderabad polo ground, 283

Sheffield-Neave, Mr., 349

Sherer, Maj.-Gen. J. F., 236, 279; on polo, 276, 277

Shoeing, 66

Smith, Capt. Arthur, 23, 26

Smith's 'Classical Dictionary,' horsemanship in, 215, 222

Smythe, Capt. Walter, 236, 287

Snaffles, 10, 11, 71, 80, 86, 90, 113, 114, 124, 128

South California polo club, 260

Sperling, Mr., 349

Spicer, Capt. Julian, 287, 345, 346

Spurs, use of, 81, 127, 128, 129, 132, 148, 153, 155, 156; the ancient Greeks the first known users of, 218; should be discarded in polo matches, 327

Stable, care of the horse in the, 61, 68

Startin, Mr., 334

Stead, Mr. G. G., 164

Steeds, Capt., 333

Stewart, Capt. G., 280

STE

Stewart, Capt. Robt., 279, 280
Stewart-Duckett, Mr., 333
Sticks, polo, 302–304
Stirrups, ladies', 5; earliest mention of, 225; use of, at first confined to armed horsemen, 225
Stock saddle and whip, 178
Storer, Mr., 259
Stow, Mr. E. Kenyon, 256, 340, 341
Strutt on polo, 252
Stud-books, colonial, 159–161
Sussex County polo club, 337
Switzerland, horses' bones found in the caves and lake dwellings of, 211, 212
Sydney (New South Wales), earliest races, 159; price of horses, 185

TALBOT, Col. the Hon. R., 335
Tasmania, manuscript stud-book of 1847, 160; horse-breeding in, 189
Tattersall's, 40, 59
Telegraph boards, for polo grounds, 305
Theodosian Code, 223
Thorn, Mr. W. K., 261
'Three Sherleys, The Adventures of the,' quoted, 251
Tidy, Capt., 348
'Times, The,' quoted, 262
Tollemache, Wilbraham, 21
Tom Thumb bit, 11
Toolane (a Munnipoorie), 279
Totalisator, the, at New Zealand race meetings, 171; its effect in promoting sport, 171; proposal to legalise it in Victoria,

TRA

73; method of working, 173
Tournaments, origin and development of, 226
Tournaments (polo):—Allahabad, 283; Bombay, 283; Calcutta, 283; Hurlingham Infantry Inter-regimental, winners of, 294; Hurlingham Inter-regimental, winners of, 294; Indian Inter-regimental, 281, 283; winners of, 296; Indian Infantry Inter-regimental, 283; winners of, 297; Indian Native Cavalry, 283; Mian Mir, 298; Mysore, 298; Nusseerabad, 283; Poona, 283
Training the young horse, 63; first considerations, 63; handling, 63–69; feeding, 64; exercise, 64; treatment of horses fresh from grass, 64; how to begin handling, 65; lifting the feet, 65; shoeing, 66; in the box, 67; the stall collar, 67; the reins, 67; objections to chains and iron logs, 67, 68; in the stable, 68; position of the stall, 68; putting on the roller, 68;—longeing, 69–80; use and abuse of the longe, 69; shape and dimensions of building for longeing, 70; the first lesson, 70; fitting the cavesson, 71; the best kind of snaffle, 71; roller and reins, 72; care of the tackle, 72; position of man holding the horse, 73; avoid hurrying, 73, 75, 84; details of the lesson, 74, 75; its duration, 75; the second

TRO

day's lesson, 75; principal object, 75; use of the whip, 76; saddling, 76; position of the saddle, 77; putting on the crupper, 77; management of reins, 78, 79; use of cross-trees, 79; treatment of horses that do not yield, 79, 80;—backing, 80–85; neither spurs nor whip to be used, 81; preparations for mounting, 81; mounting, 82, 83; avoid touching the horse with the leg, 83, 84; treatment when mounted, 83; dismounting, 84; nervous horses, 84; taking off the cavesson, 85;—breaking, 86; trotting, 88; bending, 92–97; reining back, 98–100; cantering, 100–106; leaping, 106–112
Trotting, 88

UMBALLA polo ground, 283

VALENTIA, Lord, 255, 287, 335
Van de Weyer, Lady Emily, 9
Vane Tempest, Lord Henry, 335
Vaughan, Mr., 346
'Vegetii Renati Artis Veterinariæ,' quoted, 223
V Capt., 348
Victoria: publication of first stud-book, 160; Melbourne Cup, 165, 166, 170; Flemington racecourse, 166–170; Victoria Racing Club, 173; effect of gold discovery on

WIL

price of horses, 181; shipment of horses to India, 183; horse-breeding in, 187; hunting in, 190; importation of hares and harriers, 191; a stag-hunt, 192; times of English and Victorian Derby compared, 208
Vigne's 'Travels in Kashmir, Ladakh, and Thibet' quoted, 266
Virgil, quoted, 51

'WALERS,' 184, 187
Walker, Mr. G. N., 350
Walker, Mr. J. R., 310, 311, 342
Walker, Mr. W. H., 342
Ware, Mr., 261
Warings, Mr. G. L., 317
Watson, Mr. John, 236, 257, 258, 260, 261, 277, 283, 287, 296, 333, 340, 342–345, 348
Watson, Mr. Robert, 257, 333
West Meath polo club, 258
Whip, use of the, 76, 81, 86, 110, 129, 131, 132, 148, 151, 153, 155, 156; Australian stock whip, 178; in polo, 328
White, Mr., Australian stud-owner, 163, 164; phenomenal success of his horses, 165
Whyte Melville, Major, on horsemanship, 12, 14, 52
Willesden Paper Company's papier-mâché polo goal-posts, 304
Willett, Mr., 352
Williams, Col. Owen, 335

WIL

Willoughby, Capt. the Hon. E., 255
Wilson, Sir Gracroft, 177
Wilton, the Dowager Countess of, 9
Wilton, Lord (the late), 16
Winthrop, Mr. E., 261
Wolseley, Sir Charles, 287, 335
Woodhouse, Mr. E., 317
Worcester, the Marquis of, 335

ZON

XENOPHON quoted, 216–220

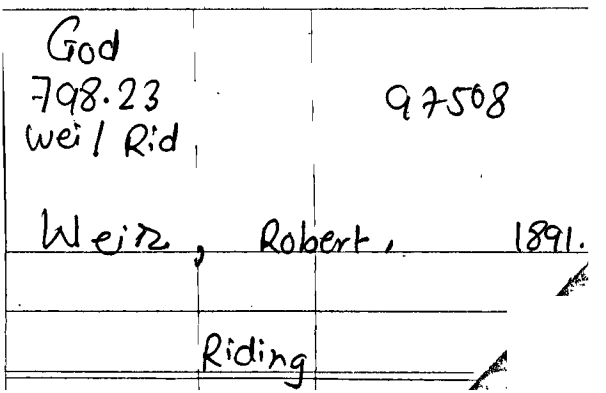
YOUNG, Mr. W. H., 317
Younghusband's, Capt. G. F., 'Polo in India,' 284, 291

ZONARAS, 223, 227–229, 393–404

PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
LONDON

00097508

31/5/66



Digitized with financial assistance from
Hermès India
a project facilitated by the Rotary Club of Bombay
on 10 August, 2018